



Class PE IIII

Book B6
1825

Recd 10th July 1825.

THE

INSTITUTES

OF

532

3246

ENGLISH GRAMMAR,

METHODICALLY ARRANGED;

WITH

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING, QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION,
FALSE SYNTAX FOR CORRECTION, EXERCISES
FOR WRITING, OBSERVATIONS FOR
THE ADVANCED STUDENT,

AND

A KEY TO THE ORAL EXERCISES:

TO WHICH ARE ADDED FOUR APPENDIXES.

Designed for the use of Schools, Academies, and Private Learners.

—•—
BY GOOLD BROWN.
—•—

Ne quis igitur tanquam parva fastidiat Grammatices elementa.
QUINTILIAN.

~~~~~  
SECOND EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED.  
~~~~~

NEW-YORK

PUBLISHED BY SAMUEL WOOD & SONS,

No. 261, Pearl-Street;

AND SAMUEL S. WOOD & CO. NO. 212, MARKET-STREET, BALTIMORE,

1825.



PE 1111
.B 6
1825

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW-YORK, ss.

BE IT REMEMBERED, That on the Thirtieth day of June, A. D. 1825, in the the forty ninth year of the Independence of the United States of America. *Goold Brown*, of the said District, hath deposited in this office, the title of a book, the right whereof he claims as author, in the words following, to wit:

"THE INSTITUTES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR, *methodically arranged; with examples for parsing, questions for examination, false syntax for correction, exercises for writing, observations for the advanced student, and a key to the oral exercises: to which are added four appendixes. Designed for the use of schools, academies, and private learners. By Goold Brown. Ne quis igitur tanquam parva fastidiat Grammatices elementa.—Quintilian. Second Edition, revised and enlarged "*

In conformity to the Act of Congress of the United States, entitled "An act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts, and Books, to the Authors and Proprietors of such copies, during the time therein mentioned:" and also to an Act, entitled, "an Act, supplementary to an Act, entitled an Act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts, and Books, to the Authors and Proprietors of such copies during the times therein mentioned, and extending the benefits thereof to the arts of designing, engraving, and etching historical and other prints."

JAMES DILL,
Clerk of the Southern District of New-York.

293

RECOMMENDATIONS.

New-York, February, 1824.

The undersigned have examined Goold Brown's new work, entitled "The Institutes of English Grammar," and are of opinion that, in the justness of its general views, the excellence of its style, the brevity and perspicuity of its definitions, the copiousness and adaptation of its examples and exercises, the accuracy of its critical notes and observations, and the method of its arrangement, this work surpasses all other grammars now in use; and, that it consequently deserves the attention and patronage of every person concerned in cultivating the science of the English Language.

The Brief Abstract, entitled, "The First Lines of English Grammar," by the same author, is a neat, cheap, and concise treatise, containing many of the excellencies of the larger work, and is peculiarly fitted for young learners. It is sufficiently comprehensive for most elementary schools.

J. Griscom, <i>LL.D. Prof. Chem. &c.</i>	James Douglas,	<i>Teacher.</i>
Samuel L. Mitchell, <i>LL.D. & M.D.</i>	Rufus Lockwood,	<i>do.</i>
D.H. Barnes, <i>A. M. High School.</i>	Robert K. Moulton,	<i>do.</i>
Ansel W. Ives, <i>M. D.</i>	Bartholomew M'Gowan,	<i>do.</i>
J.M. Wainwright, <i>D.D. Rec. G. Ch.</i>	William Wagstaff,	<i>do.</i>
James Milnor, <i>D. D. Rector of St. George's Church.</i>	Charles Brasham,	<i>do.</i>
	James B. Requa,	<i>do.</i>
William Forrest, <i>A. M. Teacher.</i>	Samuel R. Gummere,	<i>Teacher,</i>
Thatcher T. Payne, <i>do.</i>	<i>Burlington, New-Jersey.</i>	
Robert F. Mott, <i>do.</i>	William Mitchell, <i>Teacher,</i>	<i>Nantucket.</i>
Ezekiel W. Morse, <i>do.</i>		

New-York, May, 1824.

The undersigned having satisfactorily examined Goold Brown's "Institutes of English Grammar," and also the Abstract, entitled "The First Lines of English Grammar," and being convinced, that these works, both in their design and execution, excel those which they have heretofore used, *have adopted them exclusively*, as their class books in this branch of instruction.

Daniel H. Barnes,	John Coats,
Borland & Forrest,	Joseph C. Hart,
Lindley Murray Moore,	Daniel C. Underhill,
Uriah E. Wheeler,	Silas Woodbury,
Maurice Hoyt,	Alfred Bixby,
Samuel Wescott,	Henry Hart,
Thaddeus Whitlock,	Moses Hale,
Edward P. Maguire,	Benjamin Mortimer, Jun.
William Sherwood,	Aaron B. Quinby,
Abraham Mills,	Solomon Genner,
Calvin S. Crane,	Henry Edmonds.
Joseph Hoxie,	

The following are extracts from the Minutes of "The Teachers' Society in New-York"—an incorporated body, then consisting of fifty seven of the most respectable teachers in the city :

"At a Meeting of the Teachers' Society, held June 19th, 1824. —The Society again resolved itself into a committee of the whole, for the further examination of Brown's Institutes of English Grammar. After considerable attention thereto, the committee rose and reported the following resolution ; which was unanimously adopted :

"*Resolved*, That the Teachers' Society of New-York, consider that Mr. Gould Brown has conferred an important benefit upon the community, by presenting to it his Institutes of English Grammar, and that this work is worthy of the most extensive patronage."

WILLIAM S. CARDELL,

Chairman of the Com. of the whole.

"On motion, *Resolved unanimously*, That Mr. G. Brown have leave to publish the opinion of this Society in relation to his Institutes of English Grammar, as expressed in the resolution framed in committee of the whole, and in the report of the Philological Committee."

WILLIAM FORREST, A. M.

President of the Society.

The Report of the Philological Committee was as follows :

"At a meeting of the Philological Committee of the New-York Teachers' Society, held 1st mo. 10th, 1824.—The Committee resumed the consideration of Brown's Institutes of English Grammar, and, having been closely engaged for some time in examining the said work, concluded to make the following report :

"The Committee are of opinion, that this Grammar does (as it professes to do) 'express the true principles of the English Language in a simple and perspicuous style, illustrate them by appropriate examples and exercises, and give to the whole the greatest advantage from method in the arrangement ;' and that, in these several particulars, it excels all other treatises on Grammar with which they are acquainted."

DANIEL H. BARNES, A. M.,

Chairman of the Phil. Committee.

ROBERT F. MOTT, *Secretary.*

From Professor Potter, Union College, Schenectady.

DEAR SIR,

Union College, October 22d 1824.

A hasty examination of your Grammar has afforded me much pleasure. Combining with a judicious arrangement of the most important principles, such examples and exercises as are calculated to impress them thoroughly on the understanding, as well as the memory of the pupil, it appears to me peculiarly calculated for the instruction of the young. I sincerely trust that your labours will be rewarded with merited success, and beg you to accept the assurance of my respectful consideration.

A. POTTER.

Mr. Gould Brown.

PREFACE.

LANGUAGE is the principal vehicle of thought ; and so numerous and important are the ends to which it is subservient, that it is difficult to conceive in what manner the affairs of human society could be conducted without it. Its utility, therefore, will ever entitle it to a considerable share of attention in civilized communities, and to an important place in all systems of education. For, whatever we may think in relation to its origin,—whether we consider it a special gift from Heaven, or an acquisition of industry,—a natural endowment, or an artificial invention,—certain it is, that, in the present state of things, our knowledge of it, depends, in a great measure, if not entirely, on the voluntary exercise of our faculties, and on the helps and opportunities afforded us. One may indeed acquire, by mere imitation, such a knowledge of words, as to enjoy the ordinary advantages of speech ; and he who is satisfied with the dialect he has so obtained, will find no occasion for treatises on grammar : but he who is desirous either of relishing the beauties of literary composition, or of expressing his sentiments with propriety and ease, must make the principles of language his study.

It is not the business of the grammarian to *give law* to language, but to *teach* it, agreeably to the best usage. The ultimate principle by which he must be governed, and with which his instructions must always accord, is that

species of custom which critics denominate GOOD USE ; that is, present, reputable, general use. This principle, which is equally opposed to fantastic innovation, and to a pertinacious adherence to the quaint peculiarities of ancient usage, is the only proper standard of grammatical purity. Those rules and modes of speech, which are established by this authority, may be called the Institutes of Grammar.

To embody, in a convenient form, the true principles of the English Language, to express them in a simple and perspicuous style, adapted to the capacity of youth, to illustrate them by appropriate examples and exercises, and to give to the whole all possible advantage from method in the arrangement, are the objects of the following work. The author has not deviated much from the principles adopted in the most approved grammars already in use ; nor has he acted the part of a servile copyist. It was not his design to introduce novelties, but to form a practical digest of established rules. He, has not laboured to subvert the general system of grammar, received from time immemorial ; but to improve upon it, in its present application to our tongue. The nature of the subject almost entirely precludes invention. He has, however, aimed at that kind and degree of originality, which are to be commended in works of this sort ; and has borrowed no more from others, than did the most learned and popular of his predecessors. And, while he has taken the liberty to think and write for himself, he trusts it will be evident that few have excelled him in diligence of research, or have followed more implicitly the dictates of that authority which gives law to language. Having devoted many years to studies of this nature, and being conversant with most of the grammatical treatises al-

ready published, he conceived that the objects above enumerated, might, perhaps, be better effected, than they had been, in any work within his knowledge. He does not mean, however, to depreciate the labours, or to detract from the merits, of those who have gone before him. He has studiously endeavoured to avail himself of all the light they have thrown upon the subject. For his own information, he has carefully perused more than fifty English grammars, and has sought, with some diligence, the analogies of speech, in the structure of several other languages. His progress in compiling this work, has been slow, and not unattended with labour and difficulty. Amidst the contrarieties of opinion, that appear in the various treatises already before the public, and the perplexities inseparable from so complicated a subject, he has, after deliberate consideration, adopted those views and explanations which appeared to him the least liable to objection, and the most compatible with his ultimate object,—the production of a practical school grammar. On disputed points, he has not been disposed to dogmatize; but has, as far as his limits would allow, given the various opinions of the most respectable grammarians. How far the author has succeeded in the execution of his design, is left to the candid decision of those who are qualified to judge.

NEW-YORK, 1823.

ADVERTISEMENT

TO THE

SECOND EDITION.

The former edition of the *Institutes of English Grammar* having been favourably received by the public, and adopted by many respectable teachers, the author has been induced to devote yet further time and labour to the subject, with the hope of rendering his work still more valuable. On a careful revision of the whole, it did not appear expedient to make much alteration in what had been written; but it was thought that some additional matter might be introduced to advantage. To this edition are added several critical notes and observations never before published, and four chapters of exercises designed to be written out by the learner. In selecting examples for these exercises, the author has been studious to economize the learner's and the teacher's time, by admitting those only which were very short. He has, in general, reduced each example to the compass of a single line. And, in this manner, he has been able to present, in this small volume, a series of exercises more various than are given in any other grammar, and nearly equal in number to all that are contained in Murray's two octavoes. It is believed that a grammatical treatise at once so comprehensive and concise, has not before been offered to the public. In preparing the examples, exercises, and parsing lessons, the author has been solicitous to avoid every thing that could be of-

fensive to the most delicate and scrupulous reader; and, of the several thousands of quotations given, he trusts that the greater part will be considered valuable on account of the sentiments they contain.

A separate Key to the exercises for writing, will be published for the convenience of teachers and private learners.

Having undertaken and prosecuted this work, with the hope of facilitating the study of the English Language, and thus promoting the improvement of the young, the author now presents his finished labours to the candour and discernment of those to whom is committed the important business of instruction.

NEW-YORK, 1825.

CONTENTS.

	Page
Definition and Division of the Subject	1
PART I.—ORTHOGRAPHY	1
Of Letters—Rules for the use of Capitals	1 & 2
Of Syllables and Words	3
Of Spelling—Rules for Spelling	5
Questions on Orthography	7
Exercises in Orthography,	8
PART II.—ETYMOLOGY	14
Of the Parts of Speech	14
Examples for Parsing, Chapter I.	15
Of the Article	17
Of the Noun	18
Persons	19
Numbers	19
Genders	21
Cases	23
Examples for Parsing, Chapter II.	24
Of the Adjective	26
Examples for Parsing, Chapter III.	29
Of the Pronoun	30
Examples for Parsing, Chapter IV.	34
Of the Verb	36
Moods	37
Tenses	38
Persons and Numbers	40
Passive Verbs	59
Irregular Verbs	63
Defective Verbs	68
Of the Participles	69
Examples for Parsing, Chapter V.	71
Of the Adverb	74
Of the Conjunction	77
Of the Preposition	77
Of the Interjection	78
Examples for Parsing, Chapter VI.	79
Questions on Etymology	83
Exercises in Etymology	88
PART III.—SYNTAX	93
Introductory Definitions	93
Rules of Syntax	94
Examples for Parsing, Chapter VII.	97
Rules of Syntax, with Ex., Notes, Obs., and False Syntax	112
Rule I. Of the Articles	112
Rule II. Of the Nominative to a verb	117
Rule III. Of Words in apposition	118
Rule IV. Of Adjectives	120
Rule V. Of the Pronoun and antecedent	126
Rule VI. Of the Pronoun and collective noun	133
Rule VII. Of the Pronoun and joint antecedents	135
Rule VIII. Of the Pronoun and disjunct antecedents	136

	Page
Rule IX. Of the Verb and nominative . . .	136
Rule X. Of the Verb and collective noun . . .	140
Rule XI. Of the Verb and joint nominatives . . .	141
Rule XII. Of the Verb and disjunct nominatives . . .	145
Rule XIII. Of Verbs connected . . .	146
Rule XIV. Of Participles . . .	148
Rule XV. Of Adverbs . . .	152
Rule XVI. Of Conjunctions . . .	155
Rule XVII. Of Prepositions . . .	159
Rule XVIII. Of Interjections . . .	161
Rule XIX. Of the Possessive Case . . .	161
Rule XX. Of the Objective Case after a Verb or Participle	163
Rule XXI. Of the Saine Case after a Verb as before it	166
Rule XXII. Of the Objective Case after a Preposition	167
Rule XXIII. Of the Infinitive Mood . . .	168
Rule XXIV. Of the Infinitive after <i>bid, dare, feel, &c.</i> . . .	170
Rule XXV. Of the Nominative Case absolute . . .	171
Rule XXVI. Of the Subjunctive Mood . . .	172
Promiscuous Examples of False Syntax . . .	175
Examples for Parsing, Chapter VIII. . . .	179
Questions on Syntax . . .	186
Exercises in Syntax . . .	187
PART IV.—PROSODY . . .	201
Of PUNCTUATION . . .	201
Of the Comma . . .	201
Of the Semicolon . . .	206
Of the Colon . . .	207
Of the Period . . .	208
Of the Dash, the Note of Interrogation, &c. . .	209
Of the Other Marks . . .	211
Of UTTERANCE . . .	212
Of Pronunciation . . .	212
Of Elocution . . .	213
Of FIGURES . . .	214
Of Figures of Etymology . . .	214
Of Figures of Syntax . . .	215
Of Figures of Rhetoric . . .	217
Of VERSIFICATION . . .	220
Of Iambic Verse . . .	221
Of Trochaic Verse . . .	222
Of Anapæstic Verse . . .	223
Of Dactylic Verse . . .	224
Examples for Parsing, Chapter IX. . . .	225
Questions on Prosody . . .	232
Exercises in Prosody . . .	236
A KEY to the Oral Exercises in False Syntax . . .	249
APPENDIX I. Of the Sounds of the Letters . . .	272
APPENDIX II. Of Derivation . . .	280
APPENDIX III. Of Style . . .	290
APPENDIX IV. Of Poetic Diction . . .	293



THE
INSTITUTES
OF
ENGLISH GRAMMAR.



ENGLISH GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing the English language correctly.

It is divided into four parts ; namely, Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody.

Orthography treats of letters, syllables, words, and spelling.

Etymology treats of the different parts of speech, and their classes and modifications.

Syntax treats of the relation, agreement, government, and arrangement, of words in sentences.

Prosody treats of punctuation, utterance, figures, and versification.



PART I.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

Orthography treats of letters, syllables, words, and spelling.

OF LETTERS.

A *Letter* is a character used in printing or writing, to represent an articulate sound.

An articulate sound, is a sound of the human voice, used in speaking.

The letters in the English alphabet, are twenty-six ; *A a, B b, C c, D d, E e, F f, G g, H h, I i, J j, K k, L l, M m, N n, O o, P p, Q q, R r, S s, T t, U u, V v, W w, X x, Y y, Z z.*

The letters are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*.

A *vowel* is a letter which forms a perfect sound, when uttered alone.

A *consonant* is a letter which cannot be perfectly uttered, till joined to a vowel.

The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u*, and sometimes *v*, and *y*. All the other letters are consonants.

W and *y* are consonants when they precede a vowel in the same syllable ; as in *wine, twine, youth* : in other situations, they are vowels.

The consonants are divided into *mutes*, and *semi-vowels*.

A *mute* is a consonant which cannot be sounded at all without a vowel. The mutes are *b, d, k, p, q, t*, and *c* and *g* hard.

A *semi-vowel* is a consonant which can be imperfectly sounded without a vowel. The semi-vowels are *f, h, j, l, m, n, r, s, v, x, z*, and *c* and *g* soft. Of these *l, m, n*, and *r*, are termed *liquids*, on account of the fluency of their sounds.

In the English language, the Roman characters are generally employed ; sometimes, the Italic ; and occasionally, the old English. The letters have severally two forms, by which they are distinguished as *capitals* and *small letters*. The small letters constitute the body of every work. Capitals are used for the sake of eminence and distinction.

RULES FOR THE USE OF CAPITALS

RULE I.

The titles of books, and the heads of their principal divisions, should be printed in capitals. When books are merely mentioned, the principal words in their titles begin with capitals, and the other letters are small ; as, "Pope's Essay on Man."

RULE II.

The first word of every distinct sentence, should begin with a capital.

RULE III.

All names of the Deity should begin with capitals ; as, *God, Jehovah, the Almighty, the Supreme Being.*

RULE IV.

Titles of office or honour, and proper names of every description, should begin with capitals ; as, *Chief Justice Hale, William, London, the Park, the Albion, the Spectator, the Thames.*

RULE V.

The name of an object personified, when it conveys an idea strictly individual, should begin with a capital ; as, “Come, gentle *Spring*, ethereal mildness, come.”

RULE VI.

Words derived from proper names, should begin with capitals ; as, *Newtonian, Grecian, Roman.*

RULE VII.

The words *I* and *O*, should always be capitals.

RULE VIII.

Every line in poetry should begin with a capital.

RULE IX.

The first word of an example, of a distinct speech, or of a direct quotation, should begin with a capital ; as, “Remember this maxim : ‘Know thyself.’”—“Virgil says, ‘Labour conquers all things.’”

RULE X.

Other words of particular importance, and such as denote the principal subject of discourse, may be distinguished by capitals. Proper names frequently have capitals throughout.

OF SYLLABLES AND WORDS.

A *Syllable* is one or more letters pronounced in one sound, and is either a word or a part of a word ; as, *a, an, ant.*

A *Word* is one or more syllables spoken or written as the sign of some idea.

In every word there are as many syllables as there are distinct sounds ; as, *gram ma-ri-an*.

A word of one syllable is called a *monosyllable* ; a word of two syllables, a *dissyllable* ; a word of three syllables, a *trissyllable* ; and a word of four or more syllables, a *polysyllable*.

A *diphthong* is two vowels joined in one syllable ; as, *ea* in *beat*, *ou* in *sound*.

A *proper diphthong*, is a diphthong in which both the vowels are sounded ; as, *oi* in *voice*.

An *improper diphthong*, is a diphthong in which only one of the vowels is sounded ; as, *oa* in *loaf*.

A *triphthong* is three vowels joined in one syllable ; as, *eau* in *beau*, *iew* in *view*.

A *proper triphthong*, is a triphthong in which all the vowels are sounded ; as, *uoy* in *buoy*.

An *improper triphthong*, is a triphthong in which only one or two of the vowels are sounded ; as, *eau* in *beauty*.

Words are distinguished as *primitive* or *derivative*, and as *simple* or *compound*.

A *primitive* word is one that is not formed from any simpler word in the language ; as, *harm*, *great*, *connect*.

A *derivative* word is one that is formed from some simpler word in the language ; as, *harmless*, *greatly*, *connected*.

A *simple* word is one that is not compounded ; as, *watch*, *man*.

A *compound* word is one that is composed of two or more simple words ; as, *watchman*, *nevertheless*.

Permanent compounds are consolidated ; as, *bookseller*, *schoolmaster* : others are formed by the hyphen ; as, *glass-house*, *negro-merchant*.

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. The consonants should generally be joined to the vowels or diphthongs which they modify.

Derivative and grammatical terminations should gene-

rally be separated from the radical word ; as, *harm-less, great-ly, connect-ed.*

Compounds should be divided into the simple words which compose them ; as, *watch-man, never-the-less.*

At the end of a line, a word may be divided, if necessary ; but a syllable must never be broken.

OF SPELLING.

Spelling is the art of expressing words by their proper letters.

Obs.—This important art is to be acquired rather by means of the spelling-book or dictionary, and by observation in reading, than by the study of written rules. The orthography of our language is attended with much uncertainty and perplexity : many words are variously spelled by the best scholars, and many others are not usually written according to the analogy of similar words. But to be ignorant of the orthography of such words as are uniformly spelled and frequently used, is justly considered disgraceful. The following rules may prevent some embarrassment, and thus be of service to the learner.

RULES FOR SPELLING.

RULE I.

Monosyllables ending in *f, l, or s*, preceded by a single vowel, double the final consonant ; as, *staff, mill, pass* : except, *if, of, as, gas, has, was, yes, is, his, this, us, thus.*

RULE II.

Words ending in any other consonant than *f, l, or s*, do not double the final letter : except *add, odd, ebb, egg, inn, err, purr, butt, buzz*, and some proper names.

RULE III.

Monosyllables, and words accented on the last syllable, when they end with a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, double their final consonant before an additional syllable that begins with a vowel : as, *rob, robber ; permit, permitting.*

X, being equivalent to *ks*, is never doubled.

RULE IV.

A final consonant, when it is not preceded by a single vowel, or when the accent is not on the last syllable, should remain single before an additional syllable : as, *toil, toiling ; visit, visited ; general, generalize.*

But *l* and *s* final are often doubled, (though improperly,) when the last syllable is not accented : as, *travel, traveller ; bias, biassed*.

RULE V.

Primitive words ending in *ll*, generally reject one *l*, before *ful, less, ly*, and *ness* : as, *skill, skilful, skillless ; full, fully, fulness*.

Words ending in any other double letter, preserve it double ; as, *blissful, oddly, stiffness, carelessness*.

RULE VI.

The final *e* of a primitive word, is generally omitted before an additional termination beginning with a vowel : as, *rate, ratable ; force, forcible ; rave, raving*.

Words ending in *ce* or *ge*, retain the *e* before *able* or *ous*, to preserve the soft sound of *c* and *g* : as, *peace, peaceable ; change, changeable ; outrage, outrageous*.

RULE VII.

The final *e* of a primitive word, is generally retained before an additional termination, beginning with a consonant : as, *pale, paleness ; lodge, lodgement*.

When the *e* is preceded by a vowel, it ought to be, and generally is, omitted : as, *true, truly ; awe, awful*.

RULE VIII.

The final *y* of a primitive word, when preceded by a consonant, is changed into *i* before an additional termination : as, *merry, merrier, merriest, merrily, merriment ; pity, pitied, pities, pitiest, pitiless, pitiful, pitiable*.

Before *ing*, *y* is retained, to prevent the doubling of *i* ; as, *pity, pitying*. Words ending in *ie*, dropping the *e*, by RULE VI. change *i* into *y*, for the same reason ; as, *die, dying*. When a vowel precedes, *y* should not be changed : as, *day, days ; valley, valleys*.

RULE IX.

Compounds generally retain the orthography of the simple words which compose them ; as, *hercof, wherein, horseman, recall, uphill, shellfish*.

In permanent compounds, the words *full* and *all* drop one *l* ; as, *handful, careful, always, withal* : in others, they retain both ; as, *full-eyed, all-wise, save-all*.

Obs.—Other words ending in *ll* sometimes improperly drop one *l*, when taken into composition ; as, *miscal*, *downhil*. This excision is reprehensible, because it is contrary to general analogy, and because both letters are necessary to preserve the sound, and show the derivation of the compound. Where is the consistency of writing *recall*, *miscal*—*inthrall*, *bethral*—*windfall*, *downfal*—*laystall*, *thumbstal*—*waterfall*, *overfal*—*molehill*, *dunghil*—*windmill*, *twibil*—*clodpoll*, *enrol*? [See Johnson's Dictionary, first American ed. 4to.]

QUESTIONS.

What is English Grammar ?
 How is it divided ?
 Of what does Orthography treat ?
 Of what does Etymology treat ?
 Of what does Syntax treat ?
 Of what does Prosody treat ?



QUESTIONS ON ORTHOGRAPHY.

Of what does Orthography treat ?
 What is a *Letter* ?
 What is an articulate sound ?
 How many letters are there in English ? Repeat them.
 How are the letters divided ?
 What is a vowel ?
 What is a consonant ?
 What letters are vowels ? and what, consonants ?
 When are *w* and *y* consonants ? and when, vowels ?
 How are the consonants divided ?
 What is a mute ?
 What consonants are mutes ?
 What is a semi-vowel ?
 What consonants are semi-vowels ?
 What letters are called liquids ? and why ?
 What characters are employed in English ?
 Has each letter more than one form ?
 On what account are capitals used ?
 What words should be distinguished by capitals ?
 What is a *Syllable* ?
 What is a *Word* ?
 Can the syllables of a word be perceived by the ear ?
 What is a word of one syllable called ?

What is a word of two syllables called ?

What is a word of three syllables called ?

What is a word of four or more syllables called ?

What is a *diphthong* ?

What is a *proper* diphthong ?

What is an *improper* diphthong ?

What is a *triphthong* ?

What is a *proper* triphthong ?

What is an *improper* triphthong ?

How are words distinguished ?

What is a *primitive* word ?

What is a *derivative* word ?

What is a *simple* word ?

What is a *compound* word ?

What is *Spelling* ?

How is this art to be acquired ?

How many and what are the rules for spelling ?



EXERCISES IN ORTHOGRAPHY.

NOTE.—Spelling is to be taught by example, rather than by rule. For oral exercises in this branch of learning, the spelling-book or some vocabulary should be employed. The following examples of false orthography are inserted, that they may be corrected by the pupil, *in writing*. They are selected with direct reference to the rules ; which are, at first, indicated by figures. For it is evident, that exercises of this kind, without express rules for their correction, would rather perplex than instruct the learner ; and that his ability to correct them without reference to the rules, must presuppose such knowledge as would render them useless.

EXERCISE I.—CAPITALS.

1. The pedaut quoted Johnson's dictionary of the english language, Gregory's dictionary of arts and sciences, Crabb's english synonymes, Walker's key to the pronunciation of proper names, Sheridan's rhetorical grammar, and the diversions of purley.

2. gratitude is a delightful emotion. the grateful heart at once performs its duty, and endears itself to others.

3. What madness and folly, to deny the great first cause ! Shall mortal man presume against his maker ? shall he not fear the omnipotent ? shall he not reverence the everlasting one ?—‘ The fear of the lord is the beginning of wisdom.’

4. xerxes the great, emperor of persia, united the medes, persians, bactrians, lydians, assyrians, hyrcanians, and many other nations, in an expedition against greece.

5. I observed that, when the votaries of religion were led aside, she commonly recalled them by her emissary conscience, before habit had time to enchain them.

6. Hercules is said to have killed the nemean lion, the erymanthian boar, the lernean serpent, and the stymphalian birds.—The christian religion has brought mythologic stories, and milesian fables into disrepute.

7. i live as i did, i think as i did, i love you as i did ; but all these are to no purpose : the world will not live, think, or love, as i do.—o wretched prince ! o cruel reverse of fortune ! o father Micipsa !

8. are these thy views ? proceed, illustrious youth, and virtue guard thee to the throne of truth !

9. Those who pretend to love peace, should remember this maxim : “ it is the second blow that makes the battle.”

EXERCISE II.—CAPITALS.

‘ time and i will challenge any other two,’ said philip. ‘ thus,’ said diogenes, ‘ do i trample on the pride of plato.’ —‘ true,’ replied plato ; but is it not with the greater pride of diogenes ?

the father, in a transport of joy, burst into the following words : ‘ o excellent scipio ! heaven has given thee more than human virtue ! o glorious leader ! o wondrous youth !’

epaminondas, the theban general, was remarkable for his love of truth. he never told a lie, even in jest.

and pharaoh said to joseph, “ say to thy brethren, ‘ do this—lade your beasts, and go to the land of canaan.’ ”

who is she that, with graceful steps, and a lively air, trips over yonder plain ? her name is health : she is the daughter of exercise and temperance.

to the penitent sinner, a mediator and intercessor with the sovereign of the universe, appear comfortable names.

the murder of abel, the curse and rejection of cain, and

the birth and adoption of seth, are almost the only events related of the immediate family of adam, after his fall.

on what foundation stands the warrior's pride,
how just his hopes, let swedish charles decide.

in every leaf that trembles to the breeze,
i hear the voice of god among the trees.

EXERCISE III.—SPELLING.

1. Few know the value of a friend, til they lose him.
Good men pas by offences, and take no revenge.
Hear patiently, iff thou wouldst speak wel.
2. The business of warr is devastation and destruction.
To er is human; to forgive, divine.
A bad speller should not pretend to scholarshipp.
3. It often requires deep diging, to obtain pure water.
Praise is most shuned by the praise-worthy.
He that hoists too much sail, runs a risk of overseting.
4. Quarrels are more easily begun than ended.
Contempt leaves a deepper scar than anger.
Of all tame animals the flatterrer is the most mischievous.
5. Quacks are generally more venturesome than skillful.
He that willfully injures others, is a bad citizen.
Odity may excite attention, but it cannot gain esteem.
6. Good examples are very convinceing teachers.
Doubts should not excite contention, but inquirey.
Obligeing conduct procures deserved esteem.
7. Wise men measure time by their improvment of it.
Learn to estimate all things by their real usfulness.
Encouragment increases with success.
8. Nothing essential to happyness is unattainable.
Vices, though near relations, are all at varyance.
Before thou denyest a favour, consider the request.
9. Good-wil is a more powerful motive than constraint.
A wel-spent day prepares us for sweet repose.
The path of fame is alltogether an uphill road.

EXERCISE IV.—SPELLING.

1. He is tal enough who walks uprightly.
Repetition makes smal transgressions great.
Religion regulates the wil and affections.
2. To carry a ful cupp even, requires a steady hand.
Idleness is the nest in which mischief lays its eggs.

The whole journey of life is besett with foes.

3. Peace of mind should be preferred to bodily safety.

A bad beginning is unfavourable to success.

Very fruitful trees often need to be propped.

4. None ever gained esteem by tattling and gossiping.

Religion purifies, fortifies, and tranquillizes the mind.

They had all been closetted together a long time.

5. Let every one be fully persuaded in his own mind.

Indolence and listlessness are foes to happiness.

Carelessness has occasioned many a wearisome step.

6. In all thy undertakings, ponder the motive and the end.

We cannot wrong others without injuring ourselves.

A durable good cannot spring from an external cause.

7. Duely appreciate and improve your privileges.

To borrow of future time, is thriftless managment.

He who is truly a freman is above mean compliances.

8. Pitiing friends cannot save us in a diing hour.

Wisdom rescues the decaies of age from aversion.

Vallies are generally more fertile than hills.

9. Cold numness had quite bereft her of sense.

A cascade, or waterfal, is a charming object in scenery.

Nettles grow in the vinyard of the slothfull.

Tuition is lost on idlers and numbsculls.

EXERCISE V.—SPELLING.

1. He that scoffs at the crooked, should beware of stooping.

Pictures that resemble flowers, smel only of paint.

Misdemeanours are the pioneers of gros vices.

2. To remitt a wrong, leaves the offender in debt.

Superlative commendation is near akin to detraction.

Piety admitts not of excessive sorrow.

3. You are safe in forgetting benefits you have conferred.

He has run well who has outstriped his own errors.

See that you have ballast proportionate to your riging.

4. The biasses of prejudice often preclude convincement.

Rather follow the wise than lead the foollish.

To reason with the angry, is like whisperring to the deaf.

A bigotted judge needs no time for deliberation.

The gods of this world have many worshippers.

5. Crosness has more subjects than admirers.

Fearlessness conquers where Blamelessness is armour-bearer.

6. Many things are chiefly valued for their rareity.

Vicious old age is hopeless and deplorable.

Irreconcilable animosity is always blameable.

7. Treachery lurks beneath a guilful tongue.

Disobedience and mischief deserve chastisement.

By self examination, we discover the lodgments of sin.

The passions often mislead the judgment.

8. To be happy without holyness, is impossible.

And all within were walks and allies wide.

Call imperfection what thou fancy'st such.

Without fire chimnies are useless.

9. The true philanthropist deserves a universal passport.

Ridicule is but the froth of ill-nature.

All mispent time will one day be regretted.

EXERCISE VI.—SPELLING.

Fiction may soften, without improveing the heart.

Affectation is a sprout that should be niped in the bud.

A covettous person is always in want.

Fashion is compareable to an ignis-fatuus.

Fair appearances somtimes cover foul purposes.

Garnish not your commendations with flattery.

Never utter a falshood even for truth's sake.

Medicines should be administerred with caution.

We have here no continueing city, no abideing rest.

Many a trapp is laid to insnare the feet of youth.

We are caught as silyly as the bird in the net.

By defering repentance, we accumulate sorrows.

To preach to the droneish, is to waste your words.

We are often benefitted by what we have dreaded.

We may be succesful, and yet disappointed.

In rebusses, pictures are used to represent words.

He is in great danger who parlies with conscience.

Your men of forehead are magnificent in promises.

A true friend is a most valueable acquisition.

It is not a bad memory that forgets injüryes.

Weigh your subject wel, before you speak positivly.

Difficulties are often increased by mismanagment.

Diseases are more easily prevented than cured.

Contrivers of mischief often entrapp themselves.

Corrupt speech indicates a distemperred mind.

Asseveration does not allways remove doubt.

Hypocrites are like wolves in sheeps' clotheing.

Ostentatious liberallity is its own paymaster.

EXERCISE VII.—SPELLING.

A downhill road may be travelled with ease.
 Distempered fancy can swel a molehil to a mountain.
 Let your own unbiassed judgment determine.
 A knave can often undersel his honest neighbours.
 Xenophanes prefered reputation to wealth.
 True politeness is the ofspring of benevolence.
 Levellers are generally the dupes of designing men.
 Rewards are for those who have fullfild their duty.
 Who trusts a hungry boy in a cubburd of dainties?
 Misery acquaints a man with strange bedfellers.
 The liberal man ties his purse with a beau-not.
 Double-deelers are seldom long in favour.
 The characters of the crosrow have wrought wonders.
 The plagiary is a jacdaw decked with stolen plumes.
 All virtues are in agrement; all vices, at varyance.
 Personnal liberty is every man's natural birthrite.
 There, wrapt in clouds, the blueish hills ascend.
 The birds frame to thy song, their chearfull cherupping.
 There figgs, skydyed, a purple hue disclose.
 Lysander goes twice a day to the choccolat-house.
 Years following years, steal sumthing every day.
 The soul of the slothfull, does but drowse in his body.
 What think you of a clergiman in a soldier's dres?
 Justice is here holding the stilliard for a balance.
 The huming-burd is somtimes no bigger than a bumble-be.
 The muskittoes will make you as spotted as a samon-trout.
 Cruelty to animals is a malicious and lo-lived vice.
 Absolute Necessity must sign their deth-warrant.
 He who catches flies, emulates the nat-snaper.
 The froggs had long lived unmolested in a horspond.
 'These are villanous creatures,' says a blokhed boy.
 The robbin-read-brest til of late had rest;
 And children sacred held a martin's nest.

PART II.

ETYMOLOGY.

Etymology treats of the different parts of speech, and their classes and modifications.

The Parts of Speech, or sorts of words, in English, are ten ; namely, the Article, the Noun, the Adjective, the Pronoun, the Verb, the Participle, the Adverb, the Conjunction, the Preposition, and the Interjection.

1. ARTICLE.

An Article is a word placed before nouns, to limit their signification : the articles are *the*, and *an* or *a*.

2. NOUN.

A Noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned : as, *George, York, man, apple, truth*.

3. ADJECTIVE.

An Adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality : as, *A wise man ; a new book*.—*You two are diligent*.

4. PRONOUN.

A Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun : as, *The boy loves his book ; he has long lessons, and he learns them well*.

5. VERB.

A Verb is a word that signifies *to be, to act, or to be acted upon* : as, *I am, I rule, I am ruled*.

6. PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a word derived from a verb, participating the properties of a verb and an adjective ; and is generally formed by adding *ing, d* or *ed*, to the verb : as, *rule, ruling, ruled*.

7. ADVERB.

An Adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place, degree, or manner: as, *They are now here, studying very diligently.*

8. CONJUNCTION.

A Conjunction is a word used to connect words or sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms so connected: as, *Thou and he are happy, because you are good.*

9. PREPOSITION.

A Preposition is a word used to express some relation of different things to each other, and is generally placed before a noun or a pronoun: as, *The paper lies before me on the desk.*

10. INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is a word that is uttered merely to indicate some strong or sudden emotion of the mind: as, *Oh! Alas!*

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING,

(CHAPTER I.)

In which it is required of the pupil—to distinguish and define the different parts of speech. Thus:

The patient ox submits to the yoke, and meekly performs the labour required of him.

The . . . is an article. An article is a word placed before nouns, to limit their signification.

patient . . is an adjective. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality.

ox is a noun. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.

<i>submits</i> . . .	is a verb.	A verb is a word that signifies <i>to be, to act, or to be acted upon.</i>
<i>to</i> . . .	is a preposition.	A preposition is a word used to express some relation of different things to each other, and is generally placed before a noun or a pronoun.
<i>the</i> . . .	is an article.	An article is a word placed before nouns, to limit their signification.
<i>yoke</i> . . .	is a noun.	A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.
<i>and</i> . . .	is a conjunction.	A conjunction is a word used to connect words or sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms so connected.
<i>meekly</i> . . .	is an adverb.	An adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place, degree, or manner.
<i>performs</i> . . .	is a verb.	A verb is a word that signifies <i>to be, to act, or to be acted upon.</i>
<i>the</i> . . .	is an article.	An article is a word placed before nouns, to limit their signification.
<i>labour</i> . . .	is a noun.	A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.
<i>required</i> . . .	is a participle.	A participle is a word derived from a verb, participating the properties of a verb and an adjective; and is generally formed by adding <i>ing, d</i> or <i>ed</i> , to the verb.
<i>of</i> . . .	is a preposition.	A preposition is a word used to express some relation of different things to each other, and is generally placed before a noun or a pronoun.
<i>him</i> . . .	is a pronoun.	A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun.

LESSON I.

The rose, the lily, and the pink, are fragrant flowers.

A peach, an apple, a pear, or an orange, is delicious.

A landscape presents a pleasing variety of objects.

Man is the noblest work of creation.

The eagle has a strong and piercing eye,

The swallow builds her nest of mud, and lines it with soft feathers.

The setting sun gives a beautiful brilliancy to the western sky.

LESSON II.

Candour, sincerity, and truth, are amiable qualities.

Virtuous youth gradually brings forward accomplished and flourishing manhood.

Injuries retaliated in anger, excite resentment in return.

All that is great and good in the universe, is on the side of clemency and mercy.

Industry is needful in every condition of life : the price of all improvement is labour.

Sloth enfeebles equally the bodily and the mental powers. It saps the foundation of every virtue, and pours upon us a deluge of crimes and evils.

LESSON III.

An idle, mischievous, and disobedient pupil disgraces himself, dishonours his parents, and displeases his teacher.

Alas ! that such examples are sometimes found !

O Virtue ! how miserable are they who forfeit thy rewards !

Pleasure's call attention wins,

Hear it often as we may ;

New as ever seem our sins,

Though committed every day.

O ! then, ere the turf or tomb

Cover us from every eye,

Spirit of instruction ! come,

Make us learn that we must die.

OF THE ARTICLE.

An Article is a word placed before nouns, to limit their signification : the articles are *the*, and *an* or *a*.

An and *a* are one and the same article. *An* is used whenever the following word begins with a vowel sound ; as, *An* art, *an* end, *an* heir, *an* inch, *an* ounce, *an* hour, *an* urn : and *a*, whenever the following word begins with a consonant sound ; as, *A* man, *a* house, *a* wonder, *a* one, *a* yew, *a* use, *a* ewer. Thus the sounds of *w* and *y*, even when expressed by other letters, require *a* and not *an* before them.

The articles are distinguished as the *definite* and the *indefinite*.

The *definite article* is *the*, which denotes some particular thing or things ; as, *The boy, the oranges*.

The *indefinite article* is *an* or *a*, which denotes one thing of a kind, but not any particular one ; as, *A boy, an orange*.

A noun without an article is generally taken in its widest sense ; as, *Man* is endowed with reason.

OF THE NOUN.

A Noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned : as, *George, York, man, apple, truth*.

CLASSES.

Nouns are divided into two general classes ; *proper* and *common*.

A *proper noun* is the name of some particular individual or people ; as, *Adam, Boston, the Hudson, the Romans*.

A *common noun* is the name of a sort, kind, or class of things ; as, *Beast, bird, fish, insect*.

The particular classes, *collective, abstract, and verbal*, are usually included among common nouns.

A *collective noun*, or *noun of multitude*, is the name of many individuals together ; as, *Council, meeting, committee, flock*.

An *abstract noun* is the name of some particular quality considered apart from its substance ; as, *Goodness, hardness, pride, frailty*.

A *verbal or participial noun* is the name of some action or state of being ; and is formed from a verb, like a participle, but employed as a noun : as, “ *The triumphing of the wicked is short.* ” — *Job. xx. 5*.

Obs. 1.—A proper noun with an article prefixed, is used as a common noun ; as, “ *He is the Cicero of his age,* ” — that is, *the orator*. “ *Many a fiery Alp,* ” — that is, *mountain* : except when a common noun is understood ; as, *The [river] Hudson—the [ship] Amity—the treacherous [man] Judas*.

Obs. 2.—A common noun with the definite article prefixed to it, sometimes becomes proper; as, *The Park—the Strand*.

Obs. 3.—The common name of a thing personified often becomes proper; as, “‘My power,’ said *Reason*, ‘is to advise, not to compel.’”—*Johnson*.

MODIFICATIONS.

Nouns have modifications of four kinds; namely, *Persons, Numbers, Genders, and Cases*.

PERSONS.

Persons, in grammar, are modifications that distinguish the speaker, the hearer, and the person or thing merely spoken of.

Obs.—The distinction of persons is founded on the different relations which the objects mentioned, may bear to the discourse itself. It belongs to nouns, pronouns, and finite verbs; and to these it is always applied, either by peculiarity of form, or by inference from the principles of concord. Pronouns are like their antecedents, and verbs are like their subjects, in person.

There are three persons; the *first*, the *second*, and the *third*.

The *first person* is that which denotes the speaker; as, “*I Paul* have written it.”

Obs.—The speaker seldom refers to himself by name, as the speaker; consequently, nouns are rarely used in the first person.

The *second person* is that which denotes the hearer; as, “*Robert*, who did this?”

Obs.—When inanimate things are spoken to, it is by a figure of speech, called personification.

The *third person* is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of; as, “*James* loves his book.”

NUMBERS.

Numbers are modifications that distinguish unity and plurality.

Obs.—The distinction of numbers serves merely to show whether we speak of one object, or of more. It belongs to nouns, pronouns, and finite verbs; and to these it is always applied, either by peculiarity of form, or by inference from the principles of concord. Pronouns are like their antecedents, and verbs are like their subjects, in number.

There are two numbers; the *singular* and the *plural*.

The *singular number* is that which denotes but one; as, *The boy learns*.

The *plural number* is that which denotes more than one; as, *The boys learn*.

The plural number of nouns is regularly formed by adding *s* or *es* to the singular: as, *book, books; box, boxes*.

When the singular ends in a sound which will unite with that of *s*, the plural is generally formed by adding *s* only, and the number of syllables is not increased: as, *pen, pens; grape, grapes*. But when the sound of *s* cannot be united with that of the primitive word, the plural adds *s* to final *e*, and *es* to other terminations, and forms a separate syllable: as, *page, pages; fox, foxes*.

OBS. 1.—Nouns ending in *o* preceded by a consonant, add *es*, but do not increase their syllables: as, *wo, woes; hero, heroes; negro, negroes; potato, potatoes; muskito, muskitoes; octavo, octavoes*. Other nouns in *o* add *s* only; as *folio, folios*.

OBS. 2.—Nouns ending in *y* preceded by a consonant, change *y* into *i*, and add *es*, without increase of syllables: as, *fly, flies; duty, duties*. Other nouns in *y* add *s* only: as, *day, days; valley, valleys*.

OBS. 3.—The following nouns in *f*, change *f* into *v*, and add *es*, for the plural; *sheaf, leaf, loaf, beef, thief, calf, half, elf, shelf, self, wolf, wharf*: as, *sheaves, leaves, &c.* *Life, lives; knife, knives; wife, wives*; are similar. *Staff* makes *staves*: though the compounds of *staff* are regular; as, *flagstaff, flagstaffs*. The greater number of nouns in *f* and *fe*, are regular; as, *fifes, strifes, chiefs, griefs, gulfs, &c.*

OBS. 4.—The following are still more irregular: *man, men; woman, women; child, children; brother, brethren [or brothers]; foot, feet; ox, oxen; tooth, teeth; goose, geese; louse, lice; mouse, mice; die, dice; penny, pence. Dies, stamps, and pennies, coins, are regular.*

OBS. 5.—Many foreign nouns retain their original plural: as, *arcana, arcana; datum, data; erratum, errata; effluvium, effluvia; medium, media [or mediums]; stratum, strata; stamen, stamina; genus, genera; genius, genii [geniuses, for men of wit]; magus, magi; radius, radii; appendix, appendices [or appendixes]; calx, calces; index, indices [or indexes]; vortex, vortices; axis, axes; basis, bases; crisis, crises; thesis, theses; antithesis, antitheses; diæresis, diæreses; ellipsis, ellipses; emphasis, emphases; hypothesis, hypotheses; metamorphosis, metamorphoses; automaton, automata; criterion, criteria [or criterions]; phænomenon, phænomena; cherub, cherubim; seraph, seraphim; beau, beaux [or beaus]*.

OBS. 6.—Some nouns have no plural; as, *gold, pride, meekness*. Proper names, strictly used as such, want the plural. But when several persons of the same name are spoken of, the noun becomes in some degree common, and admits the plural form and an article; as, *The Stuarts—The Cæsars*. When a title is prefixed, the name, and not the title, is usually made plural; as, *The Miss Howards*.

Obs. 7.—Some nouns have no singular ; as, *embers, ides, oats, scissors, tongs, vespers, literati, minutiae*.

Obs. 8.—Some are alike in both numbers ; as, *sheep, deer, swine, hose, means, odds, news, species, series, apparatus*. The following are sometimes construed as singular, but more frequently, and more properly, as plural : *alms, amends, pains, riches ; ethics, mathematics, metaphysics, optics, politics, pneumatics*, and other similar names of sciences. *Bellows* and *gallows* are properly alike in both numbers ; but they have a regular plural in vulgar use. *Bolus, fungus, isthmus, prospectus* and *rebus*, admit the regular plural.

Obs. 9.—Compounds in which the principal word is put first, vary the principal word to form the plural, and the adjunct to form the possessive case : as, *father-in-law, fathers-in-law, father-in-law's ; court-martial, courts-martial, court-martial's*. The possessive plural of such nouns, is never used. Compounds ending in *ful*, and all those in which the principal word is put last, form the plural in the same manner as other nouns ; as, *handfuls, spoonfuls, mouthfuls, fellow-servants*.

Obs. 10.—Nouns of multitude, when taken collectively, admit the plural form ; as, *meeting, meetings* : but when taken distributively, they have a plural signification, without the form ; as “ *The jury were divided*.”

GENDERS.

Genders are modifications that distinguish objects in regard to sex.

Obs.—The different genders are founded on the natural distinction of sex in animals, and on the absence of sex in other things. In English, they belong only to nouns and pronouns ; and to these they are usually applied agreeably to the order of nature. Pronouns are of the same gender as the nouns for which they stand.

There are three genders ; the *masculine*, the *feminine*, and the *neuter*.

The *masculine gender* is that which denotes animals of the male kind ; as, *man, father, king*.

The *feminine gender* is that which denotes animals of the female kind ; as, *woman, mother, queen*.

The *neuter gender* is that which denotes things that are neither male nor female ; as, *pen, ink, paper*.

Obs. 1.—Some nouns are equally applicable to both sexes ; as, *cousin, friend, neighbour, parent, person, servant*. The gender of these is usually determined by the context. To such words, some grammarians have applied the unnecessary and improper term *common gender*. Murray justly observes, “ *There is no such gender belonging to the language. The business of parsing can be effectually performed without having recourse to a common gender.*” The term is more useful, and less liable to objection, as applied to the learned languages ; but what occasion have we to speak of a

"*distinction with regard to sex*," which leaves the sex undistinguished?

OBS. 2.—Generic names, even when construed as masculine or feminine, often virtually include both sexes; as, "Hast thou given the *horse* strength? hast thou clothed *his* neck with thunder?"—"Doth the *hawk* fly by thy wisdom, and stretch *her* wings toward the south?"—*Job*. These are called *epicene* nouns.

OBS. 3.—Those terms which are equally applicable to both sexes, (if they are not expressly applied to females,) and those plurals which are known to include both sexes, should be called masculine in parsing; for, the masculine gender is considered the most worthy, and is generally employed when both sexes are included under one common term.

OBS. 4.—The sexes are distinguished in three ways:

1 By the use of different names: as, *bachelor, maid; boy, girl; brother, sister; buck, doe; bull, cow; cock, hen; drake, duck; earl, countess; father, mother; friar, nun; gander, goose; hart, roe; horse, mare; husband, wife; king, queen; lad, lass; lord, lady; man, woman; master, mistress; miller, spawner; nephew, niece; ram, ewe; sloven, slut; son, daughter; stag, hind; steer, heifer; uncle, aunt; wizard, witch*.

2. By the use of different terminations: as, *abbot, abbess; administrator, administratrix; adulterer, adulteress; bridegroom, bride; caterer, cateress; duke, dutchess; emperor, empress; executor, executrix; governor, governess; hero, heroine; landgrave, landgravine; margrave, margravine; marquis, marchioness; sorcerer, sorceress; sultan, sultanness or sultana; testator, testatrix; widower, widow*.

The following become feminine by merely adding *ess*; *baron, deacon, heir, host, jew, lion, mayor, patron, peer, poet, priest, prior, prophet, shepherd, tutor, viscount*. And the following, by rejecting the last vowel, and adding *ess*; *actor, ambassador, arbiter, benefactor, chanter, conductor, doctor, elector, enchanter, founder, hunter, idolater, inventor, prince, protector, songster, spectator, tiger, traitor, votary*.

3. By prefixing an attribute of distinction: as, *cock-sparrow, hen-sparrow; man-servant, maid-servant; he-goat, she-goat; male relations, female relations*.

OBS. 5.—The names of things without life, used literally, are always of the neuter gender. But inanimate objects are often represented figuratively, as having sex. Things remarkable for power, greatness, or sublimity, are spoken of as masculine; as, the *sun, time, death, sleep, fear, anger, winter, war*. Things beautiful, amiable, or prolific, are spoken of as feminine; as, the *moon, earth, nature, fortune, knowledge, hope, spring, peace*.

OBS. 6.—Nouns of multitude, when they convey the idea of unity, or take the plural form, are of the neuter gender; but when they convey the idea of plurality without the form, they follow the gender of the individuals that compose the assemblage.

OBS. 7.—Creatures whose sex is unknown, are generally spoken of as neuter; as, "He fired at the *deer*, and wounded *it*."

CASES.

Cases are modifications that distinguish the relations of nouns and pronouns to other words.

OBS.—The cases are founded on the different relations under which things are represented in discourse, and from which the words acquire correspondent relations, or a dependence on each other according to the sense. In English, these modifications, or relations, belong only to nouns and pronouns. Pronouns are not necessarily like their antecedents, in case.

There are three cases ; the *nominative*, the *possessive*, and the *objective*.

The *nominative case* is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which denotes the subject of a verb : as, *The boy runs ; I run.*

OBS.—The subject of a verb is that which answers to *who* or *what* before it : as, *Who runs ? The boy.*

The *possessive case* is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which denotes the relation of property : as, *The boy's hat ; my hat.*

OBS. 1.—The possessive case of nouns is formed, in the singular number, by adding to the nominative *s* preceded by an apostrophe ; and, in the plural, when the nominative ends in *s*, by adding an apostrophe only.

OBS. 2.—Plural nouns that do not end in *s*, usually form the possessive case in the same manner as the singular ; as, *man's, men's.*

OBS. 3.—When the singular and the plural are alike in the nominative, the apostrophe, which (as Dr. Johnson has shown) is merely a sign of the case, and not of elision, ought to follow the *s* in the plural, to distinguish it from the singular ; as, *sheep's, sheeps'.*

OBS. 4.—The *apostrophic s* adds a syllable to the noun, when it will not unite with the sound in which the nominative ends ; as, *torch's*, pronounced *torchiz*.

OBS. 5.—The apostrophe and *s* are sometimes added to mere characters, to denote plurality, and not the possessive case ; as, *Two a's—three b's—four 9's.*

The *objective case* is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which denotes the object of a verb, participle, or preposition : as, *I know the boy ; he knows me.*

OBS. 1.—The object of a verb, participle, or preposition, is that which answers to *whom* or *what* after it; as, I know *whom*? The boy.

OBS. 2.—The nominative and the objective of nouns, are always alike, being distinguishable from each other only by their place in a sentence.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

The declension of a noun is a regular arrangement of its numbers and cases. Thus :

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	friend,	Nom.	friends,
Poss.	friend's,	Poss.	friends',
Obj.	friend ;	Obj.	friends.
Nom.	man,	Nom.	men,
Poss.	man's,	Poss.	men's,
Obj.	man ;	Obj.	men.
Nom.	fox,	Nom.	foxes,
Poss.	fox's,	Poss.	foxes',
Obj.	fox ;	Obj.	foxes.
Nom.	fly,	Nom.	flies,
Poss.	fly's,	Poss.	flies',
Obj.	fly ;	Obj.	flies.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING,

(CHAPTER II.)

In which it is required of the pupil—to distinguish and define the different parts of speech, and the classes and modifications of the articles and nouns. Thus :

James is a lad of uncommon talents.

James is a proper noun, of the third person, singular number, masculine gender, and nominative case.

1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.

2. A proper noun is the name of some particular individual or people.

3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of.

4. The singular number is that which denotes but one.

5. The masculine gender is that which denotes animals of the male kind.

6. The nominative case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which denotes the subject of a verb.

is is a verb. A verb is a word that signifies *to be, to act, or to be acted upon.*

a is the indefinite article.

1. An article is a word placed before nouns, to limit their signification.

2. The indefinite article is *an* or *a*, which denotes one thing of a kind, but not any particular one.

lad is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, masculine gender, and nominative case.

1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.

2. A common noun is the name of a sort, kind, or class of things.

3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of.

4. The singular number is that which denotes but one.

5. The masculine gender is that which denotes animals of the male kind.

6. The nominative case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which denotes the subject of a verb.

of is a preposition.

A preposition is a word used to express some relation of different things to each other, and is generally placed before a noun or a pronoun.

uncommon is an adjective.

An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality.

talents is a common noun, of the third person, plural number, neuter gender, and objective case.

1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.

2. A common noun is the name of a sort, kind, or class of things.

3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of.

4. The plural number is that which denotes more than one.

5. The neuter gender is that which denotes things that are neither male nor female.

6. The objective case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which denotes the object of a verb, participle, or preposition.

LESSON I.

Science strengthens and enlarges the mind.

A large ship, traversing the ocean by the force of the wind, is a noble proof of the power and ingenuity of man.

When spring returns, the trees resume their verdure, and the plants and flowers display their beauty.

I John saw these things and heard them.

And the king spake, and said to Daniel, ‘O Daniel! servant of the living God, is thy God, whom thou servest continually, able to deliver thee from the lions?’

LESSON II.

And all the king’s servants, that were in the king’s gate, bowed, and revered Haman : but Mordecai bowed not, nor did him reverence.

Esther put on her royal apparel, and stood in the inner court of the king’s house.

A mother’s tenderness and a father’s care are nature’s gifts for man’s advantage.

Then shall man’s pride and dulness comprehend

His actions’, passions’, being’s use and end.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

An Adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality : as, A *wise* man ; a *new* book.—You *two* are *diligent*.

CLASSES.

Adjectives may be divided into six classes ; namely, *common*, *proper*, *numeral*, *pronominal*, *participial*, and *compound*.

A *common adjective* is any ordinary epithet ; as, *Good*, *bad*, *peaceful*, *warlike*.

A *proper adjective* is one that is formed from a proper name ; as, *American*, *English*, *Platonic*

A *numeral adjective* is one that expresses a definite number. Numeral adjectives are of two kinds : namely,

1. Cardinal ; as, *One*, *two*, *three*, *four*, &c.

2. Ordinal ; as, *First*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, &c.

A *pronominal adjective* is a definitive word which may either accompany its noun, or represent it understood ; as, “ *All* [men] join to guard what *each* [man] desires to gain.”—*Pope*.

A *participial adjective* is one that has the form of a participle ; as, An *amusing* story.

A *compound adjective*, is one that consists of two or more words joined by a hyphen ; as, *nut-brown*, *laughter-loving*, *four-footed*.

MODIFICATIONS.

Adjectives have, commonly, no modifications but *comparison*.

Comparison is a variation of the adjective, to express quality in different degrees ; as, *hard*, *harder*, *hardest*.

There are three degrees of comparison ; the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

The *positive degree* is that which is expressed by the adjective in its simple form ; as, *hard*, *soft*, *good*.

OBS.—As this form of the adjective does not necessarily imply comparison, and as many adjectives admit no other, it is not requisite in parsing, to mention the degree, unless it be the comparative or the superlative.

The *comparative degree* is that which exceeds the positive ; as, *harder*, *softer*, *better*.

The *superlative degree* is that which is not exceeded ; as, *hardest*, *softest*, *best*.

Adjectives are regularly compared, when the comparative degree is expressed by adding *er*, and the superlative, by adding *est* to them ; as,

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
great,	greater,	greatest.
*wide,	wider,	widest.
hot,	hotter,	hottest.

This method of comparison is chiefly applicable to monosyllables, and to dissyllables ending in *y* or mute *c*.

* See Rules for Spelling III. and VI.

The different degrees of a quality may also be expressed, with precisely the same import, by prefixing to the adjective the adverbs *more* and *most* : as, *wise, more wise, most wise ; famous, more famous, most famous ; amiable, more amiable, most amiable*. But this can hardly be called a variation of the adjective. The adverbs may, with more propriety, be parsed separately.

Most adjectives of more than one syllable, admit only the latter method of comparison.

Diminution of quality is expressed, in like manner, by the adverbs *less* and *least* ; as, *wise, less wise, least wise*.

The following adjectives are compared irregularly : *good, better, best ; bad or ill, worse, worst ; little, less, least ; much, more, most ; many, more, most ; far, farther, farthest ; forth, further, furthest ; late, later or latter, latest or last*.

OBS. 1.—All these irregular words, except *late* and the positives *good, bad, and many*, are adverbs as well as adjectives. *Far* is now seldom used as an adjective in the positive ; and *forth*, never.

OBS. 2.—The words, *hind, fore, in, out, up, under, mid, head, and top*, which, in composition with nouns, are often used as adjectives, have a form of comparison that is both irregular and redundant : as, *hind, hinder, hindmost or hindermost ; fore, former, foremost or first ; in, inner, inmost or innermost ; out, outer or utter, outmost or utmost, outermost or uttermost ; up, upper, upmost or uppermost ; — under, undermost ; mid or middle, —, midmost or middlemost ; head, —, headmost ; top, —, topmost*. But it may be remarked of the comparatives here given, as well as of the Latin *superior* and *inferior*, *anterior* and *posterior*, *interior* and *exterior*, *prior* and *ulterior*, *senior* and *junior*, *major* and *minor*, that they cannot, like other comparatives, be construed with the conjunction *than*.

OBS. 3.—Adjectives whose signification does not admit of different degrees, cannot be compared ; as, *two, second, all, right, immortal, infinite*.

OBS. 4.—Nouns are often used as adjectives ; as, *An iron bar—an evening school*.

OBS. 5.—The numerals are often used as nouns ; and, as such, are regularly declined : as, *Such a one—one's own self—the little ones—by tens—for twenty's sake*.

OBS. 6.—Comparatives, and the word *other*, are sometimes also employed as nouns, and have the regular declension ; as, *Our superiors—his betters—the elder's advice—an* other's wo—let others do as they will*. But, as adjectives, these words are invariable.

* There seems to be no good reason for joining *an* and *other*. *An* here excludes any other article ; and analogy and consistency require that the words be separated. Their union has led sometimes to an improper repetition of the article ; as, ' Another such a man,'—for, ' An other such man.'

OBS. 7.—Pronominal adjectives, when their nouns are expressed, simply relate to them, and have no modifications: except *this* and *that*, which form the plural *these* and *those*; and *much*, *many*, and a few others, which are compared.

OBS. 8.—Pronominal adjectives, when their nouns are not expressed, may be parsed as representing them in *person*, *number*, *gender*, and *case*.

OBS. 9.—The following are the principal pronominal adjectives: *All*, *any*, *both*, *each*, *either*, *every*, *few*, *former*, *first*, *latter*, *last*, *many*, *neither*, *none*, *one*, *same*, *some*, *such*, *this*, *that*, *which*, *what*. *Which* and *what*, when they are not prefixed to nouns, are pronouns.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING,

(CHAPTER III.)

In which it is required of the pupil—to distinguish and define the different parts of speech, and the classes and modifications of the articles, nouns, and adjectives. Thus :

I prefer the shortest course.

I is a pronoun. A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun.
prefer is a verb. A verb is a word that signifies *to be*, *to act*, or *to be acted upon*.

the is the definite article.

1. An article is a word placed before nouns, to limit their signification.
2. The definite article is *the*, which denotes some particular thing or things.

shortest is a common adjective, of the superlative degree.

1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality.
2. A common adjective is any ordinary epithet.
3. The superlative degree is that which is not exceeded.

course is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter gender, and objective case.

1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.
2. A common noun is the name of a sort, kind, or class of things.
3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of.
4. The singular number is that which denotes but one.
5. The neuter gender is that which denotes things that are neither male nor female.
6. The objective case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which denotes the object of a verb, participle, or preposition.

LESSON I.

There is an easier and better way.

Earthly joys are few and transitory.

Heavenly rewards are complete and eternal.

The best and wisest men are sometimes in fault.

Demosthenes was a famous Grecian orator.

This plain old man has more wit than all his opponents.

The three rooms on the second floor, are smaller and less convenient than the others.

The largest and most glorious machines, contrived and erected by human skill, are not worthy of a comparison with the magnificent productions of nature.

LESSON II.

The first years of man must make provision for the last.

External things are naturally variable, but truth and reason are always the same.

‘To him that lives well,’ answered the hermit, ‘every form of life is good; nor can I give any other rule for choice, than to remove from all apparent evil.’

Come, calm Content, serene and sweet!

O gently guide my pilgrim feet

To find thy hermit cell;

Where, in some pure and equal sky,

Beneath thy soft indulgent eye,

The modest virtues dwell.

OF THE PRONOUN.

A Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun: as, The boy loves *his* book; *he* has long lessons, and *he* learns *them* well.

OBS.—The word for which a pronoun stands, is called its *antecedent*, because it usually precedes the pronoun. But some have limited the term *antecedent*, to the word represented by a relative. The pronouns *I* and *thou*, in their different modifications, stand immediately for persons that are, in general, sufficiently known without being named. The other personal pronouns are sometimes ta-

ken in a general sense, to denote persons not mentioned. The personal and the interrogative pronouns often stand in construction as the antecedents to other pronouns; as, "*He that* arms his intent with virtue, is invincible."

CLASSES.

Pronouns are divided into three classes; *personal*, *relative*, and *interrogative*.

A *personal pronoun*, is a pronoun that shows, by its form, of what person it is. The simple personal pronouns are five: namely, *I*, of the first person; *thou*, of the second person; *he*, *she*, and *it*, of the third person.

A *relative pronoun*, is a pronoun that represents an antecedent word or phrase, and connects different clauses of a sentence. The relative pronouns are, *who*, *which*, *what*, and *that*.

OBS. 1.—*Who* is usually applied to persons only; *which*, though formerly applied to persons, is now confined to animals and inanimate things; *what* (as a mere pronoun) is applied to things only: *that* is applied indifferently to persons, animals, or things.

OBS. 2.—The pronoun *what* has a twofold relation, and is often used (by ellipsis of the noun) both as antecedent and relative, being equivalent to *that which* or *the thing which*. In this double relation, *what* represents two cases at the same time; as, "*He is ashamed of what he has done*;" that is, of *that which* he has done. It is usually of the singular number, though sometimes plural.

OBS. 3.—*What* is sometimes used both as an adjective and a relative at the same time, and is placed before the noun which it represents: as, "*What money we had, was taken away*;" that is, *All the money that we had*, &c.—"*What man but enters, dies*;" that is, *Any man who*, &c. Indeed, it does not admit of being construed after a noun, as a simple relative. The compound *whatever* has the same peculiarities of construction.

OBS. 4.—*Who*, *which*, and *what*, when the affix *ever* or *soever* is added, have an unlimited signification; and, as some general term, such as *any person*, or *any thing*, is usually implied as the antecedent, they are all commonly followed by two verbs: as, "*Whoever attends, will improve*;" that is, *Any person who* attends, will improve.

OBS. 5.—*Which* and *what* are often prefixed to nouns as definitive or interrogative adjectives; and, as such, may be applied to persons as well as to things: as, "*What man?*"—" *Which boy?*"

OBS. 6.—*That* is a relative pronoun, when it is equivalent to *who* or *which*; as, "*The days that [which] are past, are gone forever*." It is a definitive or pronominal adjective, when it relates to a noun expressed or understood; as, "*That book is new*." In other cases, it is a conjunction; as, "*Live well, that you may die well*."

OBS. 7.—The word *as*, though usually a conjunction or an adverb, has sometimes the construction of a relative pronoun; as, “The Lord added to the church daily such [persons] *as* should be saved.”—*Acts*.

An *interrogative pronoun* is a pronoun with which a question is asked. The interrogative pronouns are *who*, *which*, and *what*.

OBS. 1.—*Whether* was formerly used as an interrogative pronoun, referring to one of two things; as, “*Whether* is greater, the gold or the temple?”—*Mat. xxiii. 17*.

OBS. 2.—Interrogative pronouns differ from relatives chiefly in this; that, as the subject referred to is unknown to the speaker, they do not relate to a preceding noun, but to something which is to be expressed in the answer to the question.

MODIFICATIONS.

Pronouns have the same modifications as nouns; namely, *Persons*, *Numbers*, *Genders*, and *Cases*.

OBS.—In the personal pronouns, most of these properties are distinguished by the words themselves; in the relative and the interrogative pronouns, they are ascertained chiefly by the antecedent and the verb. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons, are equally applicable to both sexes; and should be considered masculine or feminine according to the known application of them. The speaker and the hearer, being present to each other, of course know the sex to which they respectively belong; and, whenever they appear in narrative, we are told who they are. In Latin, an adjective or a participle relating to these pronouns, is varied to agree with them in *number*, *gender*, and *case*; as,

Miseræ hoc tamen unum

Exequere, Anna, mihi: solam nam perfidus ille

Te colere, arcanos etiam tibi credere sensus;

Sola viri molles aditus et tempora nôras.—*Virgil*.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

The declension of a pronoun is a regular arrangement of its numbers and cases. The personal pronouns are thus declined.

I, of the first person.

Sing. Nom. I,	Plur. Nom. we,
Poss. my, or mine,	Poss. our, or ours,
Obj. me;	Obj. us.

THOU, of the second person.

Sing. Nom. thou,	Plur. Nom. ye*, or you,
Poss. thy, or thine,	Poss. your, or yours,
Obj. thee ;	Obj. you.

HE, SHE, and IT, of the third person.

HE, of the masculine gender.

Sing. Nom. he,	Plur. Nom. they,
Poss. his,	Poss. their, or theirs,
Obj. him ;	Obj. them.

SHE, of the feminine gender.

Sing. Nom. she,	Plur. Nom. they,
Poss. her, or hers,	Poss. their, or theirs,
Obj. her ;	Obj. them.

IT, of the neuter gender.

Sing. Nom. it,	Plur. Nom. they,
Poss. its,†	Poss. their, or theirs,
Obj. it ;	Obj. them.

OBS.—Most of the personal pronouns have two forms of the possessive case. The former is used before a noun expressed ; the latter, when the governing noun is understood, or so placed as not immediately to follow the pronoun. *Mine* and *thine* were formerly used before words beginning with a vowel sound ; as, “ It was thou, a man, *mine* equal, my guide, and *mine* acquaintance.”—*Psal.* But this construction is now obsolete.

The noun *self*, added to the personal pronouns, forms a class of *compound personal pronouns*, that are used when an action reverts upon the agent, and also when some persons are to be distinguished from others : as, sing. *myself*, plur. *ourselves* ; sing. *thymself*, plur. *yourselves* ; sing. *him-*

* The use of the pronoun *ye*, is confined to the solemn style, and to the burlesque. In the latter, it is sometimes used for the objective case.

† In ancient times, *he*, *his*, and *him*, were applied to things neuter. In our translation of the Bible, *it* is employed in the nominative and the objective, but *his* is retained in the possessive, neuter ; as, “ Look not thou upon the wine, when it is red, when it giveth *his* colour in the cup, when it moveth *itself* aright.”—*Prov.* xxiii. 31.

self, herself, itself, plur. themselves.* They all want the possessive case, and are alike in the nominative and objective.

The relative and the interrogative pronouns are thus declined.

Who, applied to persons.

Sing. Nom. who,	Plur. Nom. who,
Poss. whose,	Poss. whose,
Obj. whom;	Obj. whom.

Which, applied to animals and things.

Sing. Nom. which,	Plur. Nom. which,
Poss. †——	Poss. ——
Obj. which ;	Obj. which.

What, generally applied to things.

Sing. Nom. what,	Plur. Nom. what,
Poss. ——	Poss. ——
Obj. what ;	Obj. what.

That, applied to persons, animals, and things.

Sing. Nom. that,	Plur. Nom. that,
Poss. ——	Poss. ——
Obj. that;	Obj. that.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING,

(CHAPTER IV.)

In which it is required of the pupil— to distinguish and define the different parts of speech, and the classes and modifications of the articles, nouns, adjectives, and pronouns. Thus :

She met them.

She is a personal pronoun, of the third person, singular number, feminine gender, and nominative case.

* *Hissself, itsself, and theirselves*, are more analogical than *himself, itself, themselves*; but custom has rejected the former, and established the latter. When an adjective is prefixed to *self*, the pronouns are written separately in the possessive case; as, *My single self—My own self—his own self—their own selves.*

† *Whose* is sometimes used as the possessive case of *which*; as, "A religion whose origin is divine."—*Blair*.

1. A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun.
 2. A personal pronoun is a pronoun that shows, by its form, of what person it is.
 3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of.
 4. The singular number is that which denotes but one.
 5. The feminine gender is that which denotes animals of the female kind.
 6. The nominative case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which denotes the subject of a verb.
- met* is a verb. A verb is a word that signifies *to be*, *to act*, or *to be acted upon*.
- them* is a personal pronoun, of the third person, plural number, masculine gender, and objective case.
1. A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun.
 2. A personal pronoun is a pronoun that shows, by its form, of what person it is.
 3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of.
 4. The plural number is that which denotes more than one.
 5. The masculine gender is that which denotes animals of the male kind.
 6. The objective case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which denotes the object of a verb, participle, or proposition.

LESSON I.

I who was present, know the particulars.

He who has not virtue, is not truly wise.

An enemy that disguises himself under the veil of friendship, is worse than one that declares open hostility.

He that improperly reveals a secret, injures both himself and them to whom he tells it.

Eye me, blest Providence, and square my trial

To my proportion'd strength!—Shepherd, lead on.

LESSON II.

All men have their frailties. Whoever looks for a friend without imperfections, will never find what he seeks: we love ourselves with all our faults; and we ought to love our friends in like manner.

Selina's benevolence and piety engaged the esteem of all who knew her.

When the Saxons subdued the Britons. they introduced into England their own language, which was a dialect of the Teutonic, or Gothic.

LESSON III.

Disguise thyself as thou wilt, still, Slavery ! still thou art a bitter draught ; and though thousands in all ages have been made to drink of thee, thou art no less bitter on that account.

Redeem we time ?—its loss we dearly buy.
 What pleads Lorenzo for his high-priz'd sports ?
 He pleads time's num'rous blanks ; he loudly pleads
 The straw-like trifles on life's common stream.
 From whom those blanks and trifles, but from thee ?
 No blank, no trifle, nature made or meant.

OF THE VERB.

A Verb is a word that signifies *to be, to act, or to be acted upon* : as, *I am, I rule, I am ruled.*

CLASSES.

Verbs are divided, with respect to their form, into two classes ; *regular* and *irregular*.

A *regular verb* is a verb that forms the preterit and the perfect participle by assuming *d* or *ed* ; as, *love, loved, loved.*

Obs.—Regular verbs form their preterit and perfect participle, by adding *d* to final *e*, and *ed* to all other terminations.

An *irregular verb* is a verb that does not form the preterit and the perfect participle by assuming *d* or *ed* ; as, *see, saw, seen.*

Verbs are divided, with respect to their signification, into four classes ; *active-transitive, active-intransitive, passive, and neuter.*

An *active-transitive verb* is a verb that expresses an action which has some person or thing for its object ; as “ *Cain slew Abel.* ”

An *active-intransitive verb* is a verb that expresses an action which has no person or thing for its object ; as, “ *John walks.* ”

OBS.—When these verbs are spoken of, without reference to their regimen, they are simply called *active*.

A *passive verb* is a verb that represents its subject, or nominative, as being acted upon ; as, “ I *am compelled*.”

A *neuter verb* is a verb that expresses neither action nor passion, but simply being, or a state of being ; as, “ Thou *art*—he *sleeps*.”

OBS. 1.—Active-transitive verbs generally take the agent before them and the object after them ; as, “ Cæsar *conquered* Pompey.” The passive verb reverses this order, and denotes that the subject, or nominative, is affected by the action ; and the agent follows, being introduced by the preposition *by* : as, “ Pompey *was conquered* by Cæsar.”

OBS. 2.—In most of our grammars and dictionaries, all *active-intransitive* verbs are called *neuter*. They are here made a distinct class ; and those only are regarded as *neuter*, which imply a state of existence without action.

OBS. 3.—Most active verbs may be used either transitively or intransitively. Active verbs are transitive when there is any person or thing expressed or clearly implied, upon which the action terminates ; when they do not govern such an object, they are intransitive.

OBS. 4.—Some verbs may be used either in an active or a neuter sense. In the sentence, “ Here I *rest*,” *rest* is a neuter verb ; but in the sentence, “ Here I *rest* my hopes,” *rest* is an active-transitive verb, and governs *hopes*.

OBS. 5.—An active-intransitive verb, followed by a preposition and its object, will sometimes admit of being put into the passive form, the object of the preposition being assumed for the nominative, and the preposition being retained with the verb, as an adverb : as, (*active*,) “ They laughed at him”—(*passive*,) “ He was laughed at.”

MODIFICATIONS.

Verbs have modifications of four kinds ; namely, *Moods*, *Tenses*, *Persons*, and *Numbers*.

MOODS.

Moods are different forms of the verb, each of which expresses the being, action, or passion, in some particular manner.

There are five moods ; the *Infinitive*, the *Indicative*, the *Potential*, the *Subjunctive*, and the *Imperative*.

The *Infinitive mood* is that form of the verb, which expresses the being, action, or passion, in an unlim-

ited manner, and without person or number ; as, *to read, to speak.*

OBS.—The infinitive is distinguished by the preposition *to*, which, with a few exceptions, immediately precedes it. In dictionaries, *to* is generally prefixed to verbs, to distinguish them from other parts of speech.

The *Indicative mood* is that form of the verb, which simply indicates, or declares a thing ; as, *I write ; you know* : or asks a question ; as, *Do you know ?*

The *Potential mood* is that form of the verb, which expresses the power, liberty, possibility, or necessity, of being, action, or passion : as, *I can read ; we must go.*

OBS. 1.—This mood may also be used in asking a question ; as, *Must we go ?*

OBS. 2.—The potential mood is known by the signs *may, can, must, might, could, would, and should.*

The *Subjunctive mood* is that form of the verb, which represents the being, action, or passion, as conditional, doubtful, or contingent ; as, “ *If thou go, see that thou offend not.*”

OBS. 1.—The subjunctive mood is always connected with an other verb. Its dependence is usually denoted by a conjunction ; as, *if, that, though, lest, unless.*

OBS. 2.—The indicative and potential moods, in all their tenses, may be used in the same dependent manner ; but this seems not to be a sufficient reason for considering them as parts of the subjunctive mood.

The *Imperative mood* is that form of the verb, which is used in commanding, exhorting, entreating, or permitting : as, “ *Depart thou.*”—“ *Be comforted.*”—“ *Forgive me.*”—“ *Go in peace.*”

TENSES.

Tenses are those modifications of the verb, which distinguish time.

There are six tenses ; the *Present*, the *Imperfect*, the *Perfect*, the *Pluperfect*, the *First-future*, and the *Second-future*.

The *Present tense* is that which expresses what now exists or is taking place : as, “ I hear a noise ; somebody is coming.”

The *Imperfect tense* is that which expresses what took place, within some period of time fully past : as, “ We saw him last week ; I admired his behaviour.”

The *Perfect tense* is that which expresses what has taken place, within some period of time not yet fully past : as, “ I have seen him to-day.”

The *Pluperfect tense* is that which expresses what had taken place, at some past time mentioned : as, “ I had seen him, when I met you.”

The *First-future tense* is that which expresses what will take place hereafter : as, “ I shall see him again.”

The *Second-future tense* is that which expresses what will have taken place, at some future time mentioned : as, “ I shall have seen him by to-morrow noon.”

OBS. 1.—The terms here defined are the names usually given to those parts of the verb to which they are applied ; and, though some of them are not so strictly appropriate as scientific names ought to be, we think it inexpedient to change them.

OBS. 2.—The tenses do not all express time with equal precision. Those of the indicative mood, are the most definite. The time expressed by the same tenses in the other moods, is frequently relative, and sometimes indefinite.

OBS. 3.—The present tense, in the indicative mood, expresses general truths, and customary actions ; as, “ Vice produces misery.”—“ She often visits us.” We also use it in speaking of persons who are dead, but whose works remain ; as, “ Seneca reasons well.”

OBS. 4.—The present tense in the subjunctive mood, and in the other moods when preceded by *as soon as*, *after*, *before*, *till*, or *when*, is generally used with reference to future time ; as, “ If he ask a fish will he give him a stone ?”—“ When he arrives, I will send for you.”

OBS. 5.—In animated narrative, the present tense is sometimes substituted for the imperfect ; as, “ As he lay indulging himself in state, he sees let down from the ceiling, a glittering sword, hung by a single hair.”—“ Ulysses wakes not knowing where he was.” *Pope*.

OBS. 6.—The present infinitive can scarcely be said to express any particular time. It is usually dependent on an other verb, and, therefore, relative in time. It may become subject to any tense of

any mood ; as, "I intend *to do it*, I intended *to do it*, I have intended *to do it*," &c. It is often used to express futurity ; as, "The time *to come*"—"The world *to come*"—"Rapture yet *to be*."

Obs. 7.—The imperfect tense of the indicative mood, in its simple form, is called the *preterit* ; as, *loved, saw, was*.

Obs. 8.—The perfect tense, like the present, is sometimes used with reference to future time ; as, "He will be fatigued, before he *has walked* a mile."

Obs. 9.—The pluperfect tense is often used conditionally, without a conjunction ; as, "*Had I seen* you, I should have stopped."

PERSONS AND NUMBERS.

The person and number of a verb, are modifications in which it agrees with its subject or nominative.

In each number, there are three persons ; and in each person, two numbers : thus,

Singular.

Plural.

1st per. I	love,	1st per. We	love,
2d per. Thou	lovest,	2d per. You	love,
3d per. He	loves ;	3d per. They	love.

Obs. 1.—Thus the verb, in some of its parts, varies its termination to distinguish, or agree with, the different persons and numbers. The change is, however, principally confined to the second and third persons singular of the present tense of the indicative mood, and to the auxiliaries *hast* and *has* of the perfect. In the ancient biblical style, now used only on solemn occasions, the second person singular is distinguished through all the tenses of the indicative and potential moods. And, as the use of the pronoun *thou* is now mostly confined to the solemn style, the terminations of that style are retained in all our examples of the conjugation of verbs. In the plural number, there is no variation of ending, to denote the different persons ; and the verb in the three persons plural, is the same as in the first person singular. As the verb is always attended by a noun or a pronoun, expressing the subject of the affirmation, no ambiguity arises from the want of particular terminations in the verb, to distinguish the different persons and numbers.

Obs. 2.—Persons in high stations, being usually surrounded by attendants, it became, many centuries ago, a species of court flattery, to address individuals of this class, in the plural number. And the practice extended, in time, to all ranks of society : so that, at present, the customary mode of familiar as well as complimentary address, is altogether plural ; both the verb and the pronoun being used in that form. This practice, which confounds one of the most important distinctions of the language, affords a striking instance

of the power of fashion. The society of *Friends*, however, continue to employ the singular number in familiar discourse; and custom, which has now destroyed the compliment of the plural, has placed the appropriate form, (at least as regards them,) on an equality with the plural in point of respect. The singular is universally employed in reference to the Supreme Being; and is generally preferred in poetry. It is the language of Scripture, and is consistently retained in all our grammars.

Obs. 3.—As most of the peculiar terminations by which the second person singular of verbs is properly distinguished in the solemn style, are not only difficult of utterance, but are quaint and formal in conversation; the preterits and auxiliaries are now seldom varied in familiar discourse, and the present is generally simplified by contraction. A distinction between the solemn and the familiar style, has long been admitted, in the pronunciation of the termination *ed*, and in the ending of the verb in the third person singular; and it is evidently according to good taste and the best usage, to admit such a distinction in the second person singular. In the familiar use of the second person singular, the verb is usually varied only in the present tense of the indicative mood, and in the auxiliary *hast* of the perfect. This method of varying the verb renders the second person singular analogous to the third, and accords with the practice of the most intelligent of those who retain the common use of this distinctive and consistent mode of address. It disencumbers their familiar dialect of a multitude of harsh and useless terminations, which serve only, when uttered, to give an uncouth prominence to words not often emphatic; and, without impairing the strength or perspicuity of the language, increases its harmony, and reduces the form of the verb in the second person singular nearly to the same simplicity as in the other persons and numbers.*

* The writings of the Friends, being mostly of a grave cast, afford but few examples of their customary mode of forming the verb in connexion with the pronoun *thou*, in familiar discourse. The following may serve to illustrate it: "To devote all thou *had* to his service"----"If thou *should* come"----"What thou *said*"----"Thou kindly *contributed*"----"The epistle which thou *sent* me"----"Thou *would* perhaps *allow*"----"If thou *submitted*"----"Since thou *left*"----"Should thou *act*"----"Thou *may* be ready"----"That thou *had met*"----"That thou *had intimated*"----"Before thou *puts*" [putst]----"What thou *meets*" [meetst]----"If thou *had made*"----"I observed thou *was*"----"That thou *might put* thy trust"----"Thou *had been* at my house" J. KENDALL. "Thou *may be plundered*"----"That thou *may feel*"----"Though thou *waited* long, and *sought* him"----"I hope thou *will bear* my style"----"Thou *also knows*" [knowst]----"Thou *grew* up"----"I wish thou *would yet take* my counsel." S. CRISP. "Thou *manifested* thy tender regard, *stretched* forth thy delivering hand, and *fed* and *sustained* us." FOTHERGILL. The writer has met with thousands that used the second person singular in conversation, but never with one that employed, on ordinary occasions, all the regular endings of the solemn style. The simplification of the second person singular, which, to a greater or less extent, is every where adopted by the Friends, and which is here limited, defixed, and justified, removes from each verb eighteen of these peculiar terminations; and, (if the number of English verbs be, as stated by several grammarians, 4300,) disburdens their familiar dialect of 77,400 of these awkward and useless appendages. This simplification is supported by usage as extensive as the familiar use of the pronoun *thou*; and is also in accordance with the canons of criticism. "All words and phrases which are remarkably harsh and unharmonious, and not absolutely necessary, should be rejected." *Campbell's Philosophy of Rhetoric*, Sec. 2. Canon First.

The second person singular is regularly formed by adding *st* or *est* to the first person; and the third person singular, in like manner, by adding *s* or *es*: as, *I see*, thou *seest*, he *sees*; *I give*, thou *givest*, he *gives*; *I go*, thou *goest*, he *goes*; *I fly*, thou *fliest*, he *flies*; *I vex*, thou *vexest*, he *vexes*; *I lose*, thou *lovest*, he *loses*.

Obs. 1.—In the solemn style, (except in poetry, which usually contracts* these forms,) the second person singular of the present indicative, and that of the irregular preterit†, commonly end

Some of the Friends (perhaps from an idea that it is less formal) misemploy *thee* for *thou*, and often join it to the third person of the verb instead of the second. Such expressions as, *thee does*, *thee is*, *thee has*, *thee thinks*, &c. are double solecisms; they set all grammar at defiance. Many persons who are not ignorant of grammar, and who employ the pronoun aright, sometimes improperly sacrifice concord to a slight improvement in sound, and give to the verb the ending of the third person, for that of the second. Three instances of this occur in the examples quoted in the preceding paragraph. See also the following, and many more, in the works of R. Burns, who says of himself, "Though it cost the schoolmaster some thrashings, I made an excellent English scholar; and, by the time I was ten or eleven years of age, I was a critic in substantives, verbs, and particles:"—"But when thou *pours*"—"There thou *shines* chief"—"Thou *clears* the head"—"Thou *strings* the nerves"—"Thou *brightens* black despair"—"Thou *comes*"—"Thou *travels* far"—"Thou *paints*"—"Unseen thou *burks*"—"O thou pale orb that silent *shines*." This mode of simplifying the verb, confounds the persons; and, as it has little advantage in sound, over the regular contracted form of the second person, it ought to be avoided. It is too frequently used by the poets.

* The second person singular may be contracted, whenever the verb ends in a sound which will unite with that of *st*. The poets generally employ the contracted forms, but they seem not to have adopted a uniform and consistent method of writing them. Some insert the apostrophe, and double the final consonant, before *st*; as, *hold'st*, *bidd'st*, *said'st*, *ledd'st*, *may'st*, *might'st*, &c.: others add *st* only, and form permanent contractions; as, *holdst*, *bidst*, *saidst*, *ledst*, *mayst*, *mightst*, &c. Some retain the vowel in the termination of certain words, and suppress a preceding one; as, *quick'nest*, *happ'nest*, *scatt'rest*, *slumb'rest*, *slumb'redst*: others contract the termination of such words, and insert the apostrophe; as, *quicken'st*, *happen'st*, *scatter'st*, *slumber'st*, *slumber'dst*. The nature of our language, the accent and pronunciation of it, incline us to contract even all our regular verbs; so as to avoid, if possible, an increase of syllables in the inflection of them. Accordingly, several terminations which formerly constituted distinct syllables, have been either wholly dropped, or blended with the final syllables of the verbs to which they are added. Thus the plural termination *en* has become entirely obsolete; *thor* or *eth* is no longer in common use; *ed* is contracted in pronunciation; the ancient *ys* or *is*, of the third person singular, is changed to *s* or *es*, and is usually added without increase of syllables; and *st* or *est* has, in part, adopted the analogy. So that the proper mode of forming these contractions of the second person singular, seems to be, to add *st* only, and to insert the apostrophe, when a vowel is suppressed from the verb to which this termination is added; as, *thinkst*, *sayst*, *bidst*, *lov'st*, *lov'dst*, *slumberst*, *slumber'dst*.

† Some grammarians say, that, whenever the preterit is like the present, it should take *edst* for the second person singular. This rule gives us such words as *cast-edst*, *cost-edst*, *bid-dedst*, *burst-edst*, *cut-tedst*, *hit-tedst*, *let-tedst*, *put-tedst*, *hurt-edst*, *rid-dedst*, *shed-dedst*, &c. The few examples which may be adduced from ancient writings, in support of this rule, are undoubtedly formed in the usual manner from regular preterits now obsolete; and, if this were not the case, no person of taste could think of employing derivatives so uncouth. Dr. Johnson has justly remarked, that "the chief defect of our language, is ruggedness and asperity." And this defect is peculiarly obvious, when even the regular termination of the second person singular, is added to our preterits. Accordingly we find numerous instances, among the poets, in which that termination is omitted, even in the solemn style.

in *est*, pronounced as a separate syllable. But, as the termination *ed*, in solemn discourse, constitutes a syllable, the regular preterits form the second person singular by adding *st*, without further increase of syllables; as, *loved*, *lovedst*—not, *lovedest*. *Dost* and *hast*, and the irregular preterits *wast*, *didst*, and *hadst*, are permanently contracted. The auxiliaries *shall* and *will*, change the final *l* to *t*. To the auxiliaries *may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*, the termination *est* was formerly added; but they are now generally written with *st* only, and pronounced as monosyllables, even in solemn discourse.

OBS. 2.—The third person singular was anciently formed by adding *th* to verbs ending in *e*, and *eth* to all others. This method of forming the third person singular, always adds a syllable to the verb. It is now confined to the solemn style, and is little used. *Doth*, *hath*, and *saith*, are contractions of verbs thus formed.

OBS. 3.—When the second person singular is employed in familiar discourse, it is usually formed in a manner strictly analogous to that which is now adopted in the third person singular. When the verb ends in a sound which will unite with that of *st* or *s*, the second person singular, is formed by adding *st* only, and the third, by adding *s* only; and the number of syllables is not increased: as, I *read*, thou *readst*, he *reads*; I *know*, thou *knowst*, he *knows*; I *take*, thou *takest*, he *takes*. When the verb ends in mute *e*, no termination renders this *e* vocal in the familiar style, if a synæresis can take place.

OBS. 4.—But when the verb ends in a sound which will not unite with that of *st* or *s*, *st* and *s* are added to final *e*, and *est* and *es* to other terminations; and the verb acquires an additional syllable: as, I *trace*, thou *tracest*, he *traces*; I *pass*, thou *passest*, he *passes*; I *fix*, thou *fixest*, he *fixes*. But verbs ending in *o* or *y* preceded by a consonant, do not exactly follow this rule: in these, *y* is changed into *i*; and, to both *o* and *i*, *est* and *es* are added without increase of syllables: as, I *go*, thou *goest*, he *goes*; I *undo*, thou *undoest*,* he *undoes*; I *fly*, thou *fliest*, he *flies*; I *pity*, thou *pitiest*, he *pities*.

OBS. 5.—The formation of the third person singular of verbs, is precisely the same as that of the plural number of nouns. [See page 20.]

OBS. 6.—The auxiliaries *do*, *doest* or *dost*, *dots*, [pronounced *doo*, *dust*, *duz*,]—*am*, *art*, *is*,—*have*, *hast*, *has*,—being also in frequent use as principal verbs of the present tense, retain their peculiar form, when joined to other verbs. The other auxiliaries are not varied, except in the solemn style.

OBS. 7.—The only regular terminations that are added to verbs, are *ing*, *d* or *ed*, *st* or *est*, *s* or *es*, *th* or *eth*. *Ing*, and *th* or *eth*, always add a syllable to the verb; except in *doth*, *hath*, *saith*. The rest, whenever their sound will unite with that of the final syllable of the verb, are added without increasing the number of syllables; otherwise, they are separately pronounced. In solemn discourse,

* The second person singular of the simple verb *do*, is now usually written *dost*; being contracted in orthography, as well as in pronunciation. This anomaly seems unnecessary.

however, *ed* and *est* are, by most speakers, uttered distinctly in all cases; except, sometimes, when a vowel precedes.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

The conjugation of a verb is a regular arrangement of its moods, tenses, persons, numbers, and participles.

Obs.—The moods and tenses are formed partly by inflections, or changes made in the verb itself, and partly by the combination of the verb or its participle, with a few short verbs, called *auxiliaries*, or *helping verbs*.

There are four principal parts in the conjugation of every simple and complete verb; namely, the *Present*, the *Preterit*, the *Imperfect Participle*, and the *Perfect Participle*. A verb which wants any of these parts, is called *defective*.

Obs.—The present is radically the same in all the moods, and is the part from which all the rest are formed. The present infinitive is the root, or simplest form, of the verb. The preterit and the perfect participle are regularly formed by adding *d* or *ed*, and the imperfect participle by adding *ing*, to the present.

An *auxiliary* is a short verb prefixed to one of the principal parts of an other verb, to express some particular mode and time of the being, action, or passion. The auxiliaries are *do*, *be*, *have*, *shall*, *will*, *may*, *can*, and *must*, with their variations.

Obs.—*Do*, *be*, and *have*, being also principal verbs, are complete; but the participles of *do* and *have*, are not used as auxiliaries, unless *having*, which forms the compound participle, may be considered as such. The other auxiliaries have no participles.

Verbs are conjugated in the following manner.

Conjugation of the regular active verb

LOVE.

Principal Parts.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Preterit.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Love.	Loved.	Loving.		Loved.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

The infinitive mood is that form of the verb, which expresses the being, action, or passion, in an unlimited manner. and without person or number. It is used only in the present and perfect tenses.

Present Tense.

To love.

Perfect Tense.

To have loved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

The Indicative mood is that form of the verb, which simply indicates or declares a thing, or asks a question. It is used in all the tenses.

Present Tense.

Singular.

- 1st per. I love,
- 2d per. Thou lovest,
- 3d per. He loves ;

Plural.

- 1st per. We love,
- 2d per. You love,
- 3d per. They love.

This tense may also be formed by prefixing the auxiliary *do* to the verb : thus,

Singular.

- 1. I do love,
- 2. Thou dost love,
- 3. He does love ;

Plural.

- 1. We do love,
- 2. You do love,
- 3. They do love.

Imperfect Tense.

This tense, in its simple form, is the *preterit*. In all regular verbs, it adds *d* or *ed* to the present : thus,

Singular.

- 1. I loved,
- 2. Thou lovedst,
- 3. He loved ;

Plural.

- 1. We loved,
- 2. You loved,
- 3. They loved.

This tense may also be formed by prefixing the auxiliary *did* to the present : thus,

Singular.

1. I did love,
2. Thou didst love,
3. He did love;

Plural.

1. We did love,
2. You did love,
3. They did love.

OBS.—In a familiar question or negation, the compound form is preferable to the simple. But in the solemn or the poetic style, the simple form is more dignified and graceful : as “ *Understandest* thou what thou readest ? ” — “ Of whom *speaketh* the prophet this ? ” — *Acts* viii. 30, 34. “ *Heard* ye not of lowland war ? ” — *Scott*.

Perfect Tense.

This tense prefixes the auxiliary *have* to the perfect participle : thus,

Singular.

1. I have loved,
2. Thou hast loved,
3. He has loved;

Plural.

1. We have loved,
2. You have loved,
3. They have loved.

Pluperfect Tense.

This tense prefixes the auxiliary *had* to the perfect participle : thus,

Singular.

1. I had loved,
2. Thou hadst loved,
3. He had loved;

Plural.

1. We had loved,
2. You had loved,
3. They had loved.

First-future Tense.

This tense prefixes the auxiliary *shall* or *will* to the present : thus,

1. Simply to express a future action or event :

Singular.

1. I shall love,
2. Thou wilt love,
3. He will love ;

Plural.

1. We shall love,
2. You will love,
3. They will love.

2. To express a promise, volition, command, or threat :

Singular.

1. I will love,
2. Thou shalt love,
3. He shall love ;

Plural.

1. We will love,
2. You shall love,
3. They shall love.

OBS.—In interrogative sentences, the meaning of these auxiliaries is reversed. When preceded by a conjunction implying condition or uncertainty, their import is somewhat varied.

Second-future Tense.

This tense prefixes the auxiliaries *shall have* or *will have* to the perfect participle : thus,

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. I shall have loved, | 1. We shall have loved, |
| 2. Thou wilt have loved, | 2. You will have loved, |
| 3. He will have loved; | 3. They will have loved. |

OBS.—The auxiliary *shall* may also be used in the second and third persons of this tense, when preceded by a conjunction expressing condition or contingency ; as, “ If he *shall have finished* his work, when I return.”

POTENTIAL MOOD.

The potential mood is that form of the verb, which expresses the power, liberty, possibility, or necessity, of being, action, or passion. It is used in the first four tenses.

Present Tense.

This tense prefixes the auxiliary *may*, *can*, or *must*, to the radical verb : thus,

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. I may love, | 1. We may love, |
| 2. Thou mayst love, | 2. You may love, |
| 3. He may love; | 3. They may love. |

Imperfect Tense.

This tense prefixes the auxiliary *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*, to the radical verb : thus,

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. I might love, | 1. We might love, |
| 2. Thou mightst love, | 2. You might love, |
| 3. He might love ; | 3. They might love. |

Perfect Tense.

This tense prefixes the auxiliaries, *may have*, *can have*, or *must have*, to the perfect participle : thus,

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I may have loved, | 1. We may have loved, |
| 2. Thou mayst have loved, | 2. You may have loved, |
| 3. He may have loved; | 3. They may have loved. |

Pluperfect Tense.

This tense prefixes the auxiliaries, *might have*, *could have*, *would have*, or *should have*, to the perfect participle : thus,

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. I might have loved, | 1. We might have loved, |
| 2. Thou mightst have loved, | 2. You might have loved, |
| 3. He might have loved; | 3. They might have loved. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The subjunctive mood is that form of the verb, which represents the being, action, or passion, as conditional, doubtful, or contingent. This mood is generally preceded by a conjunction ; as, *if*, *that*, *though*, *lest*, *unless*, &c. It does not vary its termination, in the different persons. It is used in the present, and sometimes in the imperfect tense ; rarely in any other. As this mood can be used only in a dependent clause, the time implied in its tenses is always relative, and generally indefinite.

Present Tense.

This tense is generally used to express some condition on which a future action or event is affirmed, and is therefore considered by some grammarians, as an elliptical form of the future.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. If I love, | 1. If we love, |
| 2. If thou love, | 2. If you love, |
| 3. If he love ; | 3. If they love. |

OBS.—In this tense, the auxiliary *do* is sometimes employed ; as, “ If thou *do* prosper my way.”—*Gen.* xxiv. 42. “ If he *do* not utter it.”—*Lev.* v. 1.

Imperfect Tense.

This tense, as well as the imperfect of the potential mood, with which it is frequently connected, is properly an aorist, or indefinite tense; and it may refer to time past, present, or future: as, "If therefore perfection *were* by the Levitical priesthood, what further need was there," &c.—*Heb.* vii. 11. "If the whole body *were* an eye, where *were* the hearing?"—*1 Cor.* xii. 17. "If it *were* possible, they shall deceive the very elect."—*Matt.* xxiv. 24.

Singular.

1. If I loved,
2. If thou loved,
3. If he loved,

Plural.

1. If we loved,
2. If you loved,
2. If they loved.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The imperative mood is that form of the verb, which is used in commanding, exhorting, entreating, or permitting. It is commonly used only in the second person of the present tense. In poetry or poetic prose, we sometimes find the first and third persons; as, "My soul, turn from them—*turn we* to survey," &c.—*Goldsmith.* "Fall he that must, beneath his rival's arms," "And live the rest, secure of future harms."—*Pope.* "Blessed be he that blesseth thee."—"Thy kingdom come."—*Bible.*

Present Tense.

- | | | |
|------------------|----------------------|------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | 2. Love [thou], | or Do thou love. |
| <i>Plural.</i> | 2. Love [ye or you], | or Do you love. |

PARTICIPLES.

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| <i>Imperfect,</i> | Loving. |
| <i>Perfect,</i> | Loved. |
| <i>Compound,</i> | Having loved. |

SYNOPSIS.

First Person Singular.

IND. I love, I loved, I have loved, I had loved, I shall love, I shall have loved. POT. I may love, I might love, I may have loved, I might have loved. SUBJ. If I love, If I loved.

Second Person Singular.

IND. Thou lovest, Thou lovedst, Thou hast loved, Thou hadst loved, Thou wilt love, Thou wilt have loved. POT. Thou mayst love, Thou mightst love, Thou mayst have loved, Thou mightst have loved. SUBJ. If thou love, If thou loved. IMP. Love [thou], or Do thou love.

Third Person Singular.

IND. He loves, He loved, He has loved, He had loved, He will love, He will have loved. POT. He may love, He might love, He may have loved, He might have loved. SUBJ. If he love, If he loved.

First Person Plural.

IND. We love, We loved, We have loved, We had loved, We shall love, We shall have loved. POT. We may love, We might love, We may have loved, We might have loved. SUBJ. If we love, If we loved.

Second Person Plural.

IND. You love, You loved, You have loved, You had loved, You will love, You will have loved. POT. You may love, You might love, You may have loved, You might have loved. SUBJ. If you love, If you loved. IMP. Love [ye or you], or Do you love.

Third Person Plural.

IND. They love, They loved, They have loved, They had loved, They will love, They will have loved. POT. They may love, They might love, They may have loved, They might have loved. SUBJ. If they love, If they loved.

OBS.—In the familiar style, the second person singular of this verb, is usually formed thus: IND. Thou lov'st, Thou loved, Thou hast loved, Thou had loved, Thou will love, Thou will have loved, POT. Thou may love, Thou might love, Thou may have loved, Thou might have loved. SUBJ. If thou love, If thou loved. IMP. Love [thou], or Do thou love.

Conjugation of the irregular active verb

SEE.

Principal Parts.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Præterit.</i>	<i>Imp. Participle.</i>	<i>Perf. Participle.</i>
See.	Saw.	Seeing.	Seen.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

To see.

Perfect Tense.

To have seen.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. I see,
2. Thou seest,
3. He sees;

Plural.

1. We see,
2. You see,
3. They see.

Imperfect Tense.

Singular.

1. I saw,
2. Thou sawest,
3. He saw;

Plural.

1. We saw,
2. You saw,
3. They saw.

Perfect Tense.

Singular.

1. I have seen,
2. Thou hast seen,
3. He has seen;

Plural.

1. We have seen,
2. You have seen,
3. They have seen.

Pluperfect Tense.

Singular.

1. I had seen,
2. Thou hadst seen,
3. He had seen;

Plural.

1. We had seen,
2. You had seen,
3. They had seen.

*First-future Tense.**Singular.*

1. I shall see,
2. Thou wilt see,
3. He will see;

Plural.

1. We shall see,
2. You will see,
3. They will see.

*Second-future Tense.**Singular.*

1. I shall have seen,
2. Thou wilt have seen,
3. He will have seen;

Plural.

1. We shall have seen,
2. You will have seen,
3. They will have seen.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

*Present Tense.**Singular.*

1. I may see,
2. Thou mayst see,
3. He may see;

Plural.

1. We may see,
2. You may see,
3. They may see.

*Imperfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I might see,
2. Thou mightst see,
3. He might see;

Plural.

1. We might see,
2. You might see,
3. They might see.

*Perfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I may have seen,
2. Thou mayst have seen,
3. He may have seen;

Plural.

1. We may have seen,
2. You may have seen,
3. They may have seen.

*Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I might have seen,
2. Thou mightst have seen,
3. He might have seen;

Plural.

1. We might have seen,
2. You might have seen,
3. They might have seen.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I see,
2. If thou see,
3. If he see;

Plural.

1. If we see,
2. If you see,
3. If they see.

Imperfect Tense.

Singular.

1. If I saw,
2. If thou saw,
3. If he saw ;

Plural.

1. If we saw,
2. If you saw,
3. If they saw.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | 2. See [thou], | or Do thou see. |
| <i>Plural.</i> | 2. See [ye or you], | or Do you see. |

PARTICIPLES.

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Imperfect,</i> | <i>Seeing.</i> |
| <i>Perfect,</i> | <i>Seen.</i> |
| <i>Compound,</i> | <i>Having seen.</i> |

Obs.—In the familiar style, the second person singular of this verb is usually formed thus: IND. Thou seest, Thou saw, Thou hast seen, Thou had seen, Thou will see, Thou will have seen. POT. Thou may see, Thou might see, Thou may have seen, Thou might have seen. SUBJ. If thou see, If thou saw. IMP. See [thou], or Do thou see.

Conjugation of the irregular neuter verb

BE.

Principal Parts.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Preterit.</i> | <i>Imp. Participle.</i> | <i>Perf. Participle.</i> |
| Be. | Was. | Being. | Been. |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

To be.

Perfect Tense.

To have been.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Obs.—Be was formerly used in the indicative present: as, "What be these two olive branches?"—Zech. iv. 12. But this construction is now obsolete.

Singular.

1. I am,
2. Thou art,
3. He is;

Plural.

1. We are,
2. You are,
3. They are.

*Imperfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I was,
2. Thou wast,
3. He was;

Plural.

1. We were,
2. You were,
3. They were.

*Perfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I have been,
2. Thou hast been,
3. He has been;

Plural.

1. We have been,
2. You have been,
3. They have been.

*Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I had been,
2. Thou hadst been,
3. He had been;

Plural.

1. We had been,
2. You had been,
3. They had been.

*First-future Tense.**Singular.*

1. I shall be,
2. Thou wilt be,
3. He will be;

Plural.

1. We shall be,
2. You will be,
3. They will be.

*Second-future Tense.**Singular.*

1. I shall have been,
2. Thou wilt have been,
3. He will have been;

Plural.

1. We shall have been,
2. You will have been,
3. They will have been.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

*Present Tense.**Singular.*

1. I may be,
2. Thou mayst be,
3. He may be;

Plural.

1. We may be,
2. You may be,
3. They may be.

Imperfect Tense.

Singular.

1. I might be,
2. Thou mightst be,
3. He might be;

Plural.

1. We might be,
2. You might be,
3. They might be.

Perfect Tense.

Singular.

1. I may have been,
2. Thou mayst have been,
3. He may have been;

Plural.

1. We may have been,
2. You may have been,
3. They may have been.

Pluperfect Tense.

Singular.

1. I might have been,
2. Thou mightst have been,
3. He might have been;

Plural.

1. We might have been,
2. You might have been,
3. They might have been.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. If I be,
2. If thou be,
3. If he be;

Plural.

1. If we be,
2. If you be,
3. If they be.

Imperfect Tense.

Singular.

1. If I were,
2. If thou wert,
3. If he were;

Plural.

1. If we were,
2. If you were,
3. If they were.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | | |
|------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | 2. Be [thou], | or Do thou be. |
| <i>Plural.</i> | 2. Be [ye or you], | or Do you be. |

PARTICIPLES.

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------|
| <i>Imperfect,</i> | Being. |
| <i>Perfect,</i> | Been. |
| <i>Compound,</i> | Having been. |

OBS.—In the familiar style, the second person singular of this verb, is usually formed thus: IND. Thou art, Thou was, Thou hast been, Thou had been, Thou will be, Thou will have been. POT. Thou may be, Thou might be, Thou may have been, Thou might have been. SUBJ. If thou be, If thou were. IMP. Be [thou], or Do thou be.

Active and neuter verbs may also be conjugated, by adding the Imperfect Participle to the auxiliary verb BE, through all its changes ; as *I am writing*—*He is sitting*. This form of the verb denotes a continuance* of the action or the state of being, and is, on many occasions, preferable to the simple form of the verb.

OBS. Verbs of this form have sometimes a passive signification ; as, “While the work of the temple *was carrying on*.”—Owen. Expressions of this kind are condemned by some critics.

Example of the Compound Form of the active verb

READ.

Principal Parts of the Simple Verb.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Preterit.</i>	<i>Imp. Participle.</i>	<i>Perf. Participle.</i>
Rēad.	Rěad.	Rěading.	Rěad.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

To be reading.

Perfect Tense.

To have been reading.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
1. I	am reading,	1. We are reading,
2. Thou	art reading,	2. You are reading,
3. He	is reading;	3. They are reading.

* Those verbs which, in their simple form, imply continuance, do not admit the compound form ; thus we say, ‘*I respect him* ;’ but not, ‘*I am respecting him*.’

Imperfect Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. I was reading, | 1. We were reading, |
| 2. Thou wast reading, | 2. You were reading, |
| 3. He was reading; | 3. They were reading. |

Perfect Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. I have been reading, | 1. We have been reading, |
| 2. Thou hast been reading, | 2. You have been reading, |
| 3. He has been reading; | 3. They have been reading. |

Pluperfect Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. I had been reading, | 1. We had been reading, |
| 2. Thou hadst been reading, | 2. You had been reading, |
| 3. He had been reading; | 3. They had been reading. |

First-future Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. I shall be reading, | 1. We shall be reading, |
| 2. Thou wilt be reading, | 2. You will be reading, |
| 3. He will be reading; | 3. They will be reading. |

Second-future Tense.

- Singular.*
- | |
|---------------------------------|
| 1. I shall have been reading, |
| 2. Thou wilt have been reading, |
| 3. He will have been reading; |

- Plural.*
- | |
|---------------------------------|
| 1. We shall have been reading, |
| 2. You will have been reading, |
| 3. They will have been reading. |

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I may be reading, | 1. We may be reading, |
| 2. Thou mayst be reading, | 2. You may be reading, |
| 3. He may be reading; | 3. They may be reading. |

*Imperfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I might be reading,
2. Thou mightst be reading,
3. He might be reading;

Plural.

1. We might be reading,
2. You might be reading,
3. They might be reading.

Perfect Tense.

- Singular.*
1. I may have been reading,
 2. Thou mayst have been reading,
 3. He may have been reading;

- Plural.*
1. We may have been reading,
 2. You may have been reading,
 3. They may have been reading.

Pluperfect Tense.

- Singular.*
1. I might have been reading,
 2. Thou mightst have been reading,
 3. He might have been reading;

- Plural.*
1. We might have been reading,
 2. You might have been reading,
 3. They might have been reading.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I be reading,
2. If thou be reading,
3. If he be reading;

Plural.

1. If we be reading,
2. If you be reading,
3. If they be reading.

*Imperfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I were reading,
2. If thou wert reading,
3. If he were reading;

Plural.

1. If we were reading,
2. If you were reading,
3. If they were reading.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing. 2. Be [thou] reading, or Do thou be reading.
Plur. 2. Be [ye or you] reading, or Do you be reading.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Imperfect,</i>	Being reading.
<i>Perfect,</i>	<hr/>
<i>Compound,</i>	Having been reading.

OBS.—In the familiar style, the second person singular of this verb, is usually formed thus: IND. Thou art reading, Thou was reading, Thou hast been reading, Thou had been reading, Thou will be reading, Thou will have been reading. POT. Thou may be reading, Thou might be reading, Thou may have been reading, Thou might have been reading. SUBJ. If thou be reading, If thou were reading. IMP. Be [thou] reading, or Do thou be reading.

PASSIVE VERBS.

Passive verbs are formed from active-transitive verbs, by adding the Perfect Participle to the auxiliary verb BE, through all its changes: thus, from the active-transitive verb *love*, is formed the passive verb *be loved*.

OBS. 1.—A few active-intransitive verbs that merely imply motion, or change of condition, may be put into this form, with a *neuter* signification; making not *passive* but *neuter* verbs, which express nothing more than the state which results from the change: as, *I am come*; *He is risen*; *They are fallen*..

OBS. 2.—Passive verbs may be distinguished from neuter verbs of the same form, by a reference to the agent or instrument; which frequently is, and always may be, expressed after passive verbs: as, “The thief has been caught *by the officer*.”—“Pens are made *with a knife*.”

Conjugation of the passive verb

BE LOVED.

Principal Parts of the Active Verb.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Preterit.</i>	<i>Imp. Participle.</i>	<i>Perf. Participle.</i>
Love.	Loved.	Loving.	Loved.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

To be loved.

Perfect Tense.

To have been loved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.**Singular.*

1. I am loved,
2. Thou art loved,
3. He is loved;

Plural.

1. We are loved,
2. You are loved,
3. They are loved:

*Imperfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I was loved,
2. Thou wast loved,
3. He was loved;

Plural.

1. We were loved,
2. You were loved,
3. They were loved.

*Perfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I have been loved,
2. Thou hast been loved,
3. He has been loved;

Plural.

1. We have been loved,
2. You have been loved,
3. They have been loved.

*Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. I had been loved,
2. Thou hadst been loved,
3. He had been loved;

Plural.

1. We had been loved,
2. You had been loved,
3. They had been loved.

*First future Tense.**Singular.*

1. I shall be loved,
2. Thou wilt be loved,
3. He will be loved;

Plural.

1. We shall be loved,
2. You will be loved,
3. They will be loved.

Second-future Tense.

Singular. 1. I shall have been loved,
2. Thou wilt have been loved,
3. He will have been loved;

Plural. 1. We shall have been loved,
2. You will have been loved,
3. They will have been loved.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. I may be loved,
2. Thou mayst be loved,
3. He may be loved;

Plural.

1. We may be loved,
2. You may be loved,
3. They may be loved.

Imperfect Tense.

Singular.

1. I might be loved,
2. Thou mightst be loved,
3. He might be loved;

Plural.

1. We might be loved,
2. You might be loved,
3. They might be loved.

Perfect Tense.

Singular. 1. I may have been loved,
2. Thou mayst have been loved,
3. He may have been loved ;

Plural. 1. We may have been loved,
2. You may have been loved,
3. They may have been loved.

Pluperfect Tense.

Singular. 1. I might have been loved,
2. Thou mightst have been loved,
3. He might have been loved ;

Plural. 1. We might have been loved,
2. You might have been loved,
3. They might have been loved.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I be loved,
2. If thou be loved,
3. If he be loved;

Plural.

1. If we be loved,
2. If you be loved,
3. If they be loved.

*Imperfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. If I were loved,
2. If thou wert loved,
3. If he were loved;

Plural.

1. If we were loved,
2. If you were loved,
3. If they were loved.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing. 2. Be [thou] loved, *or* Do thou be loved.

Plur. 2. Be [ye *or* you] loved, *or* Do you be loved.

PARTICIPLES.

Imperfect,

Being loved.

Perfect,

Loved.

Compound,

Having been loved.

Obs.—In the familiar style, the second person singular of this verb, is usually formed thus : IND. Thou art loved, Thou was loved, Thou hast been loved, Thou had been loved, Thou will be loved, Thou will have been loved. POT. Thou may be loved, Thou might be loved, Thou may have been loved, Thou might have been loved. SUBJ. If thou be loved, If thou were loved. IMP. Be [thou] loved, or Do thou be loved.

A verb is conjugated *negatively*, by placing the adverb *not* after it, or after the first auxiliary. In the infinitive mood, the adverb must always precede the preposition *to*. Thus : INF. Not to love, Not to have loved. IND. I love not, *or* I do not love, I loved not, *or* I did not love, I have not loved, I had not loved, I shall not love, I shall not have loved. POT. I may, *can**, *or* must not love; I might,

* When power is denied, *can* and *not* are united, to prevent ambiguity; as, "I cannot go." But when the power is affirmed, and something else is denied, the words are written separately; as, "The Christian apologist *can* not merely expose the utter baseness of the infidel assertion, but he has positive ground for erecting an opposite and a confronting assertion in its place."—*Chalmers*.

could, would, *or* should not love; I may, can, *or* must not have loved; I might, could, would, *or* should not have loved. SUBJ. If I love not, If I loved not. PART. Not loving, Not loved, Not having loved.

A verb is conjugated *interrogatively*, in the indicative and potential moods, by placing the nominative after it, or after the first auxiliary: as, IND. Do I love? Did I love? Have I loved? Had I loved? Shall I love? Shall I have loved? POT. May, can, *or* must I love? Might, could, would, *or* should I love? May, can, *or* must I have loved? Might, could, would, *or* should I have loved?

A verb is conjugated *interrogatively* and *negatively*, in the indicative and potential moods, by placing the nominative and the adverb *not* after the verb, or after the first auxiliary: as, IND. Do I not love? Did I not love? Have I not loved? Had I not loved? Shall I not love? Shall I not have loved? POT. May, can, *or* must I not love? Might, could, would, *or* should I not love? May, can, *or* must I not have loved? Might, could, would, *or* should I not have loved?

IRREGULAR VERBS.

An *irregular verb* is a verb that does not form the preterit and the perfect participle by assuming *d* or *ed*.

OBS. 1.—When the verb ends in a sharp consonant, *t* is sometimes improperly substituted for *ed*, making the preterit and the perfect participle irregular in spelling, when they are not so in sound; as, *distrest* for *distressed*.

OBS. 2.—Several of the irregular verbs are variously used by the best authors; and many preterits and participles which were formerly in good use, are now obsolete, or becoming so.

The simple irregular verbs are nearly all monosyllables. They are derived from the Saxon, in which language they are also, for the most part, irregular. The following is a list of them, as they are now generally used. Those marked with the letter *R*, admit also the regular form.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Preterit.</i>	<i>Imp. Part.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Abide,	abode,	abiding,	abode.
Be,	was.	being,	been.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Preterit.</i>	<i>Imp. Part.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Bear,	bore or bare,	bearing,	borne or born.*
Beat,	beat,	beating,	beaten or beat.
Begin,	began,	beginning,	begun.
Bend,	bent, R.	bending,	bent, R.
Beseech,	besought,	beseeching,	besought.
Bid,	bid or bade,	bidding,	bidden or bid.
Bind,	bound,	binding,	bound.
Bite,	bit,	biting,	bitten or bit.
Bleed,	bled,	bleeding,	bled.
Blow,	blew,	blowing,	blown.
Break,	broke,	breaking,	broken.
Breed,	bred,	breeding,	bred.
Bring,	brought,	bringing,	brought.
Build,	built, R.	building,	built, R.
Burst,	burst,	bursting,	burst.
Buy,	bought,	buying,	bought.
Cast,	cast,	casting,	cast.
Catch,	caught, R.	catching,	caught, R.
Chide,	chid,	chiding,	chidden or chid.
Choose,	chose,	choosing,	chosen.
Cleave,†	cleft or clove,	cleaving,	cleft or cloven.
Cling,	clung,	clinging,	clung.
Clothe,	clothed or clad,	clothing,	clothed or clad.
Come,	came,	coming,	come.
Cost,	cost,	costing,	cost.
Crow,	crowed or crew,	crowing,	crowed.
Creep,	crept, R.	creeping,	crept, R.
Cut,	cut,	cutting,	cut.
Dare,	dared or durst,	daring,	dared.
Deal,	dealt, R.	dealing,	dealt, R.
Dig,	dug, R.	digging,	dug, R.
Do,	did,	doing,	done.
Draw,	drew,	drawing,	drawn.
Dream,	dreamt, R.	dreaming,	dreamt, R.
Drive,	drove,	driving,	driven.
Drink,	drank,	drinking,	drunk.
Dwell,	dwelt, R.	dwelling,	dwelt, R.

* *Borne* signifies *carried*; *born* signifies *brought forth*.

† *Cleave*, to split, is irregular as above; *cleave*, to stick, is regular, but *clave* was formerly used in the preterit.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Preterit.</i>	<i>Imp. Part.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Eat,	ate or eat,	eating,	eaten.
Fall,	felt,	falling,	fallen.
Feed,	fed,	feeding,	fed.
Feel,	felt,	feeling,	felt.
Fight,	fought,	fighting,	fought.
Find,	found,	finding,	found.
Flee,	fled,	fleeing,	fled.
Fling,	flung,	flinging,	flung.
Fly,	flew,	flying,	flown.
Forsake,	forsook,	forsaking,	forsaken.
Freeze,	froze,	freezing,	frozen.
Get,	got,	getting,	got or gotten.
Gild,	gilt, R.	gilding,	gilt, R.
Gird,	girt, R.	girding,	girt, R.
Give,	gave,	giving,	given.
Go,	went,	going,	gone.
Grave,	graved,	graving,	graved or graven.
Grind,	ground,	grinding,	ground.
Grow,	grew,	growing,	grown.
Hang,	hung, R.	hanging,	hung, R.
Have,	had,	having,	had.
Hear,	heard,	hearing,	heard.
Heave,	heaved or hove,	heaving,	heaved or hoven.
Hew,	hewed,	hewing,	hewed or hewn.
Hide,	hid,	hiding,	hidden or hid.
Hit,	hit,	hitting,	hit.
Hold,	held,	holding,	held.
Hurt,	hurt,	hurting,	hurt.
Kneel,	kneeled or knelt,	kneeling,	kneeled or knelt.
Knit,	knit, R.	knitting,	knit, R.
Know,	knew,	knowing,	known.
Lade,	laded,	lading,	laden, R.
Lay,	laid,	laying,	laid.
Lean,	leaned or leant,	leaning,	leaned or leant.
Lead,	led,	leading,	led.
Leave,	left,	leaving,	left.
Lend,	lent,	lending,	lent.
Let,	let,	letting,	let.
Lie,	lay,	lying,	lain.
Light,	lighted or lit,	lighting,	lighted or lit.
Lose,	lost,	losing,	lost.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Preterit.</i>	<i>Imp. Part.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Make,	made,	making,	made.
Mean,	meant, R.	meaning,	meant, R.
Meet,	met,	meeting,	met.
Mow,	mowed,	mowing,	mowed <i>or</i> mown.
Pay,	paid,	paying,	paid.
Put,	put,	putting,	put.
Quit,	quitted <i>or</i> quit,	quitting,	quitted <i>or</i> quit.
Read,	read,	reading.	read.
Reave,	reft R.	reaving,	reft, R.
Rend,	rent,	rending,	rent.
Rid,	rid,	ridding,	rid.
Ride,	rode,	riding,	ridden <i>or</i> rode.
Ring,	rung <i>or</i> rang,	ringing,	rung.
Rise,	rose,	rising,	risen.
Rive,	rived,	riving,	riven <i>or</i> rived.
Run,	ran,	running,	run.
Saw,	sawed,	sawing,	sawed <i>or</i> sawn.
Say,	said,	saying,	said.
See,	saw,	seeing,	seen.
Seek,	sought,	seeking,	sought.
Seethe,	seethed <i>or</i> sod,	seething,	seethed <i>or</i> sodden.
Sell,	sold,	selling,	sold.
Send,	sent,	sending,	sent.
Set,	set,	setting,	set.
Shake,	shook,	shaking,	shaken.
Shave,	shaved,	shaving,	shaved <i>or</i> shaven.
Shear,	sheared,	shearing.	sheared <i>or</i> shorn.
Shed,	shed,	shedding,	shed.
Shine,	shone, R.	shining,	shone, R.
Shoe,	shod,	shoeing,	shod.
Show,	showed,	showing,	shown.
Shoot,	shot,	shooting,	shot.
Shut,	shut,	shutting,	shut.
Shred,	shred,	shredding	shred.
Shrink,	shrunk,	shrinking,	shruok.
Sing,	sung <i>or</i> sang,	singing,	sung.
Sink,	sunk <i>or</i> sank,	sinking,	sunk.
Sit,	sat,	sitting,	sat.
Slay,	slew,	slaying,	slain.
Sleep,	slept,	sleeping,	slept.
Slide,	slid,	sliding,	slidden <i>or</i> slid.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Preterit.</i>	<i>Imp. Part.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Sling,	slung,	slinging,	slung.
Slink,	slunk,	slinking,	slunk.
Slit,	slit, R.	slitting,	slit, R.
Smite,	smote,	smiting,	smitten <i>or</i> smit.
Sow,	sowed,	sowing,	sowed <i>or</i> sown.
Speak,	spoke,	speaking,	spoken.
Speed,	sped,	speeding,	sped.
Spend,	spent,	spending,	spent.
Spill,	spilt, R.	spilling,	spilt, R.
Spin,	spun,	spinning,	spun.
Spit,	spit <i>or</i> spat,	spitting,	spit.
Split,	split,	splitting,	split.
Spread,	spread,	spreading,	spread.
Spring,	sprung <i>or</i> sprang,	springing,	sprung.
Stand,	stood,	standing,	stood.
Steal,	stole,	stealing,	stolen.
Stick,	stuck,	sticking,	stuck.
Sting,	stung,	stinging,	stung.
Stride,	strode <i>or</i> strid,	striding,	stridden.
Strike,	struck,	striking,	struck.
String,	strung, R.	stringing,	strung, R.
Strive,	strove, R.	striving,	striven, R.
Strow,	strowed,	strowing,	strowed <i>or</i> strown.
Swear,	swore,	swearing,	sworn.
Sweep,	swept,	sweeping,	swept.
Swell,	swelled,	swelling,	swelled <i>or</i> swollen.
Swim,	swum <i>or</i> swam,	swimming,	swum.
Swing,	swung,	swinging,	swung.
Take,	took,	taking,	taken.
Teach,	taught	teaching,	taught.
Tear,	tore,	tearing,	torn.
Tell,	told,	telling,	told.
Think,	thought,	thinking,	thought.
Thrive,	thrived <i>or</i> throve,	thriving,	thrived <i>or</i> thriven.
Throw,	threw,	throwing,	thrown.
Thrust,	thrust,	thrusting,	thrust.
Tread,	trod,	treading,	trodden <i>or</i> trod.
Wake,	waked <i>or</i> woke,	waking,	waked.
Wear,	wore,	wearing,	worn.
Weave,	wove,	weaving,	woven.
Weep,	wept, R.	weeping,	wept, R.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Preterit.</i>	<i>Imp. Part.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Win,	won,	winning,	won.
Wind,	wound, R.	winding,	wound.
Wont,	wont, R.	wonting,	woot, R.
Work,	worked or wrought,	working,	work' d or wrought.
Wring,	wrung, R.	wringing,	wrung, R.
Write,	wrote,	writing,	written.

Obs.—In the preceding list, those preterits and participles which are preferable, and best supported by authorities, are placed first. All compounds that follow the form of their simple verbs, are here omitted. Some words which are obsolete, have also been omitted, that the learner might not mistake them for words in present use. Some of those which are placed last, are now little used.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

A *defective verb* is a verb which wants some of the principal parts. When any of the principal parts are wanting, the tenses usually derived from those parts are also wanting.

All the auxiliaries, except *do*, *be*, and *have*, are defective. The following is a list of the defective verbs:

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Preterit.</i>	<i>Imp. Part.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Beware,	—	—	—
Can,	could,	—	—
May,	might,	—	—
Must,	must,	—	—
Ought,	ought,	—	—
Shall,	should,	—	—
Will,	would,	—	—
Quoth,	quoth,	—	—

Obs. 1.—*Beware* is not used in the indicative present. *Must*, is never varied in termination. *Ought* is invariable, except in the solemn style, where we find *oughtest*. *Will* is sometimes used as a principal verb, and, as such, is regular and complete. *Quoth* is used only in ludicrous language, and is not varied. It seems to be properly the third person singular of the present; for it ends in *th*, and *quod* was formerly used as the preterit: as,

“Yea so sayst thou, (*quod* Troylus,) alas!”—*Chaucer*.

Obs. 2.—Some verbs from the nature of the subject to which they refer, can be used only in the third person singular: as, *It rains*; *it snows*; *it freezes*; *it hails*; *it lightens*; *it thunders*. These have

been called *impersonal* verbs. The neuter pronoun *it*, which is always used before them, does not seem to represent any noun, but, in connexion with the verb, merely to express a state of things.

OF THE PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a word derived from a verb, participating the properties of a verb and an adjective; and is generally formed by adding *ing*, *d* or *ed*, to the verb: as, rule, *ruling*, *ruled*.

Obs. 1.—Participles, like verbs, express being, action, or passion; and may be limited, by other words, to time, place, degree, or manner. They generally relate to nouns, like adjectives, except when they are joined with auxiliaries in the conjugation of verbs.

Obs. 2.—The English participles are all derived from the root of their respective verbs, and do not (like those of some other languages) take their names from the tenses. They are reckoned among the principal parts in the conjugation of their verbs, and many of the tenses are formed from them. In the compound forms of conjugation, they are found in all the tenses. They do not, therefore, of themselves, express any particular time; but they denote the state of the being, action, or passion, in regard to its progress or completion. [See *Remarks on the Participles, in the Port Royal Latin and Greek Grammars.*]

Verbs have three participles; the *Imperfect*, the *Perfect*, and the *Compound*: as, Imp. *loving*, Perf. *loved*, Comp. *having loved*.

The *Imperfect** participle is always formed by adding *ing* to the verb; and implies a continuance of the being, action, or passion.

The *Perfect* participle is regularly formed by adding *d* or *ed* to the verb; and implies a completion of the being, action, or passion.

* "The most unexceptionable distinction which grammarians make between the participles, is, that the one points to the continuation of the action, passion, or state, denoted by the verb; and the other, to the completion of it. Thus, the present participle signifies *imperfect* action, or action begun and not ended: as, 'I am *writing* a letter.' The past participle signifies action *perfected*, or finished: as, 'I have *written* a letter.'—'The letter is *written*.'"—*Murray's Grammar*, 8vo. page 65.

The *Compound participle* is formed by prefixing *having* to the perfect participle; and implies a previous completion of the being, action, or passion.

OBS. 1.—The participle in *ing* has been called the *present* participle. But it is as applicable to past or future, as to present time; otherwise, such expressions as, "*I had been writing*," "*I shall be writing*," would be solecisms. It has also been called the *active* participle. But it is not always active, even when derived from an active verb; for such expressions as, "*The goods are selling*," "*The ships are now building*," are in use, and not without authority. The distinguishing characteristic of this participle is, that it denotes an unfinished and progressive state of being, action, or passion; it is, therefore, properly denominated the *imperfect* participle. This name is adopted and defended by several of the most respectable grammarians; as *Dr. Crombie*, *J. Grant*, and *T. O. Churchill*. [See their respective works published in London.]

OBS. 2.—The participle in *ed*, denotes a completion of the being, action or passion, and is therefore denominated the *perfect* participle. The perfect participle of transitive verbs, being used in the formation of passive verbs, is sometimes called the *passive* participle. It has a passive signification, except when it is used in forming the compound tenses of the active verb. Hence the difference between the sentences, "*I have written a letter*," and, "*I have a letter written*."

OBS. 3.—Participles often become adjectives, and are construed before nouns to denote quality. Words of a participial form, may be regarded as adjectives: 1. When they denote something customary or habitual, rather than a transient act or state; as, *A lying rogue*, i. e. one addicted to lying. 2. When they admit adverbs of comparison; as, *A more learned man*. 3. When they are compounded with something that does not belong to the verb; as, *unfeeling*, *unfelt*. Adjectives are generally placed before their nouns: participles, after them.

OBS. 4.—Participles often become nouns. When preceded by an article, an adjective, or a noun or pronoun of the possessive case, they are construed as nouns, and have no regimen. A participle immediately preceded by a preposition, is not converted into a noun, and therefore retains its regimen; as, "*I thank you for helping him*." This construction of the participle corresponds with the Latin Gerund.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING,

(CHAPTER V.)

In which it is required of the pupil—to distinguish and define the different parts of speech, and the classes and modifications of the articles, nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs, and participles. Thus :

Piety has the purest delight attending it.

Piety is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter gender, and nominative case.

1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.
2. A common noun is the name of a sort, kind, or class of things.
3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of.
4. The singular number is that which denotes but one.
5. The neuter gender is that which denotes things that are neither male nor female.
6. The nominative case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which denotes the subject of a verb.

has is an irregular active-transitive verb, from *have*, *had*, *having had* ; found in the indicative mood, present tense, third person, singular number.

1. A verb is a word that signifies *to be*, *to act*, or *to be acted upon*.
2. An irregular verb is a verb that does not form the preterit and the perfect participle by assuming *d* or *ed*.
3. An active-transitive verb is a verb that expresses an action which has some person or thing for its object.
4. The indicative mood is that form of the verb, which simply indicates or declares a thing, or asks a question.
5. The present tense is that which expresses what now exists or is taking place.
6. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of.
7. The singular number is that which denotes but one.

the is the definite article.

1. An article is a word placed before nouns, to limit their signification.
2. The definite article is *the*, which denotes some particular thing or things.

purest is a common adjective, of the superlative degree.

1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality.

2. A common adjective is any ordinary epithet.

3. The superlative degree is that which is not exceeded.

delight is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter gender, and objective case.

1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.

2. A common noun is the name of a sort, kind, or class of things.

3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of.

4. The singular number is that which denotes but 'one.

5. The neuter gender is that which denotes things that are neither male nor female.

6. The objective case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which denotes the object of a verb, participle, or preposition.

attending is an imperfect participle, from the regular active-transitive verb *attend*, *attended*, *attending*, *attended*.

1. A participle is a word derived from a verb, participating the properties of a verb and an adjective; and is generally formed by adding *ing*, *d* or *ed*, to the verb.

2. The imperfect participle is always formed by adding *ing* to the verb; and implies a continuance of the being, action, or passion.

it is a personal pronoun, of the third person, singular number, neuter gender, and objective case.

1. A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun.

2. A personal pronoun is a pronoun that shows, by its form, of what person it is.

3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of.

4. The singular number is that which denotes but one.

5. The neuter gender is that which denotes things that are neither male nor female.

6. The objective case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which denotes the object of a verb, participle, or preposition.

LESSON I.

I repent. Thou studieth. He returns. She mourns. It seems. We rejoice. You appear. They approach.

I suppose. Thou thinkst. He sits. She comes. It rains. We stand. You are known. They are deceived.

I was slighted. Thou durst not speak. He left the company. She seemed afraid. We knew the man. You were not there. They held him fast.

LESSON II.

I have been sick. Thou hast been taught. He had not

found them. She will not go. We shall be preserved. You will not meet him. They will have been sold.

I saw the whole transaction: both parties disgraced themselves.

Their friends have been informed of all that has occurred.

If the pupil has genius, application to study will improve and adorn it.

A soul inspired with the love of truth, will summon all its powers to the pursuit of it.

LESSON III.

I shall consider it a particular favour, if you will send me the goods which were selected.

Think of me, when it shall be well with thee.

It deserves our best skill to inquire into those rules by which we may guide our judgement.

If we do not exercise our faculties, they will become impaired.

When thou hast received a favour, remember it: when thou hast granted one, forget it.

If we have sauntered away our youth, we must expect to be ignorant men.

LESSON IV.

Avarice and cunning may acquire an estate; but they cannot gain friends.

They had acquired such a love for learning, that no allurements to indulgence, could withdraw them from the pleasure of improving their minds.

It may have escaped his recollection; but such was the fact.

He must indeed have been a very extraordinary man, if he had never felt any sentiment of this kind rising in his breast.

By carrying some praise-worthy dispositions to excess, he bordered sometimes on what was culpable, and was often betrayed into actions that exposed him to censure.

LESSON V.

Having discovered this transaction, he suspected their design; and, by withdrawing privately, eluded their craftiness.

A spirit less vigorous than Luther's, would have shrunk from the dangers which he braved and surmounted.

His natural intrepidity did not forsake him at the approach of death.

Afflictions do not attack the good man by surprise, and, therefore, do not overwhelm him.

Trained by divine grace, to enjoy with moderation the advantages of the world, neither lifted up by success, nor enervated by sensuality, he meets the changes of his lot without unmanly dejection.

LESSON VI.

Who covered the earth with such a pleasing variety of fruits and flowers? Who gave them their delightful fragrance, and painted them with such exquisite colours? Who causes the same water to whiten in the lily, that blushes in the rose? Do not these things indicate a cause infinitely superior to any finite being.

Acquaint thyself with God, if thou wouldst taste
His works. Admitted once to his embrace,
Thou shalt perceive, that thou wast blind before :
Thine eye shall be instructed ; and thine heart,
Made pure, shall relish with divine delight,
Till then unfelt, what hands divine have wrought.

OF THE ADVERB.

An Adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle, an adjective, or an other adverb ; and generally expresses time, place, degree, or manner : as, *They are now here, studying very diligently.*

OBS.—Adverbs briefly express what would otherwise require several words ; as, *here, for in this place.* There are several customary combinations of short words which are used adverbially, and which some grammarians do not analyze in parsing ; as, *Not at all, at length, in vain.*

CLASSES.

Adverbs may be reduced to four general classes ; namely, adverbs of *time*, of *place*, of *degree*, and of *manner*.

I. Adverbs of *time*, generally answer to the question *when?* or *how often?* and may be subdivided as follows :

1. Of time present ; as, *Now, yet, to-day, presently, instantly, immediately.*
2. Of time past ; as, *Already, yesterday, lately, heretofore, hitherto, since, ago.*
3. Of time to come ; as, *To-morrow, hereafter, henceforth, by and by, soon, ere long.*
4. Of time relative ; as, *When, then, before, after, while or whilst, till, until.*
5. Of time absolute ; as, *Always, ever, never.*
6. Of time repeated ; as, *Often, oft, again, occasionally, frequently, sometimes, seldom, rarely, now and then, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, once, twice, thrice, or three times, &c.*
7. Of the order of time ; as, *First, secondly, thirdly, fourthly, &c.*

II. Adverbs of *place*, generally answer to the question *where?* *whither?* or *whence?* and may be subdivided as follows :

1. Of place in which ; as, *Where, here, there, yonder, somewhere, anywhere, elsewhere, everywhere, nowhere, wherever, within, without, whereabouts, hereabout, thereabout.*
2. Of place to which ; as, *Whither, hither, thither, in, out, up, down, upwards, downwards, backwards, forwards.*
3. Of place from which ; as, *Whence, hence, thence.*
4. Of the order of place ; as, *First, secondly, thirdly, fourthly, &c.*

III. Adverbs of *degree*, generally answer to the question *how much?* and may be subdivided as follows :

1. Of excess or abundance ; as, *Much, too, very, greatly, far, besides ; chiefly, principally, mainly, generally ; entirely, fully, completely, perfectly, wholly, totally, altogether, all, quite, clear, stark ; exceedingly, excessively, extravagantly, intolerably.*
2. Of equality ; as, *Enough, sufficiently, equally, so, as.*
3. Of deficiency or abatement ; as, *Little, scarcely, hardly, merely, barely, only, but, partly, partially, nearly, almost.*

IV. Adverbs of *manner*, generally answer to the question *how?* and may be subdivided as follows :

1. Of quality ; as, *Well, ill, wisely, foolishly, justly, quickly, and many others formed by adding *ly* to adjectives of quality. Most adverbs of quality admit other adverbs, of increase or diminution, before them ; as, *Ably, more ably, most ably—forcibly, less forcibly, least forcibly.**

2. Of affirmation ; as, *Yes, yea, verily, truly, indeed, surely, certainly, doubtless, undoubtedly.*

3. Of negation ; as, *No, nay, not, nowise.*

4. Of doubt ; as, *Perhaps, haply, possibly, perchance, peradventure.*

5. Of mode ; as, *Thus, so, somehow, like, else, otherwise, forth, across, together, apart, asunder, namely, particularly, necessarily, consequently, therefore.*

OBS. 1.—Adverbs of *time, place, and manner*, are generally connected with verbs or participles ; those of *degree* are more frequently prefixed to adjectives or adverbs.

OBS. 2.—The adverbs *here, there, and where*, when prefixed to prepositions, have the force of pronouns : as, *Hereby*, for *by this* ; *thereby*, for *by that* ; *whereby*, for *by which*. Compounds of this kind are, however, commonly reckoned adverbs. They are not now so much used as formerly.

OBS. 3.—The adverbs *how, when, whence, where, whither, why*, and their compounds, are frequently used as *interrogatives* ; but, as such, they severally belong to the classes under which they are placed.

Adverbs sometimes perform the office of conjunctions, and serve to connect sentences, as well as express some circumstance of time, place, degree, or manner : adverbs that are so used, are called *conjunctive adverbs*.

OBS.—The following words are the most frequently used as conjunctive adverbs : *after, again, also, before, besides, else, even, hence, however, moreover, nevertheless, otherwise, since, then, thence, therefore, till, until, when, where, wherefore, while or whilst.*

MODIFICATIONS.

Adverbs have no modifications, except that a few are compared after the manner of adjectives ; as, *Soon, sooner, soonest—often, oftener, oftenest.*

The following are irregularly compared : *well, better, best ; badly or ill, worse, worst ; little, less, least ; much, more, most ; far, farther, farthest ; forth, further, furthest.*

OBS. 1.—Most adverbs of *quality* will admit the comparative adverbs *more* and *most, less* and *least*, before them : as, *wisely, more wisely, most wisely ; culpably, less culpably, least culpably.*

OBS. 2.—As comparison does not belong to adverbs in general, it should not be mentioned in parsing, except in the case of those few which are varied by it.

OF THE CONJUNCTION.

A Conjunction is a word used to connect words or sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms so connected: as, Thou *and* he are happy, *because* you are good.

CLASSES.

Conjunctions are divided into two classes; *copulative* and *disjunctive*.

A *copulative conjunction* is a conjunction that denotes an addition, a cause, or a supposition: as, He *and* I shall not dispute; *for*, *if* he has any choice, I shall readily grant it.

A *disjunctive conjunction* is a conjunction that denotes opposition of meaning: as, "Be not overcome by evil; *but* overcome evil with good."

The following are the principal conjunctions:

1. Copulative; *and*, *as*, *both*, *because*, *for*, *if*, *that*.
2. Disjunctive; *or*, *not*, *either*, *neither*, *than*, *though*, *although*, *yet*, *but*, *whether*, *lest*, *unless*, *save*, *notwithstanding*.

OF THE PREPOSITION.

A Preposition is a word used to express some relation of different things to each other, and is generally placed before a noun or a pronoun: as, The paper lies *before* me *on* the desk.

The following are the principal prepositions: *Above*, *about*, *after*, *against*, *amid* or *amidst*, *among* or *amongst*, *at—before*, *behind*, *below*, *beneath*, *beside* or *besides*, *between* or *betwixt*, *beyond*, *by—concerning—down*, *during—except—for*, *from—in*, *into—of*, *off*, *on* or *upon*, *over—round* or *around—since—through*, *throughout*, *till*, *to*, *touching*, *toward* or *towards—under*, *underneath*, *up—with*, *within*, *without*.

Obs.—The words in the preceding list are generally prepositions. But when any of them are employed without a subsequent term of relation, they are adverbs. *For* when it signifies *because*, is a conjunction.

OF THE INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is a word that is uttered merely to indicate some strong or sudden emotion of the mind: as, *Oh ! alas !*

Obs.—Of pure interjections but few are admitted into books. As words, or sounds, of this kind, serve rather to indicate feeling, than to express thought, they seldom have any definable signification. Their use also is so variable, that there can be no accurate classification of them. Some significant words, properly belonging to the other classes, are ranked with interjections, when uttered with emotion and in an unconnected manner.

The following are the principal interjections, arranged according to the emotions which they are generally intended to indicate:—1. Joy; *hey ! io !*—2. Sorrow; *oh ! ah ! alas ! alack !*—3. Wonder; *heigh ! ha ! strange !*—4. Wishing or earnestness; (often with a noun or pronoun in a direct address;) *O !*—5. Pain; *oh ! ah ! eh !*—6. Contempt; *pugh ! poh ! pshaw ! pish ! tush !*—7. Aversion; *foh ! fie ! off ! begone ! avaunt !*—8. Calling; *ho ! soho ! holla !*—9. Exultation; *aha ! huzza ! heyday ! hurrah !*—10. Laughter; *ha, ha, ha.*—11. Salutation; *welcome ! hail ! all hail !*—12. Call to attention; *lo ! behold ! look ! see ! hark !*—13. Call to silence; *hush ! hest ! mum !*—14. Surprise; *oh ! ha ! hah !*—15. Langour; *heighho !*

Obs.—Besides these, there are several others, too often heard, which are unworthy to be considered as parts of a cultivated language. The frequent use of interjections, savours more of thoughtlessness, than of sensibility.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING,

(CHAPTER VI.)

In which it is required of the pupil—to distinguish and define the different parts of speech, and all their classes and modifications. Thus :

O ! sooner shall the earth and stars fall into chaos !

O ! is an interjection, indicating earnestness.

1. An interjection is a word that is uttered merely to indicate some strong or sudden emotion of the mind.
2. The interjection of wishing or earnestness, is *O*.

sooner is an adverb of time, of the comparative degree.

1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle, an adjective, or an other adverb.
2. Adverbs of time generally answer to the question *when ?* or *how often ?*
3. The comparative degree is that which exceeds the positive.

shall is an auxiliary to *fall*.

An auxiliary is a short verb prefixed to one of the principal parts of an other verb, to express some particular mode and time of the being, action, or passion.

the is the definite article.

1. An article is a word placed before nouns, to limit their signification.
2. The definite article is *the*, which denotes some particular thing or things.

earth is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter gender, and nominative case.

1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.
2. A common noun is the name of a sort, kind, or class of things.
3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of.
4. The singular number is that which denotes but one.
5. The neuter gender is that which denotes things that are neither male nor female.
6. The nominative case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which denotes the subject of a verb.

and is a copulative conjunction.

1. A conjunction is a word used to connect words or sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms so connected.
2. A copulative conjunction is a conjunction that denotes an addition, a cause, or a supposition.

stars is a common noun, of the third person, plural number, neuter gender, and nominative case.

1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, than can be known or mentioned.
2. A common noun is the name of a sort, kind, or class of things.
3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of.
4. The plural number is that which denotes more than one.
5. The neuter gender is that which denotes things that are neither male nor female.
6. The nominative case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun which denotes the subject of a verb.

shall fall is an irregular active-intransitive verb, from *fall, fell, falling, fallen*; found in the indicative mood, first-future tense, third person, plural number.

1. A verb is a word that signifies *to be, to act, or to be acted upon*.
2. An irregular verb is a verb that does not form the preterit and the perfect participle by assuming *d* or *ed*.
3. An active-intransitive verb is a verb that expresses an action which has no person or thing for its object.
4. The indicative mood is that form of the verb, which simply indicates or declares a thing, or asks a question.
5. The first-future tense is that which expresses what will take place hereafter.
6. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of.
7. The plural number is that which denotes more than one.

into is a preposition.

A preposition is a word used to express some relation of different things to each other, and is generally placed before a noun or pronoun.

chaos is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter gender, and objective case.

1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.
2. A common noun is the name of a sort, kind, or class of things.
3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of.
4. The singular number is that which denotes but one.
5. The neuter gender is that which denotes things that are neither male nor female.
6. The objective case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which denotes the object of a verb, participle, or preposition.

LESSON I.

There is nothing which more engages the affections of men, than a handsome address and graceful conversation.

It is a sign of great prudence, to be willing to receive instruction; the most intelligent persons sometimes stand in need of it.

Good nature, in a companion, is more agreeable than wit; and gives a certain air to the countenance, which is more amiable than beauty.

Men of the noblest dispositions, think themselves happiest, when others share with them in their happiness.

Then near approaching, 'Father, hail!' he cried;
And, 'Hail, my son!' the reverend sire replied.

LESSON II.

Ingratitude is a crime so shameful, that no one has ever yet been found, who would acknowledge himself guilty of it.

True greatness of mind is to be maintained only by Christian principles.

Small transgressions become great by frequent repetition; as small expenses, multiplied, insensibly waste a large revenue.

A talkative fellow applying to Isocrates for instruction, the orator asked him double his usual price; — 'Because,' said he, 'I must both teach him to speak, and to hold his tongue.'

Hark! the bee winds her small but mellow horn,
Blithe to salute the sunny smile of morn.

LESSON III.

Do not hurt yourselves or others, by the pursuit of pleasure. Consult your whole nature. Consider yourselves not only as sensitive, but as rational beings; not only as rational, but as social; not only as social, but immortal.

For what end has the lavish hand of Providence diffused innumerable objects of delight, but that all might rejoice in the privilege of existence, and be filled with gratitude to the beneficent author of it?

O let not thy heart despise me! thou, whom experience has not taught, that it is misery to lose that which it is not happiness to possess.

Let never day nor night unhallow'd pass,
But still remember what the Lord hath done.

LESSON IV.

Man surely has some latent sense for which this place affords no gratification, or he has some desires distinct from sense, which must be satisfied before he can be happy.

I have found a man who can teach all that is necessary to be known; who, from the unshaken throne of rational fortitude, looks down on the scenes of life changing beneath him. He speaks, and attention watches his lips. He reasons, and conviction closes his periods.

Ignorance, when it is voluntary, is criminal; and he may properly be charged with evil, who refused to learn how he might prevent it.

Ha! at the gates what grisly forms appear!

LESSON. V.

When we act according to our duty, we commit the event to him by whose laws our actions are governed, and who will suffer none to be finally punished for obedience.

When, in prospect of some good, whether natural or moral, we break the rules prescribed us, we withdraw from the direction of superior wisdom, and take all consequences upon ourselves.

Man cannot so far know the connexion of causes and events, as that he may venture to do wrong in order to do right.

When we pursue our end by lawful means, we may always console our miscarriage by the hope of future recompense.

Ah, that deceit should steal such gentle shapes,
And with a virtuous visor hide deep vice!

LESSON. VI.

How comfortless is the sorrow of him who feels at once the pangs of guilt and the vexation of calamity which guilt has brought upon him!

He who will determine against that which he knows, because there may be something which he knows not, is not to be admitted among reasonable beings.

To live without feeling or exciting sympathy, to be fortunate without adding to the felicity of others, or afflicted without tasting the balm of pity, is a state more gloomy than solitude; it is not retreat, but exclusion from mankind.

O happy peasant! oh unhappy bard!
His the mere tinsel, hers the rich reward.

LESSON VII.

It is the care of a very great part of mankind, to conceal their indigence from the rest; they support themselves by temporary expedients, and every day is lost in contriving for the morrow.

Pride is seldom delicate, it will please itself with very mean advantages; and envy feels not its own happiness, but when it may be compared with the misery of others.

Nothing is proof against the general curse
Of vanity, that seizes all below.
The only amaranthine flower on earth
Is virtue; the only lasting treasure, truth.

QUESTIONS ON ETYMOLOGY.

Of what does Etymology treat?

How many parts of speech are there? name them.

What is an article?

What is a noun?

What is an adjective?

What is a pronoun?

What is a verb?

What is a participle?

What is an adverb?

What is a conjunction?

What is a preposition?

What is an interjection?

What is required of the pupil, in the first chapter of examples for parsing?

What is an ARTICLE?

How many articles are there? Name them.

Are *an* and *a* different forms of the same article?

When is *an* used ? and when, *a* ?

How are the articles distinguished ?

Which is the *definite* article, and what does it denote ?

Which is the *indefinite* article, and what does it denote ?

What is a NOUN ?

Into what general classes are nouns divided ?

What is a *proper* noun ?

What is a *common* noun ?

What particular classes are included among common nouns ?

What is a *collective* noun ?

What is an *abstract* noun ?

What is a *verbal* or *participial* noun ?

What modifications have nouns ?

What are Persons ?

How many persons are there, and what are they called ?

What is the *first* person ?

What is the *second* person ?

What is the *third* person ?

What are Numbers ?

How many numbers are there, and what are they called ?

What is the *singular* number ?

What is the *plural* number ?

How is the plural number of nouns regularly formed ?

What is the rule for adding *s* and *es*, to form the plural ?

What are Genders ?

How many genders are there, and what are they called ?

What is the *masculine* gender ?

What is the *feminine* gender ?

What is the *neuter* gender ?

What are Cases ?

How many cases are there, and what are they called ?

What is the *nominative* case ?

What is the subject of a verb ?

What is the *possessive* case ?

How is the possessive case of nouns formed ?

What is the *objective* case ?

What is the object of a verb, participle, or preposition ?

What is the declension of a noun ?

Decline the nouns, *friend*, *man*, *fox*, and *fly*.

- What is required of the pupil in the second chapter of examples for parsing ?
- What is an ADJECTIVE ?
- Into what classes may adjectives be divided ?
- What is a *common* adjective ?
- What is a *proper* adjective ?
- What is a *numeral* adjective ?
- How many kinds of numeral adjectives are there ?
- What is a *pronominal* adjective ?
- What is a *participial* adjective ?
- What is a *compound* adjective ?
- What modifications have adjectives ?
- What is comparison ?
- How many, and what are the degrees of comparison ?
- What is the *positive* degree ?
- What is the *comparative* degree ?
- What is the *superlative* degree ?
- How are adjectives regularly compared ?
- Compare *great*, *wide*, and *hot*.
- To what adjectives are *er* and *est* applicable ?
- Is there any other mode of expressing the degrees of a quality ?
- What adjectives require this method of comparison ?
- How are the degrees of diminution expressed ?
- Compare *good*, *bad* or *ill*, *much*, *many*, *far*, *forth*, *late*.
- What is required of the pupil in the third chapter of examples for parsing ?
- What is a PRONOUN ?
- How are pronouns divided ?
- What is a *personal* pronoun ?
- How many, and what are the simple personal pronouns ?
- What is a *relative* pronoun ?
- Mention the relative pronouns.
- What is an *interrogative* pronoun ?
- Mention the interrogative pronouns.
- What modifications have pronouns ?
- What is the declension of a pronoun ?
- Decline the pronouns *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, and *it*.
- Explain the compound personal pronouns ?
- Decline *who*, *which*, *what*, and *that*.

What is required of the pupil in the fourth chapter of examples for parsing ?

What is a **VERB** ?

How are verbs divided with respect to their form ?

What is a *regular* verb ?

What is an *irregular* verb ?

How are verbs divided with respect to their signification ?

What is an *active-transitive* verb ?

What is an *active-intransitive* verb ?

What is a *passive* verb ?

What is a *neuter* verb ?

What modifications have verbs ?

What are Moods ?

How many moods are there, and what are they called ?

What is the *infinitive* mood ?

What is the *indicative* mood ?

What is the *potential* mood ?

What is the *subjunctive* mood ?

What is the *imperative* mood ?

What are Tenses ?

How many tenses are there ? and what are they called ?

What is the *present* tense ?

What is the *imperfect* tense ?

What is the *perfect* tense ?

What is the *pluperfect* tense ?

What is the *first-future* tense ?

What is the *second-future* tense ?

What are the Person and Number of a verb ?

How many persons and numbers are there ?

How are the second and third persons singular of verbs formed ?

What is the Conjugation of a verb ?

What are the *principal parts* in the conjugation of a verb ?

What is a verb called, which wants some of these parts ?

What is an *auxiliary* ?

What are the auxiliaries ?

Conjugate the regular active verb **LOVE** throughout.

Give the synopsis in each person and number.

Conjugate the regular active verb **SEE** throughout.

Give a synopsis in each person and number.

Conjugate the irregular neuter verb **BE** throughout.

Give a synopsis in each person and number.

Is there any other method of conjugating active and neuter verbs ?

Conjugate the active verb **READ** in the compound form.

Give a synopsis in each person and number.

How are passive verbs formed ?

Conjugate the passive verb **BE LOVED** throughout.

Give a synopsis in each person and number.

How is a verb conjugated *negatively* ?

How is a verb conjugated *interrogatively* ?

How is a verb conjugated *interrogatively* and *negatively* ?

What is an *irregular* verb ?

Learn the principal parts of all the irregular verbs.

What is a *defective* verb ?

What verbs are defective ? and wherein are they so ?

What is a **PARTICIPLE** ?

How many participles have verbs ? and what are they ?

How is the *imperfect* participle always formed ? and what does it imply ?

How is the *perfect* participle regularly formed ? and what does it imply ?

How is the *compound* participle formed ? and what does it imply ?

What is required of the pupil in the fifth chapter of examples for parsing ?

What is an **ADVERB** ?

To what general classes may adverbs be reduced ?

How may adverbs of *time* be known ?

How may adverbs of *place* be known ?

How may adverbs of *degree* be known ?

How may adverbs of *manner* be known ?

What are *conjunctive* adverbs ?

Have adverbs any modifications ?

Compare *well*, *badly* or *ill*, *little*, *much*, *far*, and *forth*.

What is a **CONJUNCTION** ?

How are conjunctions divided ?

What is a *copulative* conjunction ?

What is a *disjunctive* conjunction ?

What are the principal conjunctions ?

What is a **PREPOSITION** ?

What are the principal prepositions ?

What is an **INTERJECTION** ?

How are the interjections arranged ?

What are the interjections of joy ?—of sorrow ?—of wonder ?—of wishing or earnestness ?—of pain ?—of contempt ?—of aversion ?—of calling ?—of exultation ?—of laughter ?—of salutation ?—of calling to attention ?—of calling to silence ?—of surprise ?—of languor ?

What is required of the pupil in the sixth chapter of examples for parsing ?

EXERCISES IN ETYMOLOGY.

When the pupil has become familiar with the different parts of speech, and their divisions and modifications, and has been sufficiently exercised in etymological parsing, he should *write* the following exercises.

EXERCISE I.—ARTICLES.

1. Prefix the definite article to the following nouns : path, paths ; loss, losses ; name, names ; page, pages ; want, wants ; doubt, doubts ; votary, votaries.

2. Prefix the indefinite article to the following nouns : age, error, idea, omen, urn, arch, bird, cage, dream, empire, farm, grain, horse, idol, jay, king, lady, man, novice, opinion, pony, quail, raven, sample, trade, uncle, vessel, window, youth, zone, whirlwind, union, onion, unit, eagle, house, honour, hour, herald, habitation, hospital, harper, harpoon, ewer, eye, humour.

3. Insert the definite article rightly in the following phrases : George Second—fair appearance—part first—reasons most obvious—good man—wide circle—man of honour—man of world—old books—common people—same person—smaller piece—rich and poor—first and last—all time—great excess—nine muses—how rich reward—so small number—all ancient writers—in nature of things—much better course.

4. Insert the indefinite article rightly in each of the following phrases : new name—very quick motion—other sheep—such power—what instance—great weight—such worthy cause—too great difference—high honour—humble station—universal law—what strange event—so deep interest—as firm hope—so great wit—humorous story—such person—few dollars—little reflection.

EXERCISE II.—NOUNS.

1. Write the plural of the following nouns : town, country, case, pin, needle, harp, pen, sex, rush, arch, marsh, monarch, blemish, distich, princess, gas, bias, stigma, well, grotto, folio, punctilio, ally, duty, toy, money, entry, valley, volley, half, dwarf, strife, knife, roof, muff, staff, chief, sheaf, mouse, penny, ox, foot, erratum, axis, thesis, criterion, bolus, rebus, son-in-law, pailful, man-servant.

2. Write the feminines corresponding to the following nouns : earl, friar, stag, lord, duke, marquiss, hero, executor, nephew, heir, actor, enchanter, hunter, prince, traitor, lion, arbiter, tutor, songster, abbot, master, uncle, widower, son, landgrave.

3. Write the possessive case, singular, of the following nouns : table, leaf, boy, torch, park, porch, portico, lynx, calf, sheep, wolf, echo, folly, cavern, father-in-law, court-martial.

4. Write the possessive case, plural, of the following nouns : priest, tutor, scholar, mountain, city, courtier, judge, citizen, woman, servant, writer, grandmother.

5. Write the possessive case, both singular and plural, of the following nouns : body, fancy, lady, attorney, negro, nuncio, life, brother, deer, child, wife, goose, beau, envoy, distaff, colloquy, hero, thief, wretch.

EXERCISE III.—ADJECTIVES.

1. Annex a suitable noun to each of the following adjectives : good, great, tall, wise, strong, dark, dangerous, dismal, drowsy, twenty, true, difficult, pale, livid, ripe, delicious, stormy, rainy, convenient, heavy. Thus—good *pens*, &c.

2. Prefix a suitable adjective to each of the following nouns : man, son, merchant, work, fence, fear, poverty, picture, prince, delay, suspense, devices, follies, actions. Thus—*wise* man, &c.

3. Compare the following adjectives : black, bright, short, white, old, high, wet, big, few, lovely, dry, fat, good, bad, little, much, many, far.

4. Express the degrees of the following qualities by the comparative adverbs of increase : delightful, comfortable,

agreeable, pleasant, fortunate, valuable, wretched, vivid, timid, poignant, excellent.

5. Express the degrees of the following qualities by the comparative adverbs of diminution: objectionable, formidable, forcible, comely, pleasing, obvious, censurable, prudent.

EXERCISE IV.—PRONOUNS.

1. Write the nominative plural of the following pronouns: I, thou, he, she, it, who, which, what, that.

2. Write the declension of the following pronouns: myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself, whosoever.

3. Write the following words in their customary form: her's, it's, our's, yours', their's, who's, meself, hisself, their-selves.

4. Write the objective singular of all the simple pronouns.

5. Write the objective plural of all the simple pronouns.

EXERCISE V.—VERBS.

1. Write the four principal parts of each of the following verbs: slip, thrill, caress, force, release, crop, try, die, obey, delay, destroy, deny, buy, come, do, feed, lie, say, huzza.

2. Write the following preterits in their appropriate form: exprest, stript, learnt, dropt, jumpt, prest, topt, whipt, spoilt, propt, fixt, staid, past, crost, stept, distrest, gusht, confest, snapt, blest, shipt, kist, discust, lackt.

3. Write the following verbs in the indicative mood, present tense, second person, singular: move, strive, please, reach, confess, fix, deny, survive, know, go, outdo, close, lose, pursue.

4. Write the following verbs in the indicative mood, present tense, third person, singular: leave, seem, search, impeach, fear, redress, comply, bestow, do, woo, sue, view, allure, rely, beset, release, be, bias.

5. Write the following verbs in the subjunctive mood, present tense, in the three persons, singular: serve, shun, turn, learn, find, wish, throw, dream, possess, detest, disarm, allow, pretend.

EXERCISE VI.—VERBS.

1. Write a synopsis of the first person singular of the active verb *amuse*, conjugated affirmatively.
2. Write a synopsis of the second person singular of the neuter verb *sit*, conjugated affirmatively in the solemn style.
3. Write a synopsis of the third person singular of the active verb *speak*, conjugated affirmatively in the compound form.
4. Write a synopsis of the first person plural of the passive verb *be reduced*, conjugated affirmatively.
5. Write a synopsis of the second person plural of the active verb *lose*, conjugated negatively.
6. Write a synopsis of the third person plural of the neuter verb *stand*, conjugated interrogatively.
7. Write a synopsis of the first person singular of the active verb *derive*, conjugated interrogatively and negatively.

EXERCISE VII.—PARTICIPLES.

1. Write the imperfect participle of the following verbs: belong, provoke, degrade, impress, fly, do, survey, vie, coo, let, hit, put, defer, differ, remember.
2. Write the perfect participle of the following verbs: turn, burn, learn, deem, crowd, choose, draw, hear, lend, sweep, tear, thrust, steal, write, delay, imply, exist.
3. Write the compound participle of the following verbs: depend, dare, deny, value, forsake, bear, set, sit, lay, mix, speak, sleep, allot.
4. Write the following participles in their appropriate form: dipt, deckt, markt, equipt, ingulft, embarrass, astonisht, tost, embost, absorpt, attackt, gasht, soakt, hackt, blest, curst.
5. Write the regular participles which are now generally preferred to the following irregular ones: clad, graven, hoven, hewn, knelt, leant, lit, mown, quit, riven, sawn, sodden, shaven, shorn, sown, strown, swollen, thriven, wrought.

6. Write the irregular participles which are commonly preferred to the following regular ones: bended, builded, catched, creeped, dealed, digged, dreamed, dwelled, gilded, girded, hanged, knitted, laded, meant, reaved, shined, slitted, splitted, stringed, strived, weeped, wonted, wringed.

EXERCISE VIII.—ADVERBS, &c.

1. Compare the following adverbs: soon, often, well, badly *or* ill, little, much, far, forth.

2. Prefix the comparative adverbs of increase to each of the following adverbs: purely, fairly, sweetly, earnestly, patiently, completely, fortunately, profitably.

3. Prefix the comparative adverbs of diminution to the following adverbs: secretly, slyly, liberally, favourably, powerfully.

4. Insert suitable conjunctions in place of the following dashes: Love—fidelity are inseparable. Beware of parties—factions. Do well—boast not. Improve time—it flies. There would be few paupers—no time were lost. Be not proud—thou art human. I saw—it was necessary. Honesty is better—policy. Neither he—I can do it. It must be done—to-day—to-morrow. Take care—thou fall. Though I should boast—am I nothing.

5. Insert suitable prepositions in the place of the following dashes: Plead—the dumb. Qualify thyself—action—study. Think often—the worth—time. Live—peace—all men. Keep—compass. Jest not—serious subjects. Take no part—slander. Guilt starts—its own shadow. Grudge not—giving. Go not—sleep—malice. Debate not—temptation. Depend not—the stores—others. Contend not—trifles. Many fall—grasping—things—their reach. Be deaf—detraction.

6. Correct the following sentences, and adapt the interjections to the emotions expressed by the other words: Aha! aha! I am undone. Hey! io! I am tired. Ho! be still. Avaunt! this way. Ah! what nonsense. Heigho! I am delighted. Hist! it is contemptible. Oh for that sympathetic glow! Ah! what withering phantoms glare!

PART III.

SYNTAX.

Syntax treats of the relation, agreement, government, and arrangement, of words in sentences.

The *relation* of words, is their dependence, according to the sense.

The *agreement* of words, is their similarity in person, number, gender, case, mood, tense, or form.

The *government* of words, is that power which one part of speech has over another, to cause it to assume some particular modification.

The *arrangement* of words, is their collocation in a sentence.

A *sentence* is an assemblage of words, making complete sense, and always containing a nominative and a verb.

The principal parts of a sentence, are the **SUBJECT**, or nominative—the **VERB**—and, (if the verb be transitive,) the **OBJECT** governed by the verb. The other parts depend upon these either as *primary* or as *secondary adjuncts*.

Sentences are of two kinds, *simple* and *compound*.

A *simple sentence*, is a sentence which conveys but one affirmation or negation; as, "Man is mortal."

A *compound sentence*, is a sentence which may be resolved into two or more simple ones; as, "Idleness produces want, vice, and misery."

A *clause* is a subdivision of a compound sentence.

A *phrase* is two or more words which express some relation of ideas, without affirmation or negation; as, "By the means appointed"—"To be plain with you."

Words that are omitted by *ellipsis*, and that are necessarily understood, in order to complete the construction, must be supplied in parsing.

RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. RELATION AND AGREEMENT.

RULE I.

Articles relate to the nouns which they limit.

RULE II.

A Noun or a Pronoun which is the subject of a verb, must be in the nominative case.

RULE III.

A Noun or a personal Pronoun, used to explain a preceding noun or pronoun, is put, by apposition, in the same case.

RULE IV.

Adjectives relate to nouns or pronouns.

RULE V.

A Pronoun must agree with its antecedent, or the noun or pronoun which it represents, in person, number, and gender.

RULE VI.

When the antecedent is a collective noun conveying the idea of plurality, the Pronoun must agree with it, in the plural number.

RULE VII.

When a Pronoun has two or more antecedents connected by *and*, it must agree with them in the plural number.

RULE VIII.

When a Pronoun has two or more singular antecedents connected by *or* or *nor*, it must agree with them in the singular number.

RULE IX.

A Verb must agree with its subject, or nominative, in person and number.

RULE X.

When the nominative is a collective noun conveying the idea of plurality, the Verb must agree with it in the plural number.

RULE XI.

When a Verb has two or more nominatives connected by *and*, it must agree with them in the plural number.

RULE XII.

When a Verb has two or more singular nominatives connected by *or* or *nor*, it must agree with them in the singular number.

RULE XIII.

When Verbs are connected by a conjunction, they must either agree in mood, tense, and form, or have separate nominatives expressed.

RULE XIV.

Participles relate to nouns or pronouns, or are governed by prepositions.

RULE XV.

Adverbs relate to verbs, participles, adjectives, or other adverbs.

RULE XVI.

Conjunctions connect either words or sentences.

RULE XVII.

Prepositions show the relations of things.

RULE XVIII.

Interjections have no dependent construction.

2. GOVERNMENT.*

RULE XIX.

A noun or a pronoun in the possessive case, is governed by the name of the thing possessed.

RULE XX.

Active-transitive verbs, and their imperfect and compound participles, govern the objective case.

RULE XXI.

Active-intransitive, passive, and neuter verbs, and their participles, take the same case after as before them, when both words refer to the same thing.

RULE XXII.

Prepositions govern the objective case.

RULE XXIII.

The preposition *to* governs the infinitive mood, and commonly connects it to a finite verb.

RULE XXIV.

The active verbs, *bid, dare, feel, hear, let, make, need, see*, and their participles, take the infinitive after them, without the preposition *to*.

RULE XXV.

A noun or a pronoun is put absolute in the nominative, when its case depends on no other word.

RULE XXVI.

A future contingency is best expressed by a verb in the Subjunctive, present; and a mere supposition, with indefinite time, by a verb in the Subjunctive, imperfect: but a conditional circumstance assumed as a fact, requires the Indicative Mood.

* The *arrangement* of words is treated of, in the Observations under the Rules of Syntax, page 113, *et seq.*

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING,

(CHAPTER VII.)

In which it is required of the pupil—to distinguish the different parts of speech and their classes, to mention their modifications in order, to point out their relation, agreement, or government, and to apply the Rules of Syntax. Thus :

This enterprise, alas! will never compensate us for the trouble and expense with which it has been attended.

This is a pronominal adjective, of the singular number: and relates to *enterprise*; according to Rule IV, which says, "Adjectives relate to nouns or pronouns."

enterprise is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter gender, and nominative case: and is the subject of *will compensate*; according to Rule II, which says, "A noun or a pronoun which is the subject of a verb, must be in the nominative case."

alas is an interjection indicating sorrow: and is used independently; according to Rule XVIII, which says, "Interjections have no dependent construction."

will is an auxiliary to *compensate*.

never is an adverb of time: and relates to *will compensate*; according to Rule XV, which says, "Adverbs relate to verbs, participles, adjectives, or other adverbs."

will compensate is a regular, active-transitive verb, from *compensate*, *compensated*, *compensating*, *compensated*; found in the indicative mood, first-future tense, third person, and singular number: and agrees with its nominative *enterprise*; according to rule IX. which says, "A verb must agree with its subject, or nominative, in person and number."

us is a personal pronoun, of the first person, plural number, masculine gender, and objective case: and is governed by *will compensate*; according to Rule XX, which says, "Active-transitive verbs, and their imperfect and compound participles, govern the objective case."

for is a preposition: and shows the relation between *trouble and expense* and *will compensate*; according to Rule XVII, which says, "Prepositions show the relations of things."

the is the definite article: and relates to *trouble* and *expense*; according to Rule I, which says, "Articles relate to the nouns which they limit."

trouble is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter gender, and objective case: and is governed by *for*; according to Rule XXII, which says, "Prepositions govern the objective case."

and is a copulative conjunction: and connects *trouble* and *expense*; according to Rule XVI, which says, "Conjunctions connect either words or sentences."

expense is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter gender, and objective case: and is connected by *and* to *trouble*, and governed by *for*; according to Rule XXII, which says, "Prepositions govern the objective case."

with is a preposition: and shows the relation between *which* and *has been attended*; according to Rule XVII, which says, "Prepositions show the relations of things."

which is a relative pronoun, representing *trouble and expense*, in the third person, plural number, and neuter gender; according to Rule VII, which says, "When a pronoun has two or more antecedents connected by *and*, it must agree with them in the plural number:" and is in the objective case, being governed by *with*; according to Rule XXII, which says, "Prepositions govern the objective case."

it is a personal pronoun, representing *enterprise*, in the third person, singular number, and neuter gender; according to Rule V, which says, "A pronoun must agree with its antecedent, or the noun or pronoun which it represents, in person, number, and gender:" and is in the nominative case, being the subject of *has been attended*; according to Rule II, which says, "A noun or a pronoun which is the subject of a verb, must be in the nominative case."

has been attended is a passive verb, from the regular active verb *attend*, *attended*, *attending*, *attended*,—passive, *to be attended*; found in the indicative mood, perfect tense, third person, and singular number: and agrees with its nominative *it*; according to Rule IX, which says, "A verb must agree with its subject, or nominative, in person and number."

SECTION I.*—LESSON I.

A man of a lively imagination, has a property in every thing which he sees, and exults in *the* happiness of *the* myriads of living creatures that inhabit *the* woods, *the* lawns, and *the* mountains.

As *the* branches of *a* tree return their sap to *the* root, from which it arose; as *a* river pours its waters to *the* sea, from which its springs were supplied; so *the* heart of *a* grateful man delights in returning *a* benefit received.

Spring hangs her infant blossoms on *the* trees,
Rock'd in *the* cradle of *the* western breeze.

* The twenty-six sections of this chapter are severally adapted to the foregoing Rules of Syntax.

SECTION II.—LESSON II.

We hold these truths to be self-evident: that all *men* are created equal; that *they* are endowed by their Creator, with certain unalienable rights; that among these, are *life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness.*

They who are moderate in their expectations, meet with few disappointments.

Which, now, of these three [men] was neighbour to him that fell among thieves? *He* that showed mercy on him.

Who takes care of all people, when *they* are sunk in sleep, when *they* cannot defend themselves, nor see if *danger* approaches?

Men whose *circumstances* will permit them to choose their own way of life, are inexcusable, if *they* do not pursue that *which* their *judgement* tells them is the most laudable.

Thou rather, with thy sharp and sulph'rous bolt,
Splitst the unwedgeable and gnarled oak.

SECTION III.—LESSON III.

In the fifth century, the Franks, a *people* of Germany, invaded France.

Jerusalem, the Jewish *capital*, was destroyed by the Romans under Titus the *son* of Vespasian.

In the days of Joram, *king* of Israel, flourished the prophet *Elisha*.

One of his brothers was there—*he* who conducts the free-school.

Him, *Tubal* nam'd, the *Vulcan* of old times,
The sword and falchion their *inventor* claim.

Virtue *itself* 'scapes not calumnious strokes.

All now are vanish'd! Virtue sole survives,
Immortal, never-failing *friend* of man,
His *guide* to happiness on high.

SECTION IV.—LESSON IV.

A *suspicious uncharitable* spirit is not only *inconsistent* with *all social* virtue and happiness, but it is also, in itself, *unreasonable and unjust.*

Any man who attends to what passes within himself, may easily discover that the *human* character is a very *complicated* system.

Among the *vicious*, friendship is *coeval* only with *mutual* satisfaction.

Pitch upon *that* course of life which is the most *excellent*, and custom will render it the most *delightful*.

No worldly enjoyments are *adequate* to the *high* desires and powers of an *immortal* spirit.

The *mighty* tempest, and the *hoary* waste,
Abrupt and *deep*, stretch'd o'er the *buried* earth,
 Awake to *solemn* thought.

The *gaudy*, *babbling*, and *remorseful* day
 Is crept into the bosom of the sea.

SECTION V.—LESSON V.

The chief misfortunes *that* befall *us* in life, can be traced to some vices or follies *which we* have committed.

The Psalms of David, present religion to *us*, in the most engaging dress; communicating truths *which* philosophy could never investigate, in a style *which* poetry can never equal. *He who* has once tasted *their* excellencies, will desire to taste *them* again; and *he who* tastes *them* oftenest, will relish *them* best.

'Hassan,' said the caliph, '*what* canst *thou* have lost, *whose* wealth was the labour of *thine* own hand; and *what* can have made *thee* sad, the spring of *whose* joy was in *thy* own bosom?'

He that has light within *his* own clear breast,
 May sit in the centre, and enjoy bright day:
 But *he that* hides a dark soul and foul thoughts,
 Benighted walks under the mid-day sun.

LESSON VI.

There is a simplicity in the words, *which* outshines the utmost pride of expression.

He that can please nobody, is not so much to be pitied, as *he that* nobody can please.

The meeting was so respectable, that the propriety of *its* decision, can hardly be questioned.

God is on the side of virtue : for *whoever* dreads punishment, suffers *it* ; and *whoever* deserves *it*, dreads *it*.

Every society has a right to prescribe for *itself*, the terms on *which its* members shall be admitted.

Th' Egyptian crown *I* to *your* hands remit ;
And with *it* take *his* heart *who* offers *it*.

The age *we* honour, standeth not
In locks of snow, or length of days ;
But in a life *which* knows no spot,
A heart *which* heavenly wisdom sways.

SECTION VI.—LESSON VII.

The clergy declared against any peace which would not give to *their* prelates a right to sit in parliament.

The fair sex, *whose* task is not, to mingle in the labours of public life, have *their* own part assigned *them* to act.

The committee, not depending on the royal favour, demanded the security of a legal and formal declaration of the rights *they* claimed.

The English people showed that *they* were not insensible to what was passing in Ireland.

The majority of the assembly were more consistent and temperate : *they* considered that to decline a cessation, would be to refute all *their* professions of loyalty.

By Wisdom tutor'd, Poetry exalts
Her voice to ages ; and informs the page
With music, image, sentiment and thought ;
Never to die ! the treasure of mankind !
Their highest honour, and *their* purest joy !

SECTION VII.—LESSON VIII.

Socrates and Plato were celebrated for *their* wisdom ; *they* were the most eminent philosophers of Greece.

And Pharaoh sent, and called for Moses and Aaron, and said unto *them*, 'I have sinned this time ; the Lord is righteous, and I and my people are wicked.'

Education when it works upon a noble mind, draws out to view many latent virtues and perfections, *which* without its aid, would never be able to make *their* appearance.

Honour thy father and mother, both in word and deed,
that a blessing may come upon thee from *them*.

How gladly would the man recall to life
The boy's neglected sire! a mother too,
That softer friend, perhaps more gladly still,
Might he demand *them* at the gates of death.

SECTION VIII.—LESSON IX.

Snow or ice, when *it* melts, absorbs heat and produces cold.

A marsh overgrown with willows, or a mountain shaded with oaks, is not only more beautiful, but more beneficial, than when *it* is naked and unadorned.

Mark the effect of art upon a block of marble: how the skill of the polisher fetches out the colours, makes the surface shine, and discovers every ornamental cloud, spot, or vein, *that* runs through the body of it! What sculpture is to a block of marble, education is to a human soul.

The saint or moralist should tread
This moss-grown alley, musing, slow;
He seeks, like me, the secret shade,
But not, like me, to nourish wo.

SECTION IX.—LESSON X

I perceive the difference; *it is* very obvious.
Thou sayst thou *dost* not *know* where thou *art*.
He does not *like* the office, and he *begs* to be excused.
It seems she is *disappointed*, and no one *pities* her:
We *depend* upon your assistance; for we *need* it.
Do you recollect the words? *I think* they *are* these.
They *are found* to be incorrect. Who *knows* them?
I retired from the throng, and *sat* down to read.
Bad as the world *is*, respect *is* always *paid* to virtue.
He stood alone, and *was scoffed* by the profane crew.
He endeavoured to escape, but they *caught* him.
She has finished her work, and we *have seen* it.
It has often been done in this way, and *has succeeded*.
We *had left* the company, and we *did* not *see* him.
You will be wanted at home; *do not tarry*.
They *will have returned* to town; you *will see* them.

The seasons *alter*; hoary-headed frosts
Fall in the fresh lap of the crimson rose.

LESSON XI.

Science *may* raise thee to eminence ; but religion alone *can* guide thee to felicity.

If we *would* honour merit, we *must* not judge by appearances : a visored villain *may* seem fair.

The laurels of the warrior *must* at all times *be* *died* in blood, and *bedewed* with the tears of the widow and the orphan. Often are they stained by rapine and cruelty.

It *might* *be* *expected*, that humanity itself *would* prevent them from breaking into the last retreat of the unfortunate.

He *should* consider often, who *can* choose but once.

She *may* have forgotten the occurrence.

They *cannot* have been deceived, being eye-witnesses.

Thou *must* have made a mistake.

They *might* have had opportunity to have returned.

What *could* have induced him to act in that manner ?

It *would* have been desirable to have had his company.

If her son *had* fallen, her latter days *would* have been rendered miserable ; he *was* her only support.

Had we not *been* too hasty, we *should* have discovered these men's secret intentions.

LESSON XII.

If thy enemy *be* hungry, *give* him bread to eat ; if he *be* thirsty, *give* him water to drink.

If thou duly *respected* thy teacher, he *would* never have occasion to punish thee.

If the mind *were* left uncultivated, though nothing else *should* find entrance, vice certainly *would*.

Say not thou, 'I *will* recompense evil,' but *wait* on the Lord, and he *shall* save thee.

Never *indulge* revenge to your own hurt.

Abstain from injuring others, if you *wish* to be in safety.

Do thou *attend* to this advice ; *be* not too confident.

Do not *waste* your time ; *omit* no opportunity of improvement : time lost *is* lost for ever.

Be not discouraged ; your wishes *may* yet *be* gratified.

Intemperance *engenders* disease, sloth *produces* poverty, pride *creates* disappointments, and dishonesty *exposes* to shame.

Loose conversation *operates* on the soul, as poison *does* on the body.

LESSON XIII.

A variety of pleasing objects, *charms* the eye.

Do not we all *need* assistance? *Ought* we, then, to withhold our aid from others? Charity, *is* kind to all.

The narrative of his dangers and escapes, *is* interesting.

Humility, as well as merit, *engages* esteem.

A sordid mind *is* incapable of friendship.

Neither *have* I, nor *has* my partner, *acceded* to this request.

The injuries we *do*, and those we *suffer*, *are* seldom *weighed* in the same balance.

Why *dost* thou *build* the hall, son of the winged days? thou *lookest* from thy towers to-day; yet a few years, and the blast of the desert *comes*; it *howls* in thy empty court.

Light! from whose rays all beauty *springs*,

Darkness! whose wide-expanded wings

Involve the dusky globe,

Praise him who, when the heavens he *spread*,

Darkness his thick pavilion *made*,

And light his regal robe.

SECTION X.—LESSON XIV.

The generality of his hearers *were* favourable to his doctrines.

The public *are* often *deceived* by false appearances and extravagant pretensions.

A considerable number of the confederates *were induced* to abandon the counsels of the nuncio.

Around Bethesda's healing wave,

Waiting to hear the rustling wing

Which spoke the angel nigh who gave

Its virtue to that holy spring,

With patience and with hope endued,

Were seen the gather'd multitude.

SECTION XI.—LESSON XV.

Our good and evil *proceed* from ourselves.

Sincerity and truth *form* the basis of every virtue.

Riches, honours, and pleasures, *steal* away the heart from religion.

On some occasions, mildness and forbearance *are* more powerful than vehemence and severity.

Virtue, diligence, and industry, joined with good temper and prudence, *must* ever *be* the surest means of prosperity.

Day and night *yield* us contrary blessings; and, at the same time, *assist* each other, by giving fresh lustre to the delights of both.

For never any thing can be amiss,
When simpleness and duty *tender* it.

The boast of heraldry, the pomp of power,
And all that beauty, all that wealth e'er gave,
Await alike the inevitable hour:
The paths of glory lead but to the grave.

SECTION XII.—LESSON XVI.

Man's happiness or misery *is*, in a great measure, put into his own hands.

When sickness, infirmity, or reverse of fortune, *affects* us, the sincerity of friendship is proved.

Neither his vote, his influence, nor his purse, *was* ever *withheld* from the cause in which he had engaged.

Has not sloth, or pride, or ill temper, or sinful passion, *misled* you from the path of sound and wise conduct?

Fools! who from hence into the notion fall,
That vice or virtue there *is* none at all.
If white and black blend, soften, and unite
A thousand ways, *is* there no black or white?

SECTION XIII.—LESSON XVII.

Cheerfulness *keeps* up a kind of day-light in the mind, and *fills* it with a steady and perpetual serenity.

King Solomon *built* a temple, and *dedicated* it to the Almighty.

The pleasures of sense resemble a foaming torrent, which, after a disorderly course, speedily *runs* out, and *leaves* an empty and offensive channel.

Bursting into tears, she *rose*, and *tore* a lock from her hair; a lock which waved o'er her heaving breast.

Loose, then, from earth the grasp of fond desire,
Weigh anchor, and some happier clime *explore*.

SECTION XIV.—LESSON XVIII.

He, *stooping* down and *looking* in, saw the linen clothes *lying*.

A man *used* to vicissitudes, is not easily dejected.

A habit of sincerity in *acknowledging* faults, is a guard against *committing* them.

This is a measure *founded* on justice, *supported* by precedent, and *warranted* by necessity.

The bounty *displayed* in the earth, equals the grandeur *manifested* in the heavens.

Sitting is the best posture for deliberation; standing, for persuasion. A judge, therefore, should speak *sitting*; a pleader, *standing*.

Having sold his patrimony, he engaged in merchandise.

Amaz'd I stood, *harrow'd* with grief and fear.

Lips busy, and eyes *fix'd*, foot *falling* slow,
Arms *hanging* idly down, hands *clasp'd* below,
Interpret to the marking eye distress,
Such as its symptoms can alone express.

SECTION XV.—LESSON XIX.

How soon man's earthly enjoyments pass *away*!

We *naturally* look with strong emotion to the spot, *where* the ashes of those we have loved, repose.

Veturia's son's wife, Volumnia, who was sitting with her *when* the women arrived, and who was *greatly* surprised at their coming, *hastily* asked them the meaning of *so* extraordinary an appearance.

Virtue is bold, and goodness *never* fearful.

The soul that sees Him, or receives, sublim'd,
New faculties, or learns *at least* t'employ
More worthily the powers she own'd *before*.

The canker galls the infants of the spring,
Too oft before their buttons be disclosed;
And, in the morn and liquid dew of youth,
Contagious blastments are *most* imminent.

SECTION XVI.—LESSON XX.

Prosperity gains friends, *and* adversity tries them.

If you desire to be free from sin, avoid temptation.

The ancient Russians believed, *that* their northern mountains encompassed the globe.

I disregard their imputations, *because* I do not merit them.

A judge ought to be influenced only by reason *and* evidence.

Look! *as* I blow this feather from my face,
And as the air blows it to me again;
 Obeying with my wind when I do blow,
And yielding to an other when it blows;
 Commanded always by the greater gust:
 Such is the lightness of you common men.

To thee who ownst that earthly bed,
 Ah! what will every dirge avail?
 Or tears which love *and* pity shed,
 That mourn beneath the gliding sail!

SECTION XVII.—LESSON XXI

Most *of* the troubles which we meet *with in* the world, arise *from* an irritable temper, or *from* improper conduct.

The want *of* regularity *in* the management *of* our affairs, very often prevents the successful accomplishment *of* those undertakings *in* which our fortune, comfort, and happiness, are involved.

By the faults *of* others, wise men learn *to* correct their own.

O momentary grace *of* mortal men,
 Which we more hunt *for* than the grace *of* God!
 Who builds his hopes *in* air *of* your fair looks,
 Lives like a drunken sailor *on* a mast;
 Ready, *with* ev'ry nod, *to* tumble down
Into the fatal bowels *of* the deep.

Thou art the source and centre *of* all minds,
 Their only point *of* rest, eternal Word!
From thee departing, they are lost, and rove
At random, *without* honour, hope, or peace.

SECTION XVIII.—LESSON XXII.

At that hour, O how vain was all sublunary happiness !
Alas, said I, man was made in vain ! how is he given
 away to misery and mortality !

O stretch thy reign, fair Peace, from shore to shore,
 Till conquest cease, and slavery be no more !

O Nature, how in every charm supreme !
 Whose votaries feast on raptures ever new !

O for the voice and fire of seraphim,
 To sing thy glories with devotion due !

Hail! wedded love,
 Perpetual fountain of domestic sweets !

SECTION XIX.—LESSON XXIII.

Charles's resignation filled all Europe with astonishment.
 Stately are *his* steps of age ! lovely the remnant of *his*
 years ! A crown of glory are *his* hoary locks ?

Joy rose in *Carthon's* face : he lifted *his* heavy eyes.

Eliza's sensibility is such, that *her brother's* misfortunes
 will greatly afflict her.

A dutiful son will hear *his father's* instruction.

What is the *bigot's* torch, the *tyrant's* chain ?
 I smile on death, if heaven-ward hope remain.

Ye thrones, dominions, virtues, powers,
 Join ye *your* joyful song with *ours*,

With us *your* voices raise ;
 From age to age extend the lay,
 To *heaven's* eternal Monarch pay
 Hymns of eternal praise.

SECTION XX.—LESSON XXIV.

Do not insult a poor *man* : his misery entitles *him* to pity.

When our vices leave *us*, we flatter *ourselves*, that we
 leave *them*.

While riotous indulgence enervates both the *body* and
 the *mind*, purity and virtue heighten all the *powers* of
 human fruition.

What avails the show of external liberty, to one who has
 lost the *government* of himself ?

Princes have but their *titles* for their glories,
 An outward *honour* for an inward toil;
 And, for unfelt imaginations,
 They often feel a *world* of restless cares.

No *flocks* that range the *valley*, free,
 To slaughter I condemn:
 Taught by that Power that pities *me*,
 I learn to pity *them*.

SECTION XXI.—LESSON XXV.

The memory of mischief, is no desirable *fame*.
 Virtue is the surest *road* to happiness.
 Solid merit is a *cure* for ambition.
 Meekness and modesty are true and lasting *ornaments*.
 Universal benevolence and patriotic zeal appear to have
 been the *motives* of all his actions.

Soon after his father's demise, he was crowned *emperor*.
 We, who never were his *favourites*, did not expect these
 attentions; and we could scarcely believe it was *he*.

Junius Brutus, the son of Marcus Brutus, and Collatinus,
 the husband of Lucretia, were chosen first *consuls* in
 Rome.

The son, bred in sloth becomes a *spendthrift*, a *profligate*,
 and goes out of the world a *beggar*.

I am, as thou art, a *reptile* of the earth: my life is a
moment; and eternity—in which days, and years, and ages,
 are *nothing*—eternity is before me, for which I also should
 prepare.

The Lord of all, himself through all diffus'd,
 Sustains, and is the *life* of all that lives.
 Nature is but a *name* for an effect
 Whose cause is *God*.

SECTION XXII.—LESSON XXVI.

Titles of *honour* conferred upon *those* who have no personal merit,
 are like the royal *stamp* set upon base *metal*.

In the *varieties* of *life*, we are inured to *habits* both of
 the active and the suffering *virtues*.

By *disappointments* and *trials*, the violence of our *passions* is tamed.

In the *beginning* God created the heaven and the earth.

There is none like unto the *God* of *Jeshurun*, who rideth upon the *heaven* in thy *help*, and in his *excellency* on the *sky*.

For the kingdom of *God* is not in *word*, but in *power*.

In the *death* of a *man* there is no remedy.

In every *region* the book of *nature* is open before us.

Ah! who can tell the triumphs of the *mind*,

By *truth* illumin'd, and by *taste* refin'd?

SECTION XXIII.—LESSON XXVII.

Leaning my head upon my hand, I began *to figure* to myself the miseries of confinement.

Our ambassadors are instructed *to negotiate* a peace; and there is reason *to think* they will succeed.

I shall henceforth do good and avoid evil, without respect to the opinions of men; and resolve *to solicit* only the approbation of that Being, whom alone we are sure *to please* by endeavouring *to please* him.

Delightful task! *to rear* the tender thought,
To teach the young idea how *to shoot*,
To pour the fresh instruction o'er the mind,
To breathe the enlivening spirit, and *to fix*
 The generous purpose in the glowing breast.

SECTION XXIV.—LESSON XXVIII.

You need not *go*. I heard my father *bid* the boy *bring* your trunk, and saw him *go* for it. I dare *say* it will be safe.

Let him who desires to see others happy, *make* haste to give, while his gift can be enjoyed.

None but the virtuous dare *hope* in bad circumstances.

Ye headlong torrents, rapid and profound;
 Ye softer floods, that lead the humid maze
 Along the vale; and thou majestic main,
 A secret world of wonders in thyself;
 Sound His stupendous praise, whose greater voice
 Or bids you *roar*, or bids your roarings *fall*.

SECTION XXV.—LESSON XXIX.

This *proposition* being admitted, I now state my argument.

There being much *obscurity* in the case, he refuses to decide upon it.

They being absent, we cannot come to a determination.

The senate consented to the creation of tribunes of the people, *Appius* alone protesting against the measure.

Fathers! Senators of Rome! the arbiters of nations! to you I fly for refuge.

Remember, *Almet*, that the world in which thou art placed, is but the road to another.

Return, my *son*, to thy labour; thy food shall again be tasteful, and thy rest shall be sweet.

Ingratitude! thou marble-hearted fiend,
More hideous, when thou showst thee in a child,
Than the sea-monster!

O wretched *we!* why were we hurried down
This lubric and adul'trate age!

LESSON XXX.

What misery doth the vicious man secretly endure!
Adversity! how blunt are all the arrows of thy quiver, in comparison with those of guilt!

Remember the uncertainty of life, and restrain thy hand from evil. *He* that was yesterday a king, behold him dead, and the beggar is better than he.

The *lamb* thy riot dooms to bleed to-day,
Had he thy reason, would he skip and play?

Hail! mildly-pleasing *Solitude*,
Companion of the wise and good!

All this dread order break—for whom? for thee?
Vile *worm!*—Oh *madness! pride! impiety!*

My *Absalom!* the voice of nature cried,
Oh! that for thee thy father could have died!
For bloody was the deed, and rashly done,
That slew my *Absalom!*—my son!—my son!

SECTION XXVI.—LESSON XXXI.

Though hand *join* in hand, the wicked shall not be unpunished.

Let him that hastens to be rich, take heed lest he suddenly *become* poor.

If the king *were* present, Cleon; there would be no need of my answering to what thou hast just proposed.

He seems to have made an injudicious choice, though he *is esteemed* a sensible man.

Inspiring thought, of rapture yet to be!
 The tears of love *were* hopeless but for thee!
 If in that frame no deathless spirit *dwell*,
 If that faint murmur *be* the last farewell,
 If fate *unite* the faithful but to part,
 Why is their memory sacred to the heart?

RULES OF SYNTAX,

WITH EXAMPLES, NOTES, OBSERVATIONS, AND FALSE
 SYNTAX.

1. RELATION AND AGREEMENT.

RULE I.

Articles relate to the nouns which they limit: as,
 “At *a* little distance from *the* ruins of *the* abbey,
 stands *an* aged elm.”

OBS. 1.—Articles often relate to nouns understood; as, “The [*river*] Thames”—“Pliny the younger” [*man*].—“The honourable [*body*,] the Legislature”—“The animal [*world*] and the vegetable world”—“Neither to the right [*hand*], nor to the left” [*hand*].—“He was a good man, and a just [*man*].—“The pride of swains Palemon was, the generous [*man*], and the rich” [*man*].

OBS. 2.—It is not always necessary to repeat the article before several nouns in the same construction; the same article serves sometimes to limit the signification of more than one noun: but we doubt the propriety of ever construing two articles as relating to one and the same noun.

OBS. 3.—The article precedes its noun, and is never, by itself, placed after it.

OBS. 4.—When an adjective precedes the noun, the article is placed before the adjective; as,

“*The private path, the secret acts of men,
If noble, far the noblest of their lives.*”

Except the adjectives *all, such, many, what*, and those which are preceded by the adverbs *too, so, as, or how*; as, “*All the materials were bought at too dear a rate.*”

OBS. 5.—When the adjective is placed after the noun, the article generally retains its place before the noun, and is not repeated before the adjective; as, “*A man ignorant of astronomy*”—“*The primrose pale.*” In Greek, when an adjective is placed after its noun, if the article is prefixed to the noun, it is repeated before the adjective; as, Ἡ πόλις ἡ μεγάλη, *The city the great*; i. e. *The great city*

OBS. 6.—The definite article and an adjective are sometimes placed after the noun to which they both relate; as, “*Section the fourth*”—“*Henry the Eighth.*” The latter example is perhaps elliptical.

OBS. 7.—The definite article is often prefixed to comparatives and superlatives; and its effect is, (as Murray observes,) “to mark the degree *the more strongly*, and to define it *the more precisely*.” as, “*The oftener I see him the more I respect him.*”—“*A constitution the most fit*”—“*A claim, the strongest, and the most easily comprehended*”—“*The men the most difficult to be replaced.*” In these cases the article seems to relate only to the adjective or adverb following it.

OBS. 8.—The article *the* is applied to nouns of both numbers; as, *The man, the men—The good boy, the good boys.*

OBS. 9.—The article *the* is generally prefixed to adjectives that are used, by ellipsis, as nouns; as,

“*The great, the gay, shall they partake
The heav’n that thou alone canst make?*”—*Cowper.*

OBS. 10.—The article *the* is sometimes elegantly used in stead of a possessive pronoun; as, “*Men who have not bowed the knee to the image of Baal.*”—*Rom. xi. 4.*

OBS. 11.—*An* or *a* implies one, and is prefixed to nouns of the singular number only; as, *A man, a good boy.*

OBS. 12.—*An* or *a* is sometimes prefixed to an adjective of number, when the noun following is plural; as, *A few days—a hundred sheep.* In these cases the article relates only to the adjective. Some grammarians call these words of number *nouns*, and suppose an ellipsis of the preposition *of*. Murray and others call

them *adjectives*, and suppose a peculiarity of construction in the article.

OBS. 13.—*An* or *a* has sometimes the import of *each*, or *every*: as, “He came twice *a* year.” The article in this sense with a preposition understood, is preferable to the mercantile *per*, so frequently used; as, “Fifty cents [for] *a* bushel,”—not, “*per* bushel.”

OBS. 14.—*A*, as prefixed to participles in *ing*, or used in composition, is a *preposition*; being, probably, the French *à*, signifying *to*, *at*, *on*, *in*, or *of*; as, “He is gone *a* hunting”—“She lies *a*-bed all day.”

OBS. 15.—*An* is sometimes a *conjunction*, signifying, *if*; as, “*Nay, an* thou’lt mouthe, I’ll rant as well as thou.”—*Shak.*

NOTE I.—When the indefinite article is required, *a* should always be used before the sound of a consonant, and *an*, before that of a vowel; as, “With the talents of *an* angel, *a* man may be *a* fool.”—*Young.*

OBS.—*An* was formerly used before all words beginning with *h*, and before several other words which are now pronounced in such a manner as to require *a*: thus, we read in the Bible, “*An* house—an hundred—*an* one.” &c.

NOTE II.—When nouns are joined in construction, without a close connexion and common dependence, the article must be repeated. The following sentence is therefore inaccurate, “She never considered the quality, but merit of her visitors.” *The* should be inserted before *merit*.

NOTE III.—When adjectives are connected, and the qualities belong to things individually different, though of the same name, the article should be repeated; as, “*A* black and *a* white horse.” But when the qualities all belong to the same thing or things, the article should not be repeated; as, “*A* black and white horse.”

OBS. 1.—By a repetition of the article before several adjectives in the same construction, a repetition of the noun is implied; but without a repetition of the article, the adjectives are confined to one and the same noun.

OBS. 2.—To avoid repetition, we sometimes join inconsistent qualities to a plural noun; as, “The old and new testaments,” for “*The* old and *the* new testament.”

NOTE IV.—The article should not be used before the names of virtues, vices, passions, arts, or sciences; before

simple proper names; or before any noun whose signification is sufficiently definite without it; as, "*Falsehood* is odious."—" *Iron* is a useful mineral.

NOTE V.—When titles are mentioned merely as titles, the article should not be used; as, "He is styled *Marquis*."

NOTE VI.—In expressing a comparison, if both nouns refer to the same subject, the article should not be inserted; if to different subjects, it should not be omitted: thus, if we say, "He is a better teacher than poet," we compare different qualifications of the same man; but if we say, "He is a better teacher than *a* poet," we refer to different men.

NOTE VII.—The definite article, or some other definitive, is generally required before the antecedent to the pronoun *who* or *which* in a restrictive clause; as, "*The* men who were present, consented."

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Note 1.

He went into an house.

[Not proper, because the article *an* is used before *house*, which begins with the sound of a consonant. But, according to Note 1st under Rule 1st, "When the indefinite article is required, *a* should always be used before the sound of a consonant, and *an* before that of a vowel. Therefore, *an* should be *a*; thus, He went into *a* house.]

This is an hard saying.

A humble heart shall find favour.

Passing from an earthly to an heavenly diadem.

Few have the happiness of living with such an one.

She evinced an uniform adherence to the truth.

A hospital is an asylum for the sick.

This is truly an wonderful invention.

He is an younger man than we supposed.

An humorsome child is never long pleased.

A careless man is unfit for a hostler.

Under Note 2.

Avoid rude sports: an eye is soon lost, or bone broken.

As the drop of the bucket, and dust of the balance.

Not a word was uttered, nor sign given.
I despise not the doer, but deed.

Under Note 3.

What is the difference between the old and new method?
The sixth and tenth have a close resemblance.
Is Paris on the right hand, or left?
Does Peru join the Atlantic, or Pacific ocean?
He was influenced both by a just and generous principle.
The book was read by the old and young.
I have both the large and small grammar.
Is the north and the south line measured?
Are the two north and the south lines both measured?
Are both the north and south line measured?
Are the north line and south both measured?
Are both the north and south lines measured?
Are both the north lines and south measured?

Under Note 4.

Cleon was an other sort of a man.
There is, a species of an animal, called a seal.
Let us wait in the patience, and the quietness.
The contemplative mind delights in the silence.
Arithmetic is a branch of the mathematics.
You will never have an other such a chance.
I expected some such an answer.
And I persecuted this way unto the death.

Under Note 5.

He is entitled to the appellation of a gentleman.
Cromwell assumed the title of a Protector.
Her father is honoured with the title of an Earl.
The chief magistrate is styled a President.
The highest title in the state is that of the Governor.

Under Note 6.

He is a better writer than a reader.
He was an abler mathematician than a linguist.
I should rather have an orange than apple.

Under Note 7.

Words which are signs of complex ideas, are liable to be misunderstood.

Carriages which were formerly in use, were very clumsy.

The place is not mentioned by geographers who wrote at that time.

RULE II.

A Noun or a Pronoun which is the subject of a verb, must be in the nominative case : as,

"I know thou sayst it : says thy life the same?"

OBS. 1.—The subject, or nominative, is generally placed before the verb ; as, *"Peace dawned upon his mind."*—*"What is written in the law?"*

OBS. 2.—But, in the following cases, the subject is placed after the verb, or after the first auxiliary :

1.—When a question is asked, without an interrogative pronoun in the nominative case ; as, *"Shall mortals be implacable?"*—*"What art thou doing?"*

2. When the verb is in the imperative mood ; as, *"Go thou."*

3. When an earnest wish, or other strong feeling, is expressed ; as, *"May she be happy!"*—*"How were we struck!"*

4. When a supposition is made without a conjunction ; as, *"Were it true, it would not injure us."*

5. When *neither* or *nor*, signifying *and not*, precedes the verb ; as, *"This was his fear ; nor was his apprehension groundless."*

6. When, for the sake of emphasis, some word or words are placed before the verb, which more naturally come after it ; as, *"Here am I."*—*"Narrow is the way."*—*"Silver and gold have I none."*

7. When the verb has no regimen, and is itself emphatical ; as, *"Echo the mountains round."*

8. When the verbs *say*, *think*, *reply*, and the like, introduce the parts of a dialogue ; as, *"'Son of affliction,' said Omar, 'who art thou?' 'My name,' replied the stranger, 'is Hassan.'"*

9. When the adverb *there* precedes the verb ; as, *"There lived a man."*

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Rule 2.

Thee must have been idle.

[Not proper, because the pronoun *thee* which is the subject of the verb *must have been*, is in the objective case. But, according

to Rule 2d, "A noun or a pronoun which is the subject of a verb, must be in the nominative case." Therefore *thee* should be *thou*; thus, *Thou* must have been idle.]

Him that is studious, will improve.

Them that seek wisdom, will be wise.

She and me are of the same age.

You are two or three years older than us.

Are not John and thee cousins?

I can write as handsomely as thee.

Nobody said so but him.

Whom dost thou think was there?

Who broke this slate? Me.

We are alone; here's none but thee and I.

Them that honour me, I will honour; and them that despise me, shall be lightly esteemed.

He whom, in that instance, was deceived, is a man of sound judgement.

RULE III.

A Noun or a personal Pronoun, used to explain a preceding noun or pronoun, is put, by apposition, in the same case: as,

"But *he*, our gracious *Master*, kind as just,
Knowing our frame, remembers we are dust."

OBS. 1.—*Apposition* is the using of different words or appellations, to designate the same thing. *Apposition* also denotes the relation which exists between the words which are so employed.

OBS. 2.—The explanatory word is sometimes placed first, especially among the poets; as,

"From bright'ning fields of ether fair disclos'd,
Child of the sun, refulgent *Summer* comes."—*Thomson*.

OBS. 3.—The pronouns of the first and second persons, are often prefixed to nouns merely to distinguish their person. In this case of apposition, the words are not separated by a comma; as, "*I John* saw these things."—"His praise, *ye brooks*, attune."

OBS. 4.—When two or more nouns of the possessive case are put in apposition, the possessive termination added to one, denotes the case of both or all; as, "His *brother Philip's* wife"—"*John Baptist's* head"—"At my *friend Johnson's*, the bookseller." By a repetition of the possessive sign, a distinct governing noun is implied, and the apposition is destroyed.

OBS. 5.—In like manner, a noun without the possessive sign, is sometimes put in apposition with a pronoun of the possessive case; as,

"Thus shall mankind *his* guardian care engage,
The promis'd *father* of the future age."—*Pope*.

OBS. 6.—When a noun or a pronoun is repeated for the sake of emphasis, the word which is repeated, may properly be said to be in apposition with that which is first introduced: as, "They have forsaken *me*, the *Fountain* of living waters, and hewed them out *cisterns*, broken *cisterns*, that can hold no water."—*Jer.* ii. 13.

OBS. 7.—A noun is sometimes put in apposition to a sentence; as, "He permitted me to consult his library—a *kindness* which I shall not forget."

OBS. 8.—A distributive term, in the singular number, is frequently construed with a comprehensive plural; as, "*They* reap vanity *every one* with his neighbour."

OBS. 9.—To express a reciprocal action or relation, *each other* and *one another* are employed. The words separately considered, are singular; but, taken together, they imply plurality: and they can be properly construed only after plurals, or singulars taken conjointly. *Each other* is usually applied to two objects; and *one another*, to more than two. If the expressions be analyzed, *each* and *one* will appear to be in the nominative case, and *other*, in the objective; as, "They love *each other*;" i. e. *each* loves *the other*. *Each* is properly in apposition with *they*, and *other* governed by the verb. The governing word sometimes comes between them; as, "Be ye helpers *one of another*:" sometimes after them; as, "Ye are *one another's joy*."

OBS. 10.—The common and the proper name of an object are often associated, and put in apposition; as, The river Thames—The ship Albion—The poet Cowper—Lake Erie—Cape May—Mount Atlas. But the proper name of a *place*, when accompanied by the common name, is generally put in the objective case, and preceded by *of*; as, The city *of* New-York—The land *of* Canaan.

OBS. 11.—The several proper names which distinguish an individual, are always in apposition, and should be taken together in parsing; as, "*William Pitt*—*Marcus Tullius Cicero*."

OBS. 12.—When an object acquires a new name or character from the action of a verb, the new appellation is put in apposition with the object of the active verb, and in the nominative after the passive; as, "They named the child *John*—The *child* was named *John*."—"They elected *him president*"—*He* was elected *president*."

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Rule 3.

I have received a letter from my cousin, she that was here last week.

[Not proper, because the pronoun *she* is in the nominative case, and is used to explain the noun *cousin*, which is in the objective

case. But, according to Rule 3d, "A noun or a personal pronoun, used to explain a preceding noun or pronoun, is put, by apposition in the same case." Therefore, *she* should be *her*; thus, I have received a letter from my cousin, *her* that was here last week.]

The book is a present from my brother Richard, he that keeps the bookstore.

I am going to see my friends in the country, they that we met at the ferry.

This dress was made by Catharine, the milliner, she that we saw at work.

Dennis, the gardener, him that gave me the tulips, has promised me a piony.

Resolve me, why the cottager, and king,
Him whom sea-sever'd realms obey, and him
Who steals his whole dominion from the waste,
Repelling winter blasts with mud and straw,
Disquieted alike, draw sigh for sigh.

RULE IV.

Adjectives relate to nouns or pronouns: as, "He is a wise man, though he is young."

OBS. 1.—Adjectives often relate to nouns understood; as, 'The nine' [*muses*].—'Philip was one of the seven' [*deacons*].—'He came unto his own' [*possessions*], and his own [*men*] received him not.'

OBS. 2.—In as much as *qualities* belong only to things, most grammarians teach that every adjective belongs to some *noun*, expressed or understood; and suppose a countless number of unnecessary ellipses. But it is evident that, in the construction of sentences, adjectives often relate immediately to pronouns, and, through them, to the nouns they represent.

OBS. 3.—When an adjective follows a verb, and is not followed by a noun, it generally relates to the *subject* of the verb; as, "I am glad that the door is made wide."

OBS. 4.—An adjective sometimes relates to a phrase or sentence, which is substituted for a noun; as, "That he should refuse, is not strange."

OBS. 5.—Adjectives preceded by the definite article, are often used, by ellipsis, as nouns. They designate those classes of objects which are characterized by the qualities they express. They are most commonly of the plural number, and refer to *persons, places, or things*, understood; as, "The careless [persons] and the impru-

dent, the giddy and the fickle, the ungrateful and the interested, everywhere meet us."

"Together let us beat this ample field,

Try what the open [places], what the covert, yield."—*Pope*.

Obs. 6.—The adjective is generally placed immediately before its noun; as, "*Vain man, is grandeur given to gay attire?*"

Obs. 7.—But, in the following instances, the adjective is placed after the word to which it relates:

1. When other words depend on the adjective; as, "*A mind conscious of right*"—"A tree *three feet thick*."

2. When the quality results from the action of a verb; as, "*Virtue renders life happy*."

3. When the adjective would thus be more clearly distinctive; as, "*Goodness infinite*"—"Wisdom *unsearchable*."

4. When a verb comes between the adjective and the noun or pronoun; as, "*I grew uneasy at her presence*."—*Addison*.

Obs. 8.—In some cases, the adjective may either precede or follow the noun: as,

1. In poetry; as, "—Wilt thou to the *isles*

Atlantic, to the rich Hesperian clime,

Fly in the train of Autumn?"—*Akenside*.

2. In some technical expressions; as, "A notary public," or, "A public notary."

3. When an adverb precedes the adjective; as, "A being infinitely wise, or, "An infinitely wise Being."

4. When several adjectives belong to the same noun; as, "A woman, modest, sensible, and virtuous," or, "A modest, sensible, and virtuous woman."

Obs. 9.—An emphatic adjective may be placed first in the sentence, though it belong after the verb; as, "*Weighty* is the anger of the righteous."

Obs. 10.—By an ellipsis of the noun, an adjective with a preposition before it, is sometimes equivalent to an adverb: as, "*In particular*;" that is, *in a particular manner*; equivalent to, "*particularly*."

NOTE I.—Adjectives that imply unity or plurality must agree with their nouns in number; as, "*That sort, those sorts*."

NOTE II.—When the adjective is necessarily plural, the noun should be made so too; as, "*Twenty pounds*," not, "*Twenty pound*."

Obs. 1.—In some peculiar phrases this rule appears to be disregarded; as, "*Twenty sail of vessels*"—"A *hundred head of cattle*"—"Two *hundred pennyworth of bread*."

Obs. 2.—To denote a collective number, a singular adjective may precede a plural one; as, "*One hundred men*"—"Every *six weeks*."

Obs. 3.—To denote plurality, the adjective *many*, may, in like manner, precede *an* or *a*, with a singular noun; as,

“Full *many* a flower is born to blush unseen.”—Gray.

NOTE III.—The noun *means*, and some others, have the same form in both numbers; they should therefore be used with an adjective of the singular or the plural number, as the sense requires; as, “By *this means* they bear witness to each other.”—Burke.

NOTE IV.—The comparative degree can only be used in reference to two objects, or classes of objects; the superlative compares one or more things with all others of the same class, whether few or many; as, “Edward is *taller* than James; he is the *largest* of my scholars.”

NOTE V.—When the comparative degree is employed, the latter term of comparison should never include the former; as, “Iron is more useful than *all the metals*.” It should be, “than *all the other metals*.”

NOTE VI.—When the superlative degree is employed, the latter term of comparison should never exclude the former; as, “A fondness for show, is, of all *other* follies, the most vain.” The word *other* should be expunged.

NOTE VII.—Comparative terminations, and adverbs of degree, should not be applied to adjectives that are not susceptible of comparison; and all double comparisons should be avoided: as, “Maxims *too perfect* for human nature.” It should be, “*too excellent*.”—“*Less nobler* plunder”—“The *most straitest* sect.” Expunge *less* and *most*.

NOTE VIII.—When adjectives are connected by conjunctions, the shortest and simplest should be placed first; as, “He is *older* and *more respectable* than his brother.”

NOTE IX.—An adjective and its noun may be taken as a compound term, to which other adjectives may be prefixed. The most distinguishing quality should be expressed next to the noun; as, “A fine young man,”—not “A young fine man.”

NOTE X.—In prose, the use of adjectives for adverbs, is improper: as, “He writes *elegant*,”—say, “*elegantly*.”

Obs. 1.—In poetry an adjective relating to the noun, is sometimes elegantly used in stead of an adverb qualifying the verb or participle; as, “To thee I bend the knee; to thee my thoughts
Continual climb.”—Thomson.

Obs. 2.—In order to determine, in difficult cases, whether an adjective or an adverb is required, the learner should carefully attend to the definitions of these parts of speech, and consider whether, in the case in question, *quality* or *manner* is to be expressed: if the former, an adjective is proper; if the latter, an adverb. The following examples will illustrate this point: “She looks *cold*;—she looks *coldly* on him.”—“I sat *silent*;—I sat *silently* musing.”—“Stand *firm*;—maintain your cause *firmly*.”

NOTE XI.—The pronoun *them* should never be used as an adjective in lieu of *those*: say, “I bought *those* books,”—not, “*them* books.”

NOTE XII.—When the pronominal adjectives, *this* and *that*, or *these* and *those*, are contrasted, *this* or *these*, should represent the latter of the antecedent terms, and *that* or *those*, the former: as,

“And reason raise o’er instinct as you can,
In *this*, ’tis God directs, in *that*, ’tis man.”—Pope.

“Farewell my friends! farewell my foes!
My peace with *these*, my love with *those*!”—Burns.

NOTE XIII.—The pronominal adjectives, *each*, *every*, *either*, and *neither*, are always in the third person singular; and, when they are the leading words in their clauses, they require verbs and pronouns, to agree with them accordingly: as, “*Each* of you is entitled to *his* share.”

NOTE XIV.—*Either* and *neither* relate to two things only: when more are referred to, *any* and *none* should be used instead of them; as, “*Any* of the three,”—not, “*Either* of the three.” “*None* of the four,”—not, “*Neither* of the four.”

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Note 1.

‘Those sort of people you will find to be troublesome.

[Not proper, because the adjective *those* is in the plural number, and does not agree with its noun *sort*, which is singular. But, according to Note 1st under Rule 4th, “Adjectives that imply unity or plurality, must agree with their nouns in number.” Therefore, *those* should be *that*; thus, *That* sort of people you will find to be troublesome.]

Things of these sort are easily understood.

Who broke that tongs?

Where did I drop this scissors?

Bring out that oats ?
Extinguish that embers.
I disregard this minutiae.
Those kind of injuries we need not fear.
What was the height of those gallows which Haman erected.

Under Note 2.

We rode about ten miles an hour.
'Tis for a thousand pound.
How deep is the water ? About six fathom.
The lot is twenty-five foot wide.
I have bought eight load of wood.

Under Note 3.

Industry is one mean of obtaining competence.
Scholasticus sought opportunities to display his learning ;
and, by these means, rendered himself ridiculous.
Caled was remarkable for his modesty, docility, and ingenuity ; and, by this means, he acquired both knowledge and fame.

Under Note 4.

He chose the latter of these three.
Trissyllables are often accented on the former syllable.
Which are the two more remarkable isthmuses in the world?

Under Note 5.

The Scriptures are more valuable than any writings.
The Russian empire is more extensive than any government in the world.
Israel loved Joseph more than all his children, because he was the son of his old age.

Under Note 6.

Of all other ill habits, idleness is the most incorrigible.
Eve was the fairest of all her daughters.
Hope is the most constant of all the other passions.

Under Note 7.

That opinion is too universal to be easily corrected.
Virtue confers the supremest dignity upon man.

The tongue is like a race-horse : the lesser weight it carries, the faster it runs.

A more healthier place cannot be found.

The best and the most wisest men often meet with discouragements.

Under Note 8.

He showed us a more agreeable and easier way.

This was the most convincing and plainest argument.

Some of the most moderate and wisest of the senators.

This is an honourable and ancient fraternity.

There vice shall meet an irrevocable and fatal doom.

Under Note 9.

He is a young industrious man.

She has a new elegant house.

The two first classes have read.

The oldest two sons have removed to the westward.

England had not seen such an other king.

Under Note 10.

She reads well, and writes neat.

He was extreme prodigal.

They went, conformable to their engagement.

He speaks very fluent, and reasons justly.

The deepest streams run the most silent.

These appear to be finished the neatest.

He was scarce gone, when you arrived.

I am exceeding sorry to hear of your misfortunes.

The work was uncommon well executed.

This is not such a large cargo as the last.

Thou knowst what a good horse mine is.

I cannot think so mean of him.

He acted much wiser than the others.

Under Note 11.

I bought them books at a very low price.

Go and tell them boys to be still.

I have several copies : thou art welcome to them two.

Which of them three men is the most useful.

Under Note 12.

Hope is as strong an incentive to action, as fear : this is the anticipation of good, that of evil.

The poor want some advantages which the rich enjoy ; but we should not therefore account those happy, and these miserable.

Memory and forecast just returns engage,
This pointing back to youth, that on to age.

Under Note 13.

Let each of them be heard in their turn.

Are either of these men known ?

No : neither of them have any connexions here.

Under Note 14.

Did either of the company stop to assist you ?

Here are six ; but neither of them will answer.

RULE V.

A Pronoun must agree with its antecedent, or the noun or pronoun which it represents, in person, number, and gender : as, " This is the friend of *whom* I spoke ; *he* has just arrived."—" This is the book *which* I bought ; *it* is an excellent work."—" Ye, therefore, *who* love mercy, teach *your* sons to love *it* too."

Obs. 1.—The pronoun *we* is used by the speaker to represent himself and others, and is therefore plural. But it is sometimes used, by a sort of fiction, instead of the singular, to intimate that the speaker is not alone in his opinions. Monarchs sometimes join it to a singular noun ; as, " *We* Alexander, Autocrat of all the Russias." They also employ the compound *ourselves*.

Obs. 2.—The pronoun *you*, though originally and properly plural, is now generally applied alike to one person or to more. [See Obs. 2, page 40.] This usage, however it may seem to involve a solecism, is established by that authority against which the mere grammarian has scarcely a right to remonstrate. We do not, however, think it necessary or advisable, to encumber the conjugations, as some have done, by introducing this pronoun and the corresponding form of the verb, as singular. The moral objections which may lie against this, or any other application of words, do not come within the grammarian's province.

Obs. 3.—When a pronoun represents the name of an inanimate object *personified*, it agrees with its antecedent in the figurative, and not in the literal sense ; as,

“ *Penance dreams her life away.*”—*Rogers.*

“ *Grim Darkness furls his leaden shroud.*”—*Idem.*

Obs. 4.—When the antecedent is applied *metaphorically*, the pronoun agrees with it in its literal, and not in its figurative sense; as, “ *Pitt was the pillar which upheld the state.*”—“ *The monarch of mountains rears his snowy head.*”

Obs. 5.—When the antecedent is put by *metonymy* for a noun of different properties, the pronoun sometimes agrees with it in the figurative, and sometimes in the literal sense ; as,

“ *The wolf, who [that] from the nightly fold,
Fierce drags the bleating prey, ne’er drunk her milk,
Nor wore her warming fleece.*”—*Thomson.*

“ *That each may fill the circle mark’d by Heaven,
Who sees with equal eye, as God of all,
A hero perish or a sparrow fall.*”—*Pope.*

“ *And heaven beholds its image in his breast.*”—*Idem.*

Obs. 6.—When the antecedent is put by *synecdoche* for more or less than it literally signifies, the pronoun agrees with it in the figurative, and not in its literal sense ; as,

“ *A dauntless soul erect, who smiled on death.*”—*Thomson.*

“ *But to the generous still-improving mind,
That gives the hopeless heart to sing for joy—
To him the long review of ordered life
Is inward rapture only to be felt.*”—*Idem.*

Obs. 7.—Pronouns usually follow the words which they represent; but this order is sometimes reversed: as, “ *Whom the cap fits, let him put it on.*”

Obs. 8.—A pronoun sometimes represents a phrase or sentence. In this case, the pronoun is always in the third person, singular, neuter ; as, “ *She is very handsome ; and she has the misfortune to know it.*”

Obs. 9.—When a pronoun follows two words, having a neuter verb between them, and both referring to same thing, it may represent either of them, but not with the same meaning: as, 1. “ *I am the man who command ;*” here, *who command* belongs to the subject *I*, and the meaning is, “ *I who command, am the man.*” The latter expression places the relative nearer to its antecedent, and is therefore preferable. 2. “ *I am the man who commands ;*” here, *who commands* belongs to the predicate *man*, and the meaning is, “ *I am the commander.*”

Obs. 10.—After the expletive *it*, which may be employed to introduce a noun or pronoun of any person, number, or gender, the above mentioned distinction is generally disregarded ; and the relative is made to agree with the latter word ; as, “ *It is not I that do it.*” The propriety of this construction is questionable.

Obs. 11.—The pronoun *it* is often used without a definite reference to any antecedent ; as, “ *Whether she grapple it with the pride of*

philosophy."—*Chalmers*. And still more frequently it refers to something mentioned in the subsequent part of the sentence. This pronoun is a necessary expletive at the commencement of sentence, in which the verb is followed by a clause which, by a transposition, may be made the subject to the verb ; as, "*It is impossible to please every one.*"—*It was requisite that the papers should be sent.*"

Obs. 12.—In familiar language, the relative in the objective case, is frequently understood ; as, "Here is the letter [*which*] I received." The omission of the relative in the nominative case, is inelegant ; as, "This is the worst thing [*that*] could happen." The latter ellipsis sometimes occurs in poetry ; as,

"In this 'tis God directs."—*Pope*.

Obs. 13.—In poetry, the antecedent is sometimes suppressed ; as, [*He*] "Who lives to nature, rarely can be poor."

Obs. 14.—*What* is sometimes used adverbially ; as, "Though I forbear, *what* am I eased ?"—*Job*, xvi. 6. "The enemy having his country wasted, *what* by himself and *what* by the soldiers, findeth succour in no place."—*Spenser*.

Obs. 15.—*What* is sometimes used as a mere interjection ; as,

"*What !* can you lull the winged winds asleep."—*Campbell*.

Obs. 16.—When no nominative comes between the relative and the verb which follows it, the relative is the nominative to the verb ; as, "Thou *who knowest* all things."

Obs. 17.—When there is a nominative between the relative and the verb, the relative is governed by some word in its own clause ; as, "The person *to whom* thou referst, has left the city."

Obs. 18.—When both the antecedent and the relative are nominatives, the relative agrees with the former verb, and the antecedent with the latter ; as, "He *that is* not virtuous, is not truly wise."

NOTE I.—A pronoun should not be introduced in connexion with words that belong more properly to the antecedent, or to an other pronoun ; as,

"My banks *they* are furnish'd with bees."—*Shenstone*. *They* should be omitted.

NOTE II.—A change of number, in the second person, is inelegant and improper ; as, "*You* wept, and *I* for *thee*."

Obs.—Poets have sometimes adopted this solecism, to avoid the harshness of the verb in the second person singular ; as,

"As, in that lov'd Athenian bower,
You learn'd an all-commanding power,
Thy mimic soul, O nymph endear'd,
Can well recall what then it heard."—*Collins*.

NOTE III.—The relative *who* is applied only to persons and to animals personified ; and *which*, to brute ani-

mals, and inanimate things : as, “ The *judge who* presided,” —“ The old *crab who* advised the young one,” —“ The *horse which* ran,” —“ The *book which* was given me.”

OBS.—*Which* as well as *who*, was formerly applied to persons : as, “ Our *Father which* art in heaven.” It may still be applied to a young child ; as, “ The child *which* died.”

NOTE IV.—Nouns of multitude, unless they express persons directly as such, should not be represented by the relative *who* : to say, “ The *family whom* I visited,” would hardly be proper ; *that* would here be better. When such nouns are strictly of the neuter gender, *which* may represent them ; as, “ The committees *which* were appointed.”

NOTE V.—A name taken merely as a name, or in any other sense not strictly personal, must be represented by *which*, and not by *who* ; as, “ Herod—*which* is but an other name for cruelty.” —“ In every prescription of duty, God proposeth himself as a rewarder ; *which* he is only to those that please him.” —*Owen*.

NOTE VI.—The relative *that* may be applied either to persons or to things. In the following cases it is preferable to *who* or *which* : 1. After an adjective of the superlative degree ; as, “ He was the *first that* came.” 2. After the adjective *same* ; as, “ This is the *same person that* I met before.” 3. After the antecedent *who* ; as, “ *Who that* has common sense, can think so ?” 4. After a joint reference to persons and things ; as, “ He spoke of the *men and things that* he had seen.” 5. After an unlimited antecedent ; as, “ *Thoughts that* breathe, and *words that* burn.” 6. After an antecedent introduced by the expletive *it* ; as, “ *It is you that* command.” *It was I that* did it.” 7. And, in general, where the propriety of *who* or *which* is doubtful ; as, “ The little child *that* was placed in the midst.”

NOTE VII.—When several relative clauses follow one antecedent, and have a similar dependence, the same pronoun must be employed in each : as, “ O thou *who* art, and *who* wast, and *who* art to come !”

NOTE VIII.—The relative, and the preposition governing it, should not be omitted, when they are necessary to give connexion to the sentence ; as, “ He is still in the situation [*in which*] you saw him.”

NOTE IX.—An adverb should not be used where a preposition and a relative pronoun would better express the relation of the terms; as, “A cause *where* [for *in which*] justice is so much concerned.”

NOTE X.—Where a pronoun or a pronominal adjective will not express the meaning clearly, the noun must be repeated. In the following sentence the meaning is not clearly expressed: “We see the beautiful variety of colour in the rainbow, and are led to consider the cause of *it*” [that variety].

NOTE XI.—To prevent ambiguity or obscurity, the relative should be placed as near as possible to its antecedent. The following sentence is faulty: “He is like a beast of prey, that is void of compassion;” better, “He that is void of compassion, is like a beast of prey.”

NOTE XII.—The pronoun *what* should never be used instead of the conjunction *that*; as, “He will not believe but *what* I am to blame.” *What* should be *that*.

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Rule 5.

No person should be censured for being careful of their reputation.

[Not proper, because the pronoun *their* is of the plural number, and does not correctly represent its antecedent noun *person*, which is singular. But, according to Rule 5th, “A pronoun must agree with its antecedent, or the noun or pronoun which it represents, in person, number, and gender.” Therefore, *their* should be *his*; thus, No person should be censured for being careful of *his* reputation.]

Every one must judge of their own feelings.

Can any person, on their entrance into the world, be fully secure, that they shall not be deceived?

He cannot see one in prosperity without envying them.

I gave him oats, but he would not eat it.

Rebecca took goodly raiment, and put them on Jacob.

Take up the tongs, and put it in its place.

Let each esteem others better than themselves.

A person may make themselves happy without riches.

Every man should try to provide for themselves.

The mind of man should not be left without something on which to employ his energies.

An idler is a watch that wants both hands,
As useless if he goes, as when he stands.

Under Note 1.

Many words they darken speech.
These praises he then seemed inclined to retract them.
These people they are all very ignorant.
Asa his heart was perfect with the Lord.
Who instead of going about doing good, they are perpetually doing mischief.
Whom ye delivered up, and denied him in the presence of Pontius Pilate.
Whom when they had washed, they laid her in an upper chamber.
What I have mentioned, there are witnesses of the fact.
What he said, he is now sorry for it.
The empress, approving these conditions, she immediately ratified them.
This incident, though it appears improbable, yet I cannot doubt the author's veracity.

Under Note 2.

Thou art my father's brother; else would I reprove you.
Your weakness is excusable, but thy wickedness is not.
Now, my son, I forgive thee, and freely pardon your fault.
You draw the inspiring breath of ancient song,
Till nobly rises emulous thy own.

Under Note 3.

This is the horse whom my father imported.
Those are the birds whom we call gregarious.
He has two brothers, one of which I am acquainted with.
What was that creature whom Job called leviathan?
Those which desire to be safe, should be careful to do that which is right.
A Butterfly, which thought himself an accomplished traveller, happened to light upon a bee-hive.
There was a certain householder which planted a vineyard.

Under Note 4.

He instructed and fed the crowds who surrounded him.
The court, who has great influence upon the public manners, ought to be very exemplary.
The wild tribes who inhabit the wilderness, contemplate the ocean with astonishment, and gaze upon the starry heavens with delight.

Under Note 5.

Judas, (who is now an other name for treachery,) betrayed his master with a kiss.
He alluded to Phalaris,—who is a name for all that is cruel.

Under Note 6.

He was the first who entered.
He was the drollest fellow whom I ever saw.
This is the same man whom we saw before.
Who is she who comes clothed in a robe of green?
The wife and fortune whom he gained, did not aid him.
Men who are avaricious, never have enough.
All which I have, is thine.
Was it thou, or the wind, who shut the door?
It was not I who shut it.
The babe who was in the cradle, appeared to be healthy.

Under Note 7.

He is a man that knows what belongs to good manners, and who will not do a dishonourable act.
The friend who was here, and that entertained us so much, will never be able to visit us again.
The curiosities which he has brought home, and that we shall have the pleasure of seeing, are said to be very rare.

Under Note 8.

Observe them in the order they stand.
We proceeded immediately to the place we were directed.
My companion remained a week in the state I left him.
The way I do it, is this.

Under Note 9.

Remember the condition whence thou art rescued.

I know of no rule how it may be done.

He drew up a petition, where he too freely represented his own merits.

The hour is hastening, when whatever praise or censure I have acquired, will be remembered with equal indifference.

Under Note 10.

Many will acknowledge the excellence of religion, who cannot tell wherein it consists.

Every difference of opinion is not that of principle.

Next to the knowledge of God, this of ourselves seems most worthy of our endeavour.

Under Note 11.

Thou art thyself the man that committed the act, who hast thus condemned it.

There is a certain majesty in simplicity which is far above the quaintness of wit.

Thou hast no right to judge who art a party concerned.

It is impossible for such men as those, ever to determine this question, who are likely to receive the appointment.

There are millions of people in the empire of China, whose support is derived almost entirely from rice.

Under Note 12.

I had no idea but what the story was true.

The post boy is not so weary but what he can whistle.

He had no intimation but what the men were honest.

RULE VI.

When the antecedent is a collective noun conveying the idea of plurality, the Pronoun must agree with it, in the plural number: as, "The *council* were divided in *their* sentiments."

NOTE I.—A collective noun conveying the idea of unity,

requires a pronoun in the third person, singular, neuter; as, "The *nation* will enforce *its* laws."

Obs.—Most collective nouns of the neuter gender, may take the regular plural form, and be represented by a pronoun in the third person, plural, neuter; as, "The *nations* will enforce *their* laws."

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Rule 6.

The jury will be confined till it agrees on a verdict.

[Not proper, because the pronoun *it* is of the singular number, and does not correctly represent its antecedent *jury*, which is a collective noun conveying the idea of plurality. But, according to Rule 6th, "When the antecedent is a collective noun conveying the idea of plurality, the pronoun must agree with it, in the plural number." Therefore *it* should be *they*; thus, The jury will be confined till *they* agree on a verdict.]

In youth, the multitude eagerly pursue pleasure, as if it were its chief good.

The council were not unanimous, and it separated without coming to any determination.

The committee were divided in sentiment, and it referred the business to the general meeting.

There happened to the army a very strange accident, which put it in great consternation.

The enemy were not able to support the charge, and he dispersed and fled.

The defendant's counsel had a difficult task imposed on it.

The board of health publish its proceedings.

I saw all the species thus delivered from its sorrows.

Under Note 1.

I saw the whole species thus delivered from their sorrows.

This court is famous for the justice of their decisions.

The convention then resolved themselves into a committee of the whole.

The crowd was so great that the judges with difficulty made their way through them.

RULE VII.

When a Pronoun has two or more antecedents connected by *and*, it must agree with them in the plural number : as, "*James and John* will favour us with *their* company."

OBS. 1.—When the antecedents are of different persons, the first person is preferred to the second, and the second, to the third : as, "John, and thou, and I, are attached to *our* country."—"John and thou are attached to *your* country."

OBS. 2.—The gender of pronouns, except in the third person singular, is distinguished only by their antecedents. In expressing that of a pronoun which has antecedents of different genders, the masculine should be preferred to the feminine, and the feminine to the neuter.

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Rule 7.

Discontent and sorrow manifested itself in his countenance.

[Not proper, because the pronoun *itself* is of the singular number, and does not correctly represent its two antecedents, *discontent* and *sorrow*, which are connected by *and*, and taken conjointly.

But, according to Rule 7th, "When a pronoun has two or more antecedents connected by *and*, it must agree with them in the plural number." Therefore, *itself* should be *themselves* ; thus, Discontent and sorrow manifested *themselves* in his countenance.]

Your levity and heedlessness, if it continue, will prevent all substantial improvement.

Poverty and obscurity will oppress him only who esteems it oppressive.

Good sense and refined policy are obvious to few, because it cannot be discovered but by a train of reflection.

Avoid haughtiness of behaviour, and affectation of manners : it implies a want of solid merit.

If love and unity continue, it will make you partakers of one another's joy.

Suffer not jealousy and distrust to enter : it will destroy, like a canker, every germ of friendship.

Hatred and animosity are inconsistent with Christian charity : guard, therefore, against the slightest indulgence of it.

Every man is entitled to liberty of conscience, and freedom of opinion, if he does not pervert it to the injury of others.

RULE VIII.

When a Pronoun has two or more singular antecedents connected by *or* or *nor*, it must agree with them in the singular number : as, “*James or John* will favour us with *his* company.”

OBS.—When antecedents of different persons, numbers, or genders, are connected by *or* or *nor*, they cannot be represented by a pronoun that is not applicable to each of them.

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Rule 8.

Neither wealth nor honour can secure the happiness of their votaries.

[Not proper, because the pronoun *their* is of the plural number, and does not correctly represent its two antecedents *wealth* and *honour*, which are connected by *nor*, and taken disjunctively. But, according to Rule 8th, “When a pronoun has two or more singular antecedents connected by *or* or *nor*, it must agree with them in the singular number.” Therefore, *their* should be *its*; thus, Neither wealth nor honour can secure the happiness of *its* votaries.]

Neither Sarah, Ann, nor Jane, has performed their task.
One or the other must relinquish their claim.

A man is not such a machine as a clock or a watch, which will move only as they are moved.

Rye or barley, when they are scorched, may supply the place of coffee.

A man may see a metaphor or an allegory in a picture, as well as read them in a description.

Despise no infirmity of mind or body, nor any condition of life; for they may be thy own lot.

RULE IX.

A Verb must agree with its subject, or nominative, in person and number : as, “*I know*; thou *knowst*, or *knowest*; he *knows*, or *knoweth*.”—“The bird *flies*; the birds *fly*.”

NOTE I.—The adjuncts of the nominative, do not control its agreement with the verb; as, “*Six months’ interest was*

due.”—“The *propriety* of these rules is evident.”—“The *mill* with all its appertenances, *was destroyed*.”

NOTE II.—The infinitive mood, a phrase, or a sentence, is sometimes the subject to a verb: a subject of this kind, however composed, if it is taken as one whole, requires a verb in the third person, singular; as, “*To lie* is base.”—“*To see the sun* is pleasant.”—“*That you have violated the law*, is evident.”—“*For what purpose they embarked*, is not yet known.”

OBS. 1.—The same meaning will be expressed, if the pronoun *it* be placed before the verb, and the infinitive or the phrase, after it; as, “*It* is base *to lie*.”—“*It* is evident *that you have violated the law*.” The construction of the following sentences is rendered defective by the omission of the pronoun: “Why do ye that which [*it*] is not lawful to do on the sabbath days?”—“The shewbread, which [*it*] is not lawful to eat, but for the priests only.”—*New Testament*.

OBS. 2.—The infinitive in this construction, is sometimes followed by an adjective, denoting a quality or state considered abstractly; as, “*To be good* is *to be happy*.” Here *good* and *happy* express the quality of goodness and the state of happiness, considered abstractly; and therefore they do not relate to any particular noun. The passive infinitive may have a similar import; as, “*To be satisfied* with a little, is the greatest wisdom.” Here the satisfaction is considered abstractly.

OBS. 3.—When the action or state is to be limited to a particular person or thing, the noun or pronoun may be introduced before the infinitive, by the preposition *for*; as, “*For a prince to be reduced* by villany to my distressful circumstances, is calamity enough.”—*Tr. Sallust*.”

NOTE III.—A neuter verb between two nominatives should be made to agree with that which precedes it; as, “Words are wind:” except when the terms are rhetorically transposed, and the proper subject is put after the verb; as, “His pavilion *were* dark waters and thick clouds.”—“Who *art* thou?”

NOTE IV.—When the verb has different forms, that form should be adopted, which is the most consistent with present and reputable usage, in the style employed; thus, to say familiarly, “The clock *hath* stricken,”—“Thou *laughedst* and *talkedst*, when thou *oughtest* to have been silent,”—“He *readeth* and *writeth*, but he *doth* not cipher,”—would be no better, than to use *don’t*, *won’t*, *can’t*, *sha’n’t*, and *didn’t*, in preaching.

NOTE V.—The nominative to a verb in the imperative mood, is generally omitted; as, “Guide [*thou*] my lonely way.” With the verb in all the other personal tenses, the nominative must be expressed: except where two or more verbs are connected in the same construction; as,

“They bud, blow, wither, fall, and die.”

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Rule 9.

You was kindly received.

[Not proper, because the verb *was received*, is of the singular number, and does not agree with its nominative *you*, which is plural. But, according to Rule 9th, “A verb must agree with its subject, or nominative, in person and number.” Therefore, *was received* should be *were received*; thus, *You were kindly received.*]

We was disappointed.

She dare not oppose it.

His pulse are too quick.

Circumstances alters cases.

He need not trouble himself.

Twenty-four pence is two shillings.

On one side was beautiful meadows.

He may pursue what studies he please.

What have become of our cousins?

There was more impostors than one.

What says his friends on this subject?

Thou knows the urgency of the case.

What avails good sentiments with a bad life?

Has those books been sent to the school?

There is many occasions for the exercise of patience.

What sounds have each of the vowels?

There were a great number of spectators.

There are an abundance of treatises on this easy science.

While ever and anon, there falls

Huge heaps of hoary moulder'd walls.

He that trust in the Lord, will never be without a friend.

Errors that originates in ignorance, is generally excusable.

Be ye not as the horse, or as the mule, which have no understanding.

Not one of the authors who mentions this incident, is entitled to credit.

The man and woman that was present, being strangers to him, wondered at his conduct.

There necessarily follows from thence, these plain and unquestionable consequences.

O thou, forever present in my way,
Who all my motives and my toils survey.

Under Note 1.

The derivation of these words are uncertain.

Four years' interest were demanded.

One, added to nineteen, make twenty.

The increase of orphans render the addition necessary.

The road to virtue and happiness, are open to all.

The ship with all her crew, were lost.

Nothing but vain and foolish pursuits, delight some folks.

Under Note 2.

To obtain the praise of men, were their only object.

To steal and then deny it, are a double sin.

To copy and claim the writings of others, are plagiarism.

To live soberly, righteously, and piously, are required of all men.

That it is our duty to promote peace and harmony among men, admit of no dispute.

Under Note 3.

The reproofs of instruction is the way of life.

A diphthong are two vowels joined in one syllable.

So great an affliction to him was his wicked sons.

What is the latitude and longitude of that island?

Under Note 4.

1. Familiar Style.

Was it thou that buildedst that house?

That boy writeth very elegantly.

Couldst not thou write, without blotting thy book?

Thinkest thou not it will rain to-day?

Doth not your cousin intend to visit you?

That boy hath torn my book.
 Was it thou that spreadest the hay ?
 Was it James, or thou, that didst let him in ?
 He dareth not say a word.
 Thou stoodest in my way, and hinderedst me.

2. Solemn Style.

The Lord has prepar'd his throne in the heavens ; and his
 kingdom rules over all.
 Thou answer'd them, O Lord our God : thou was a God
 that forgave them, though thou took vengeance of their
 inventions.
 Then thou spoke in vision to thy Holy One, and said—
 So then, it is not of him that wills, nor of him that runs, but
 of God that shows mercy.

Under Note 5.

Dear friend, Am. sorry to hear of thy loss ; but hope it
 may be retrieved. Should be happy to render thee any
 assistance in my power. Shall call to see thee to-mor-
 row morning. Accept assurances of my regard.
 I have just received a fresh supply of goods ; and are of
 the first quality.

Will martial flames forever fire thy mind,
 And never, never be to Heaven resign'd ?

RULE X.

When the nominative is a collective noun convey-
 ing the idea of plurality, the Verb must agree with
 it in the plural number : as, "The council *were* di-
 vided."

NOTE I.—A collective noun conveying the idea of unity,
 requires a verb in the third person, singular ; and gener-
 ally admits also the regular plural construction : as, "His
 army *was* defeated."—"His *armies were* defeated."

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Rule 10.

The people rejoices in that which should cause sorrow.

[Not proper, because the verb *rejoices* is of the singular number, and does not correctly agree with its nominative *people*, which is a collective noun conveying the idea of plurality. But, according to Rule 10th, "When the nominative is a collective noun conveying the idea of plurality, the verb must agree with it in the plural number." Therefore, *rejoices* should be *rejoice*; thus, The people *rejoice* in that which should cause sorrow."]]

The nobility was assured that he would not interpose.

The committee has attended to their appointment.

Mankind was not, at that time, united by the bonds of civil society.

The majority was disposed to adopt the measure.

The peasantry goes barefoot, and the middle sort makes use of wooden shoes.

All the world is spectators of your conduct.

Blessed is the people that know the joyful sound.

Under Note 1.

The church have no power to inflict corporal punishments.

The fleet were seen sailing up the channel.

The meeting have established several salutary regulations.

The regiment consist of a thousand men.

A detachment of two hundred men were immediately sent.

Every auditory take this in good part.

In this business, the house of commons were of no weight.

Are the senate considered as a separate body?

There are a flock of birds.

No society are chargeable with the disapproved conduct of particular members.

RULE XI.

When a Verb has two or more nominatives connected by *and*, it must agree with them in the plural number: as,

"Judges *and* senates *have been bought* for gold;
Esteem *and* love *were never* to be sold."—*Pope*.

Obs. 1.—The conjunction is sometimes understood; as,
 “Art, empire, earth itself, to change are doom’d.”—*Beattie*.

Obs. 2.—When the nouns connected are descriptive of one and the same object, they are in apposition, and do not require a plural verb; as, “This philosopher and poet *was* banished from his country.”

Obs. 3.—When the same nominative is repeated, the words are in apposition, and do not require a plural verb; as,

“Love, and love only, *is* the loan for love.”—*Young*.

Obs. 4.—When the verb separates its nominatives, it agrees with that which precedes it, and is understood to the rest; as,

————— “Forth in the pleasing spring,
 Thy beauty *walks*, thy tenderness, and love.”—*Thomson*.

Obs. 5.—In Greek and Latin, the verb frequently agrees with the nearest nominative, and is understood to the rest; and this construction is sometimes improperly imitated in English: as, *Νυνὶ δὲ ΜΕΝΕΙ πίστις, ἐλπίς, ἀγάπη, τὰ τρία ταῦτα.*—*Nunc verò manet fides, spes, charitas; tria hæc.*—Now *abideth* faith, hope, charity; these three.—1 *Cor.* xiii. 13.

NOTE I.—When two subjects are connected, one of which is taken affirmatively, and the other negatively, they belong to different propositions; and the verb or pronoun must agree with the affirmative subject, and be understood to the other: as, “Diligent *industry*, and not mean savings, *produces* honourable competence.” So also when subjects are connected by *as well as*, *but*, or *save*; as, “*Cæsar*, as well as Cicero, *was admired* for his eloquence.”—“*Nothing* but wailings *was heard*.”—“*None* but thou *can* aid us.”—“No mortal *man*, save he, *had e’er survived*.”—*Scott*.

Obs.—Some grammarians say that *but* and *save*, when they denote exception, should govern the objective case, as prepositions; but this is not according to the usage of the best authors. *Save*, as a conjunction, is nearly obsolete. In *Rev.* ii. 17, we read, “Which no man knoweth, *saving* he that receiveth it.”

NOTE II.—When the subjects are severally preceded by the adjective *each*, *every*, or *no*, they are taken separately, and require a verb and pronoun in the singular number; as,

“And every sense, and every heart *is* joy.”—*Thom*.

“Each beast, each insect, happy in *its* own.”—*Pope*.

NOTE III.—When words are to be taken conjointly, as subjects or antecedents, the conjunction *and* must connect them.

Obs.—In Latin, *cum* with an ablative, sometimes has the force of the conjunction *et* with a nominative; as, “*Dux cum aliquot principibus capiuntur.*”—*Livy*. In imitation of this construction, some English writers have substituted *with* for *and*, and varied the verb accordingly; as, “A long course of time, *with* a variety of accidents and circumstances, *are* requisite to produce these revolutions.”—*Hume*. But, as the preposition makes its object only an adjunct of the preceding noun, this construction cannot be justified.

NOTE IV.—Two or more distinct subject phrases connected by *and*, require a plural verb; as, “*To be wise in our own eyes, to be wise in the opinion of the world, and to be wise in the sight of our Creator,* are three things so very different as rarely to coincide.”—*Blair*.

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Rule 11.

Industry and frugality leads to wealth.

[Not proper, because the verb *leads* is of the singular number and does not correctly agree with its two nominatives, *industry* and *frugality*, which are connected by *and*, and taken conjointly. But, according to Rule 11th, “When a verb has two or more nominatives connected by *and*, it must agree with them in the plural number.” Therefore, *leads* should be *lead*; thus, *Industry and frugality lead* to wealth.]

Temperance and exercise preserves health.

Time and tide waits for no man.

My love and affection towards thee, remains unaltered.

Wealth, honour, and happiness, forsakes the indolent.

My flesh and my heart faileth.

In all his works, there is sprightliness and vigour.

Elizabeth’s meekness and humility was extraordinary.

In unity consists the security and welfare of every society.

High pleasures and luxurious living begets satiety.

Much does human pride and folly require correction.

Our conversation and intercourse with the world, is, in several respects, an education for vice.

Occasional release from toil, and indulgence of ease, is what nature demands, and virtue allows.

What generosity, and what humanity, was then displayed!

What thou desir’st,
And what thou fearest, alike destroys all hope.

Under Note 1.

Wisdom, and not wealth, procure esteem.
Prudence, and not pomp, are the basis of his fame.
Not fear, but labour have overcome him.
His constitution, as well as his fortune, require care.
Their religion, as well as their manners, were ridiculed.
The decency, and not the abstinence, make the difference.
The buyer, as well as the seller, render themselves liable.
Not her beauty, but her talents attracts attention.
It is her talents, and not her beauty, that attracts attention.
It is her beauty, and not her talents, that attract attention.

Under Note 2.

Each day, and each hour, bring their portion of duty.
Every house, and even every cottage, were plundered.
Every thought, every word, and every action, will be
brought into judgement, whether they be good or evil.
The time will come, when no oppressor, no unjust man, will
be able to screen themselves from punishment.

No bandit fierce, no tyrant mad with pride,
No cavern'd hermit, rest self-satisfied.

Under Note 3.

In this affair, perseverance with dexterity were requisite.
Town or country are equally agreeable to me.
Sobriety with humility lead to honour.
The king, with the lords, and the commons, compose the
British parliament.
The man with his whole family are dead.
A small house, in addition to a trifling annuity, are still
granted him.

Under Note 4.

To profess, and to possess, is very different things.
To do justly, to love mercy, and to walk humbly with
God, is duties of universal obligation.
To be round or square, to be solid or fluid, to be large or
small, and to be moved swiftly or slowly, is all equally
alien from the nature of thought.

RULE XII.

When a Verb has two or more singular nominatives connected by *or* or *nor*, it must agree with them in the singular number : as, "Fear *or* jealousy affects him."

Obs.—In the learned languages, a plural verb is often employed with nominatives thus connected ; as,

"Tunc nec mens mihi, nec color

Certa sede manent."—*Horace*.

And the best scholars have sometimes improperly imitated this construction in English ; as,

"He comes—nor want nor cold his course *delay* :

Hide, blushing Glory ! hide Pultowa's day."—*Johnson*.

NOTE I.—When a verb has nominatives of different persons or numbers, connected by *or* or *nor*, it must agree with that which is placed next to it, and be understood to the rest, in the person and number required ; as, "Neither he nor his brothers *were* there."—"Neither you nor I *am* concerned."

NOTE II.—But when the nominatives require different forms of the verb, it is, in general, more elegant to express the verb, or its auxiliary, in connexion with each of them ; as, "Either thou *art* to blame, or I *am*."—"Neither *were* their numbers, nor *was* their destination, known."

NOTE III.—The speaker should generally mention himself last ; as, "Thou or I must go."—"He then addressed his discourse to my father and *me*."

NOTE IV.—Two or more distinct subject phrases connected by *or* or *nor*, require a singular verb ; as, "*That a drunkard should be poor, or that a fop should be ignorant*, is not strange."

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Rule 12.

Ignorance or negligence have caused this mistake.

[Not proper, because the verb *have caused* is of the plural number, and does not correctly agree with its two nominatives, *ignorance* and *negligence*, which are connected by *or*, and taken disjunctively. But, according to Rule 12th, "When a verb has two or more singular nominatives connected by *or* or *nor*, it must agree with them in the singular number." Therefore *have caused* should be *has caused* ; thus, Ignorance or negligence *has caused* this mistake.]

Neither imprudence, credulity, nor vanity, have ever been imputed to him.

What the heart or the imagination dictate, flows readily.

Neither authority nor analogy support thy opinion.

Either ability or inclination were wanting.

Redundant grass or heath afford abundance to their cattle.

The returns of kindness are sweet; and there are neither honour, nor virtue, nor utility, in repelling them.

The sense or drift of a proposition, often depend upon a single letter.

Under Note 1.

Neither he nor you was there.

Either the boys or I were in fault.

Neither he nor I intends to be present.

Neither the captain nor the sailors was saved.

Whether one person or more was concerned in the business, does not yet appear.

Under Note 2.

Are they, or I, expected to be there?

Neither he, nor am I, capable of it.

Either he has been imprudent, or his associates vindictive.

Neither were their riches, nor their influence, great.

Under Note 3.

I and my father were riding out.

The premiums were given to me and George.

I and Jane are invited.

They ought to invite me and my sister.

We dreamed a dream in one night, I and he.

Under Note 4.

To practice tale-bearing, or even to countenance it, are great injustice.

To reveal secrets, or to betray one's friends, are contemptible perfidy.

RULE XIII.

When Verbs are connected by a conjunction, they must either agree in mood, tense, and form, or have

separate nominatives expressed: as, "He himself *held* the plough, *sowed* the grain, and *attended* the reapers." "She *was* proud, but she *is* now humble."

Obs. 1.—From this rule there are many exceptions. We may, without repeating the nominative, connect the cognate tenses of the indicative mood; the corresponding tenses of the indicative and the potential mood; the affirmative and the negative form; or the simple and the compound form. But the simple verb must, in general, be placed first; and the nominative is understood before the latter verb: as,

"What nothing earthly *gives*, or *can destroy*."—*Pope*.

"Some *are*, and *must be* greater than the rest."—*Idem*.

"*Plays* round the head, but *comes not* to the heart."—*Idem*.

"I therein *do rejoice*; yea, and *will rejoice*."—*Phil. i. 18*.

Obs. 2.—Those parts which are common to several verbs, are generally expressed to the first, and understood to the rest: as, "Every sincere endeavour to amend shall be assisted, [*shall be*] accepted, and [*shall be*] rewarded."—"Honourably do the best you can" [*do*].—"He thought as I did" [*think*].—"You have seen it, but I have not" [*seen it*].—"If you will go, I will" [*go*].

NOTE I.—The preterit should not be employed to form the compound tenses, nor should the perfect participle be used for the preterit. Thus: say, "To have *gone*,"—not, "To have *went*;" and, "I *did* it,"—not, "I *done* it."

NOTE II.—Several verbs that resemble each other in form, are frequently confounded; and some others are often misapplied. Care should be taken, to give every word its appropriate form and signification. Thus: say, "He *lay* by the fire,"—not, "He *laid* by the fire."—"He *had entered* into the connexion,"—not, "He *was entered* into the connexion."

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Rule 13.

They would neither go in themselves, nor suffered others to enter.

[Not proper, because the word *suffered*, which is in the indicative mood, is connected without repetition of the nominative, to *would go*, which is in the potential mood. But, according to Rule 13th, "When verbs are connected by a conjunction, they must either agree in mood, tense, and form, or have separate nominatives expressed." Therefore *suffered* should be *would suffer*; (*would* understood;) thus, They would neither go in themselves, nor *suffer* others to enter.]

Doth he not leave the ninety and nine, and goeth into the wilderness to seek that which is lost?

Did he not tell thee his fault, and entreated thee to forgive him?

If he understands the business, and attend to it, he cannot fail of success.

The day is approaching, and hastens upon us, in which we must give an account of our stewardship.

If thou dost not turn unto the Lord, but forget him who remembered thee in thy distress, great will be thy condemnation.

There are a few who have kept their integrity to the Lord, and prefer his truth to all other enjoyments.

This report was current yesterday, and agrees with what we heard before.

Virtue is generally praised, and would be generally practised also, if men were wise.

Under Note 1.

He would have went with us, if we had invited him.

They have chose the part of honour and virtue.

He soon begun to be weary of having nothing to do.

Somebody has broke my slate.

I seen him, when he done it.

Under Note 2.

He was entered into the conspiracy.

The American planters grow cotton and rice.

The report is predicated on truth.

I entered the room and set down.

Go and lay down my son.

With such books, it will always be difficult to learn children to read.

RULE XIV.

Participles relate to nouns or pronouns, or are governed by prepositions: as, "Elizabeth's tutor, at one time *paying* her a visit, found her *employed* in reading Plato."—*Hume*.

Obs.—The word to which the participle relates, is sometimes understood ; as, “Granting this to be true, what is to be inferred from it ?” that is, “*I*, granting this to be true, *ask*, what is to be inferred from it ?”—“The very chin was, [*I*,] modestly speaking, [*say*,] as long as my whole face.”—*Addison*.

NOTE I.—Participles have the same government as the verbs from which they are derived. The preposition *of*, therefore, should not be used after the participle, when the verb does not require it. Thus, in phrases like the following, *of* is improper : “Keeping *of* one day in seven,”—“By preaching *of* repentance,”—“They left beating *of* Paul.”

Obs.—When participles are compounded with something that does not belong to the verb, they become adjectives ; and, as such, they cannot govern an object after them. The following sentence is therefore inaccurate : “When Caius did any thing *unbecoming* his dignity.”—*Jones’s Church History*.

NOTE II.—An imperfect or a compound participle, preceded by an article, an adjective, or a noun or pronoun of the possessive case, becomes a verbal noun ; and, as such, it cannot govern an object after it. A word which may be the object of the participle in its proper construction, requires the preposition *of*, to connect it with the verbal noun : as, 1. (By the participle,) “By exercising the body, health is promoted.” 2. (By the verbal noun,) “By *the* exercising *of* the body, health is promoted.”—Again : 1. (By the participle,) “Much depends on observing this rule.” 2. (By the verbal noun,) “Much depends on *their* observing *of* this rule.”

Obs. 1.—When the use of the preposition produces ambiguity or harshness, the expression must be varied. Thus, the sentence, “He mentions Newton’s writing of a commentary,” is both ambiguous and awkward. If the preposition be omitted, the word *writing* will have a double construction, which is inadmissible. Some would say, “He mentions Newton writing a commentary.” This is still worse. The meaning may be correctly expressed, thus : “He mentions *that* Newton wrote a commentary.”—“By *his* studying the Scriptures, he became wise.” Here *his* serves only to render the sentence incorrect.

Obs. 2.—We sometimes find a participle that takes the same case after as before it, converted into a verbal noun, and the latter word retained unchanged in connexion with it ; as, “I have some recollection of his *father’s* being a judge.”—“To prevent *its* being a dry detail of terms.”—*Buck*. The noun after the verbal, is in apposition with the possessive going before. Nouns that are in apposition with the possessive case, do not require the possessive sign. But the above-mentioned construction is anomalous, and perhaps it would be better to avoid it.

Obs. 3.—The verbal noun should not be accompanied by any adjuncts of the verb or participle, unless they be taken into composition; as, “The hypocrite’s hope is like the *giving-up* of the ghost.” The following phrase is therefore inaccurate: “For the *more easily* reading of large numbers.” Yet, if we say, “For reading large numbers *the more easily*,” the construction is different, and not inaccurate.

NOTE III.—Participles that have become nouns, may be used as such, with or without the article. But we sometimes find those which retain the government and the adjuncts of participles, used as nouns before or after verbs; as, “*Exciting* such disturbances, is unlawful.”—“*Rebellion is rising* against government.” This mungrel construction is liable to ambiguity, and ought to be avoided. The infinitive mood, the verbal or some other noun, or a clause introduced by the conjunction *that*, will generally express the idea in a better manner; as, “*To excite* such disturbances,” or, “*The exciting of* such disturbances,” &c.

Obs.—After verbs signifying *to persevere*, or *to desist*, the participle in *ing*, relating to the nominative, may be used instead of the infinitive connected to the verb; as, “So when they continued *asking* him.”—*John*, viii. 7. Here, *continued* is intransitive, and *asking* relates to *they*. Greek, Ὡς δὲ ἐπέμεινον ἐρωτῶντες αὐτὸν. But in sentences like the following, the participle seems to be improperly made the object of the verb: “I intend *doing* it.”—“I remember *meeting* him.”—Better, “I intend *to do* it.”—“I remember *to have met* him.”

NOTE IV.—A participle construed after the nominative or the objective case, is not equivalent to a verbal noun governing the possessive. There is sometimes a nice distinction to be observed in the application of these two constructions. For the leading word in sense, should not be made the adjunct in construction. The following sentences exhibit a disregard to this principle, and are both inaccurate: “He felt his strength’s declining.”—“He was sensible of his strength declining.” In the former sentence the noun *strength* should be in the objective case, governed by *felt*; and in the latter, in the possessive, governed by *declining*.

NOTE V.—Participles should not be used, even after a preposition, without a clear reference to the proper subject of the being, action, or passion. The following sentence is therefore faulty: “By *giving* way to sin, trouble is encountered.”—It should be, “By *giving* way to sin, *we* encounter trouble.”

NOTE VI.—The preterit of irregular verbs is sometimes improperly used for the perfect participle; as, “A certificate *wrote* on parchment,”—for, “A certificate *written* on parchment.”

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Note 1.

In forming of his sentences, he was very exact.

[Not proper, because the preposition *of* is used after the participle *forming*, whose verb does not require it. But according to Note 1st under Rule 14th, “Participles have the same government as the verbs from which they are derived. The preposition *of*, therefore, should not be used after the participle, when the verb does not require it.” Therefore, *of* should be omitted; thus, In forming his sentences, he was very exact.]

By observing of truth you will command respect.

I could not, for my heart, forbear pitying of him.

I heard them discussing of this subject.

By consulting of the best authors, he became learned.

Here are rules, by observing of which, you may avoid error.

Under Note 2.

Their consent was necessary for the raising any supplies.

Thus the saving a great nation devolved on a husbandman.

It is an overvaluing ourselves, to decide upon every thing.

The teacher does not allow any calling ill names.

That burning the capitol was a wanton outrage.

May nothing hinder our receiving so great a good.

My admitting the fact will not affect the argument.

Cain's killing his brother originated in envy.

Under Note 3.

Cæsar carried off the treasures, which his opponent had neglected taking with him.

It is dangerous playing with edge tools.

I intend returning in a few days.

Suffering needlessly is never a duty.

Nor is it wise complaining.

I well remember telling you so.

Doing good is a Christian's vocation.

Piety is constantly endeavouring to live to God. It is earnestly desiring to do his will, and not our own.

Under Note 4.

There is no harm in women knowing about these things.
 They did not give notice of the pupil leaving.
 The sun's darting his beams through my window, awoke me.
 The maturity of the sago tree is known by the leaves being covered with a delicate white powder.

Under Note 5.

Sailing up the river, the whole town may be seen.
 Being conscious of guilt, death becomes terrible.
 By yielding to temptation, our peace is sacrificed.
 In loving our enemies no man's blood is shed.
 By teaching the young, they are prepared for usefulness.

Under Note 6.

A nail well drove will support a great weight.
 See here a hundred sentences, stole from my work.
 I found the water entirely froze, and the pitcher broke.
 Being forsook by my friends, I had no other resource.

RULE XV.

Adverbs relate to verbs, participles, adjectives, or other adverbs: as, "Any passion that *habitually* discomposes our temper, or unfits us for *properly* discharging the duties of life, has *most certainly* gained a *very* dangerous ascendancy."

OBS. 1.—Adverbs sometimes relate to verbs understood; as, "The former has written correctly; but the latter, *elegantly*."—"And [*I say*] truly, if they had been mindful of that country from whence they came out, they might have had opportunity to have returned."—*Heb. xi. 15.* And in this manner, perhaps, should sentences like the following be explained:

"Say first, of God [*who is*] *above*, or man [*who is*] *below*,
 [From] what can we reason, but from what we know?"—*Pope.*

OBS. 2.—To abbreviate expressions, and give them vivacity, verbs of motion (as *go, come, rise, get, &c.*) are sometimes suppress-

ed, being suggested to the mind by an emphatic adverb ; as,

"I'll *hence* to London on a serious matter."—*Shakespeare*.

"I'll *in*. I'll *in*. Follow your friend's counsel. I'll *in*."—*Idem*.

"*Away*, old man ; give me thy hand ; *away*."—*Idem*.

"Would you youth and beauty stay,

"Love hath wings, and will *away*."—*Waller*.

"*Up, up*, Glentarkin ! rouse thee, ho !"—*Scott*.

NOTE I.—Adverbs must be placed in that position, which will render the sentence the most perspicuous and agreeable.

Obs.—For the placing of adverbs, no definite general rule can be given. Those which relate to adjectives, immediately precede them ; and those which belong to compound verbs, are commonly placed after the auxiliary.

NOTE II.—Adverbs should not be used as adjectives ; nor should they be employed, when *quality* is to be expressed, and not *manner* : as, "The *then* ministry,"—"The *soonest* time,"—"The *above* discourse,"—"Thine *often* infirmities,"—"It seems *strangely*." These are all wrong.

NOTE III.—With a verb of motion, grammarians prefer *hither*, *thither*, and *whither*, to *here*, *there*, and *where*, which are in common use ; as, "Come *hither*, Charles,"—not, "Come *here*."

NOTE IV.—To the adverbs *hence*, *thence*, and *whence*, the proposition *from* is frequently (though not with strict propriety) prefixed.

NOTE V.—The adverb *how* should not be used before the conjunction *that*, nor in stead of it ; as, "He said *how* he would go." Expunge *how*.

NOTE VI.—The adverb *no* should not be used with reference to a verb or a participle. Such expressions as, "Tell me whether you will go or *no*," are therefore improper. *No* should be *not*.

Obs. 1.—The adverb *yes*, expressing a simple affirmation, and the adverb *no*, expressing a simple negation, are always independent. They generally answer a question ; and are equivalent to a repetition of it, in the form of an affirmative or a negative proposition.

Obs. 2.—*No*, when prefixed to a noun, is an adjective, as, "No clouds, *no* vapours intervene."—*Dyer*.

NOTE VII.—A negation, in English, admits but one negative word : as, "I could not wait any longer,"—not, "no longer,"

OBS. 1.—The repetition of a negative word or clause, strengthens the negation; as, “No, no, no.” But two negatives in the same clause, destroy the negation, and render the meaning affirmative; as, “*Nor* did they *not* perceive their evil plight.”—*Milton*. That is, they did perceive it.

OBS. 2.—*Ever* is preferable to *never*, in sentences like the following: “Though he were *ever* so rich, he would not be satisfied.”—“He is mistaken, though *ever* so wise.”

OBS. 3.—By the customary (but faulty) omission of the negative before *but*, that conjunction has acquired the adverbial sense of *only*; and it may, when used with that signification, be called an adverb; as, “All our laughter is *but* pain.”—*Anon*.

“Reason itself *but* gives it edge and power.”—*Pope*.

“Born *but* to die, and reasoning *but* to err.”—*Idem*.

OBS. 4.—We sometimes find adverbs used after the manner of nouns; as, “The Son of Man hath not *where* to lay his head.”—*Matt. viii. 20*. “The Son of God—was not *yea* and *nay*, but in him was *yea*.”—*2 Cor. i. 19*. “An eternal *now* does always last.”—*Cowley*.

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Note 1.

We were received kindly.

[Not proper, because the adverb *kindly* is not in the most suitable place. But, according to Note 1st under the Rule 15th, “Adverbs must be placed in that position, which will render the sentence the most perspicuous and agreeable.” The sentence will be improved by placing *kindly* before *received*; thus, We were kindly received.]

The work will be never completed.

We always should prefer our duty to our pleasure.

It is impossible continually to be at work.

He impertinently behaved to his master.

The heavenly bodies are in motion perpetually.

Not only he found her busy, but pleased and happy even.

Under Note 2.

The above remarks are quoted from memory.

When a substantive is put absolutely.

Such expressions sound harshly.

His after conduct was more satisfactory.

Such events are of seldom occurrence.

Velvet feels very smoothly.

Under Note 3.

Bring him here to me.

I shall go there again in a few days.

Where are they all riding in so great haste?

Under Note 4.

From hence it appears, that the statement is incorrect.

From thence arose the misunderstanding.

Do you know from whence it proceeds?

Under Note 5.

You see how that not many are required.

I knew how that they had heard of his misfortunes.

He remarked, how time was valuable.

Under Note 6.

Know now, whether this be thy son's coat or no.

Whether he is in fault or no, I cannot tell.

I will ascertain whether it is so or no.

Under Note 7.

I will not by no means entertain a spy.

Nobody never invented nor discovered nothing, in no way to be compared with this.

Be honest, nor take no shape nor semblance of disguise.

I did not like neither his temper nor his principles.

Nothing never affected her so much as this misconduct of her son.

RULE XVI.

Conjunctions connect either words or sentences : as, "Let there be no strife, I pray thee, between me *and* thee, *and* between my herdmen *and* thy herdmen; *for* we are brethren."—*Gen.* xiii. 8.

OBS. 1.—Conjunctions that connect particular words, generally join similar parts of speech, in a common dependence on some other term. Those which connect sentences or clauses, commonly unite one to an other, either as an additional affirmation, or as a condition, a cause, or an end.

Obs. 2.—Two or three conjunctions sometimes come together, as, “What rests, *but that* the mortal sentence pass?”—*Milton*.

Obs. 3.—Conjunctions should not be unnecessarily accumulated; as, “*But AND if* that evil servant say in his heart”—*Matt. xxiv. 48*. Greek, Ἐὰν δὲ εἴπῃ ὁ κακὸς δοῦλος ἐκεῖνος, &c.

Obs. 4.—The conjunction *as*, often unites words that are in apposition; as, “He offered *himself* as a journeyman.”

Obs. 5.—*As* frequently has the force of a relative pronoun; as, “Avoid such *as* are vicious.”—“But to as many *as* received him,” &c.—“He then read the conditions, *as follows*.” Here *as* represents a noun, and is the subject of a verb. [See Tooke’s *Diversions of Purley*.] But when a clause or sentence, is the antecedent, it is better to consider *as* a conjunction, and supply the pronoun *it*; as, “He is angry, *as* [it] appears by this letter.”

Obs. 6.—The conjunction *that*, is frequently understood; as, “Thou warnst me [*that*] I have done amiss.”—*Scott*.

Obs. 7.—The conjunction *that*, when it introduces a sentence as the subject of a verb, does not connect it to any other term; as, “*That* mind is not matter, is certain.”

Obs. 8.—When two correspondent conjunctions occur, the former may be parsed as referring to the latter, which is, in general, more properly the connecting word; as, “*Neither* promises *nor* threats availed any thing.”

Obs. 9.—After *than* or *as*, expressing a comparison, there is usually an ellipsis of some word or words. The construction of the words employed, may be known by supplying the ellipsis; as, “She is younger *than* I” [*am*].—“He does nothing, who endeavours to do more *than* [*what*] is allowed to humanity.”—*Johnson*.

NOTE I.—In connecting words, by conjunctions or otherwise, their consistency and adaptation should be carefully observed; and a regular, clear, and correspondent construction, should be preserved throughout. Thus: instead of, “It always *has*, and always will be laudable,” say, “It always *has been*, and it always will be, laudable.”

NOTE II.—The disjunctive conjunctions *lest* and *but*, should not be employed where the copulative *that*, would be more proper; as, “I feared *that* I should be deserted,” not, “*lest* I should be deserted.”

NOTE III.—After *else*, *other*, *rather*, and *all comparatives*, the latter term of comparison, should be introduced by the conjunction *than*; as, “Can there be any *other* *than* this?”—*Harris*.

NOTE IV.—The words in each of the following pairs, are the proper correspondents to each other; and care should be taken, to give them their right place in the sentence:

1. *Though—yet*; as, “*Though* he were dead, *yet* shall he live.”

2. *Whether—or*; as, “*Whether* there be few *or* many.”

3. *Either—or*; as, “He was *either* ashamed *or* afraid.”

4. *Neither—nor*; as, “The Baptist came, *neither* eating bread, *nor* drinking wine.”

5. *Both—and*; as, “I am debtor *both* to the Greeks *and* to the Barbarians.”

6. *Such—as*; as, “An assembly *such as* earth saw never.”

7. *Such—that*; with a finite verb, to express a consequence: as, “My engagements are *such*, *that* I cannot attend.”

8. *As—as*; with an adjective or an adverb, to express equality: as, “The peasant is *as* gay *as* he.”

9. *As—so*; with two verbs, to express equality or proportion: as, “*As* two are to four, *so* are six to twelve.”

10. *So—as*; with an adjective or adverb, to limit its degree by comparison: as, “How can you descend to a thing *so* base *as* falsehood?”—with a negative preceding, to deny equality: as, “No lamb was e’er *so* mild *as* he.”—or, with an infinitive following, to express a consequence: as, “These difficulties were *so* great *as* to discourage him.”

11. *So—that*; with a finite verb following, to express a consequence: as, “He was *so* much injured, *that* he could not walk.”

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Note 1.

The first proposal was essentially different and inferior to the second.

[Not proper, because the preposition *to*, is used with joint reference to the two adjectives *different* and *inferior*, which require different prepositions. But, according to Note 1st under Rule 16th, “In connecting words, by conjunctions or otherwise, their consistency and adaptation should be carefully observed; and a regular, clear, and correspondent construction, should be preserved throughout.” The sentence may be corrected thus; The first proposal was essentially different *from* the second, and inferior *to* it.]

He has made alterations and additions to the work.

He is more bold and active, but not so wise and studious, as his companion.

Sincerity is as valuable, and even more so, than knowledge.

He may be said to have saved the life of a citizen; and, consequently, entitled to the reward.

I always have, and always shall be, of this opinion.

The men had made inquiry for Simon's house, and stood before the gate.

The king of France or England, was to be the umpire.

What is now kept secret shall be hereafter displayed and heard in the clearest light.

We pervert the noble faculty of speech, when we use it to the defaming, or to disquiet our neighbours.

The art of printing being then unknown, was a circumstance, in some respects favourable to the freedom of the pen.

Another passion which the present age is apt to run into, is to make children learn all things.

Be more anxious to acquire knowledge, than of showing it.

It requires few talents to which most men are not born, or, at least, may not acquire.

The court of chancery frequently mitigates and breaks the teeth of the common law.

Under Note 2.

We were apprehensive lest some accident had happened.

I do not deny but he has merit.

Are you afraid lest he will forget you.

These paths and bowers, doubt not but our joint hands

Will keep from wilderness.

Under Note 3.

It was no other but his own father.

Have you no further proof except this?

I expected something more besides this.

He no sooner retires but his heart burns with devotion.

Such literary filching is nothing else but robbery.

Under Note 4.

Neither despise or oppose what you do not understand.

He would not either do it himself nor let me do it.

The majesty of good things is such, as the confines of them are reverend.

Whether he intends to do so, I cannot tell.

Send me such articles only, that are adapted to this market.

As far as I am able to judge, the book is well written.

No errors are so trivial but they deserve correction.

It will improve neither the mind, nor delight the fancy.

The one is equally deserving as the other.

There is no condition so secure as cannot admit of change.

Do you think this is so good as that.

The relations are so obscure as they require much thought.

None is so fierce that dare stir him up.

There was no man so sanguine who did not apprehend some ill consequence.

I must be so candid to own that I do not understand it.

The book is not as well printed as it ought to be.

So still he sat as those who wait,

Till judgement speak the doom of fate.

RULE XVII.

Prepositions show the relations of things: as, "The house was founded *on* a rock."

Obs. 1.—The former term of relation is sometimes understood; as, [*I say*] "In a word, it would entirely defeat my purpose."—"For all shall know me, [*reckoning*] from the least to the greatest."—*Heb.* viii. 11.

Obs. 2.—When a preposition introduces the infinitive, a phrase, or a sentence, which is made the entire subject or predicate of a proposition, it has no antecedent term of relation; as, "*To* be good, is, *to* be happy."—" *To* be reduced to poverty, is a great affliction."—"For an old man *to* be reduced to poverty, is a very great affliction." Dr. Adam remarks, that "*To* is often taken absolutely; as, '*To* confess the truth,'—'*To* proceed.'" But his examples are not appropriate; for what he and many other grammarians call the *infinitive absolute*, evidently depends on something understood.

Obs. 3.—The preposition (as its name implies) precedes the word which it governs. But, in poetry, the preposition is sometimes placed after its object; as,

"Wild Carron's lonely woods *among*."—*Langhorne*.

Obs. 4.—In the familiar style, a preposition governing a relative or an interrogative pronoun, is often separated from its object, and connected with the other term of relation; as, "*Whom* did he speak *to*?" But it is more dignified, and, in general, more graceful,

to place the preposition before the pronoun ; as, “ *To whom did he speak ?* ”

OBS. 5.—Two prepositions sometimes come together ; as,

“ *And from before the lustre of her face.* ”—*Thomson.*

OBS. 6.—Two separate prepositions have sometimes a joint reference to the same noun ; as, “ *He boasted of, and contended for, the privilege.* ” This construction is formal, and scarcely allowable, except in the law style. It is better to say, “ *He boasted of the privilege, and contended for it.* ”

NOTE I.—Prepositions must be employed agreeably to the usage and idiom of the language.

OBS. 1.—The preposition *into*, expresses a relation produced by motion or change ; and *in*, the same relation, without reference to motion : hence, “ *to walk into the garden,* ” and, “ *to walk in the garden,* ” are very different.

OBS. 2.—*Between* is used in reference to two things or parties ; *among* or *amidst*, in reference to a greater number.

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Note 1.

Her sobriety is no derogation to her understanding.

[Not proper, because the relation between *derogation* and *understanding* is not correctly expressed by the preposition *to*. But, according to Note 1st under Rule 17th, “ *Prepositions must be employed agreeably to the usage and idiom of the language.* ” The relation would be better expressed by *from* ; thus, *Her sobriety is no derogation from her understanding.*]

She finds a difficulty of fixing her mind.

This affair did not fall into his cognizance.

He was accused for betraying his trust.

There was no water, and he died for thirst.

I have no occasion of his services.

You may safely confide on him.

I entertain no prejudice to him.

You may rely in what I tell you.

Virtue and vice differ widely with each other.

This remark is founded in truth.

After many toils, we arrived to our journey's end.

I will tell you a story very different to that.

Their conduct is agreeable with their profession.

Excessive pleasures pass from satiety in disgust.

I turned into disgust from the spectacle.

They are gone in the meadow.

Let this be divided between the three.

The shells were broken in pieces.
 The deception has passed among every one.
 They never quarrel among each other.
 Amidst every difficulty, he persevered.
 Let us go above stairs.
 I was at London, when this happened.
 We were detained to home, and disappointed in our walk.
 This originated from mistake.
 The Bridewell is situated to the west of the City-Hall, and
 it has no communication to the other buildings.
 I am disappointed of the work ; it is very inferior from
 what I expected.

RULE XVIII.

Interjections have no dependent construction : as,
 “ *O !* let not thy heart despise me.”

OBS.—When a word, not in the nominative absolute, is connected with an interjection, or used in exclamation, its construction generally depends upon something understood ; as, “ *Ah me !*”—that is, “ *Ah ! pity me.*”

2. GOVERNMENT.

RULE XIX.

A noun or a pronoun in the possessive case, is governed by the name of the thing possessed : as,

“ *Theirs* is the vanity, the learning *thine* ;
 Touch’d by *thy* hand, again *Rome’s* glories shine.”

OBS. 1.—The governing noun is sometimes understood ; as “ *At the alderman’s*” [*house*].—“ *A book of my brother’s*” [*books*].

OBS. 2.—When words in the possessive case are connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood, the governing noun is often expressed after one, and understood after the rest ; as,

“ *Add Nature’s, Custom’s, Reason’s, Passion’s strife.*”—*Pope.*

OBS. 3.—The possessive case is always an adjunct to a noun ; and some grammarians have classed it with the *adjectives*.

NOTE I.—In the use of the possessive case, its appropriate form should be observed.

NOTE II.—When nouns of the possessive case, are connected by conjunctions, or put in apposition, the sign of

possession must always be annexed to such, and such only, as immediately precede the governing noun, expressed or understood; as, "John and Eliza's teacher is a man of more learning than James's, or Andrew's."—"For David my servant's sake."—"Lost in love's and friendship's smile."

OBS. 1.—The apostrophe and *s* are sometimes annexed to that part of a compound name, which is, of itself, in the objective case; as, "The captain-of-the-guard's house."—"The Bard-of-Lomond's lay is done."

OBS. 2.—To avoid a concurrence of hissing sounds, the *s* is sometimes omitted, and the apostrophe only retained; as, "For conscience' sake,"—"Moses' minister,"—"Felix' room,"—"Achilles' wrath." But, in prose, this elision should be sparingly indulged.

Note III.—The relation of property may also be expressed by the preposition *of*; as, "The will *of* man."—for, "man's will." Of these forms, we should adopt that which will render the sentence the most perspicuous and agreeable; and, by the use of both, avoid an unpleasant repetition of either.

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Note 1.

Thy ancestors virtue is not thine.

[Not proper, because the noun *ancestors*, which is intended for the possessive case, has not the appropriate form of that case. But, according to Note 1st under Rule 19th, "In the use of the possessive case, its appropriate form should be observed." An apostrophe is required after *ancestors*; thus, *Thy ancestors' virtue* is not thine.]

Mans chief good is an upright mind.

I will not destroy the city for ten sake.

Moses rod was turned into a serpent.

They are wolves in sheeps clothing.

The tree is known by it's fruit.

This privilege is not their's, any more than it is your's.

Yet he was gentle as soft summer airs,

Had grace for others sins, but none for theirs'.

Under Note 2.

'There is but little difference between the Earth and Venus's diameter.

'This hat is John, or James's.

'The store is opposite to Morris's and Company's.

'This palace had been the grand sultan's Mahomet's.

'This was the Apostle's Paul's advice.

Were Cain's occupation and Abel the same?

Were Cain and Abel's occupation the same?

Were Cain's and Abel's occupations the same?

Were Cain and Abel's parents the same?

Were Cain's parents and Abel the same?

Was Cain's and Abel's father there?

Were Cain's and Abel's parents there?

Thy Maker's will has placed thee here,
A Maker's wise and good.

Under Note 3.

The world's government is not left to chance.

He was Louis the Sixteenth's son's heir.

The throne we honour is the choice of the people.

We met at my brother's partner's house.

An account of the proceedings of the court of Alexander.

Here is a copy of the Constitution of the Society of Teachers of the city of New-York.

RULE XX.

Active-transitive verbs, and their imperfect and compound participles, govern the objective case: as, "I found *her* assisting *him*."—"Having finished the *work*, I submit *it*."

OBS. 1.—The objective case generally follows the governing word: but when it is emphatic, it often precedes the nominative; as, "*Home* he had not."—"This *point* they have gained:" and, in poetry, it is sometimes placed between the nominative and the verb; as, "His daring foe securely *him* defied."—*Milton*. "The broom its yellow *leaf* hath shed."—*Langhorne*. A relative or an interrogative pronoun is commonly placed at the head of its clause; as, "*Whom* will the meeting appoint?"

Obs. 2.—All active-transitive verbs have some *noun* or *pronoun* for their object. Though verbs are often followed by the infinitive mood, or a dependent clause, forming a part of the logical predicate ; yet these terms, being commonly introduced by a connecting particle, do not constitute *such an object* as is contemplated in our definition of a transitive verb. If, in the sentence, “Boys *love* to play,” the verb be transitive ; why not also in, “Boys *like* to play,” “Boys *delight* to play,” “Boys *seem* to play,” “Boys *cease* to play,” and the like ?

Obs. 3.—The word *that*, which is often employed to introduce a clause, is, by some grammarians, considered as a pronoun, representing the clause which follows it. And their opinion seems to be warranted both by the origin and the general import of the particle. But, in conformity to general custom, and to his own views of the practical purposes of grammatical analysis, the author has ranked it with the conjunctions. And he thinks it better, to call those verbs intransitive, which are followed by *that*, and a dependent clause, than to supply the very frequent ellipses which the other explanation supposes. To explain it as a conjunction, *connecting an active-transitive verb and its object*, (as several respectable grammarians do,) appears to involve some inconsistency.

Obs. 4.—Verbs of *declaring*, of *making*, and of *naming*, are often followed by two objectives in apposition : as, “Thy saints proclaim *thee king*.”—“The Author of my being formed *me man*.”—“And God called the *firmament Heaven*.”

Obs. 5.—When a verb is followed by two words in the objective case, which are not in apposition, nor connected by a conjunction, one of them is governed by a preposition understood ; as, “I paid [to] *him* the money.”—“They offered [to] *me* a seat.”—“He asked [of] *them* the question.”

Obs. 6.—In expressing such sentences passively, the object of the preposition is sometimes erroneously assumed for the nominative ; as, “*He* was paid the money,” instead of, “The money was paid [to] *him*.”

NOTE I.—Those verbs and participles which require a regimen, should not be employed without it ; as, “She *affects* [kindness], in order to *ingratiate* [herself] with you.”—“I will not *allow* of it.” Expunge *of*.

NOTE II.—Those verbs and participles which do not admit a regimen, should not be used transitively ; as, “The planters *grow* cotton.” Say *raise*, or *cultivate*.

Obs.—Some verbs will govern a kindred noun, or its pronoun, but no other ; as, “He *lived* a virtuous life.”—“Hear, I pray you, this *dream* which I have dreamed.”

NOTE III.—The passive verb should always take for its subject the direct object of the active-transitive verb from which it is derived ; as, “This *privilege* was denied me,”—not, “*I* was denied this privilege.”

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Rule 20.

She I shall more readily forgive.

[Not proper, because the pronoun *she*, which is the object of the active-transitive verb *shall forgive*, is in the nominative case. But, according to Rule 20th, "Active-transitive verbs, and their imperfect and compound participles, govern the objective case." Therefore, *she* should be *her*; thus, *Her* I shall more readily forgive.]

Thou only have I chosen.

Who shall we send on this errand ?

My father allowed my brother and I to accompany him.

He that is idle and mischievous, reprove sharply.

Who should I meet but my old friend!

How long will it take ye to do it ?

He accosts whoever he meets.

Whosoever the court favours, is safe.

They that honour me I will honour.

Who do you think I saw the other day ?

Under Note 1.

The ambitious are always seeking to aggrandize.

I must premise with three circumstances.

This society does not allow of personal reflections.

False accusation cannot diminish from real merit.

His servants ye are to whom ye obey.

Under Note 2.

Good keeping thrives the herd.

We endeavoured to agree the parties.

Being weary, he sat him down.

Go, flee thee away into the land of Judah.

The popular lords did not fail to enlarge themselves on the subject.

Under Note 3.

They were refused the benefit of their recantation.

Believers are not promised temporal riches.

We were shewn several beautiful pictures.

But, unfortunately, I was denied the favour.

You were paid a high compliment.

I have never been asked the question.

RULE XXI.

Active-intransitive, passive, and neuter verbs, and their participles, take the same case after as before them, when both words refer to the same thing : as, "*He returned a friend, who came a foe.*"—"The child was named *John.*"—"It could not be *he.*"

OBS. 1.—This is, perhaps, more properly a rule of agreement ; the word which follows the verb or participle, may be said to be in apposition with that which precedes it. [See Rule III.]

OBS. 2.—In interrogative sentences, the terms are usually transposed, or both are placed after the verb ; as,

"Whence, and *what art thou*, execrable shape?"—*Milton.*

"Art *thou* that traitor *angel*? art *thou he*?"—*Idem.*

OBS. 3.—In some peculiar constructions, both words naturally come before the verb ; as, "I know not *who she* is." And they are sometimes placed in this manner by transposition ; as, "Yet *He it* is."—*Young.*

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Rule 21.

We did not know that it was him.

[Not proper, because the pronoun *him*, which follows the neuter verb *was*, is in the objective case, and does not agree with the pronoun *it*, which precedes the verb, in the nominative ; both words referring to the same thing. But, according to Rule 21st, "Active-intransitive, passive, and neuter verbs, take the same case after as before them, when both words refer to the same thing." Therefore, *him* should be *he* ; thus, We did not know that it was *he.*]

We thought it was thee.

I would act the same part, if I were him.

It could not have been her.

It is not me, that he is angry with.

They believed it to be I.

It was thought to be him.

If it had been her, she would have told us.

We know it to be they.

Whom do you think it is ?

Who do you suppose it to be ?

We did not know whom they were.

Thou art him whom they described.

Impossible ! it can't be me.

Whom did he think you were ?

Whom say ye that I am ?

RULE XXII.

Prepositions govern the objective case : as,

“ Truth and good are one :
And beauty dwells *in them*, and they *in her*,
With like participation.”—*Akenside*.

OBS. 1.—Most of the prepositions may take the imperfect participle for their object ; and some, the compound : as, “ *On opening the trial, they accused him of having defrauded them.*”

OBS. 2.—Prepositions are sometimes elliptically construed with adjectives : as, *in vain, in secret, at first, on high* ; i. e. *in a vain manner, in secret places, at the first time, on high places*. Such phrases imply time, place, degree, or manner, and are equivalent to adverbs.

OBS. 3.—In a few instances prepositions precede adverbs ; as, *at once, from above*.

OBS. 4.—When nouns of *time* or *measure* are connected with verbs or adjectives, the prepositions which govern them, are generally suppressed : as, “ We rode sixty miles that day ;” that is, “ *through sixty miles on that day.*”—“ The wall is ten feet high ;” that is, “ *high to ten feet.*” Such expressions as, “ A board of six feet long,”—“ A boy of twelve years old,” are wrong. Strike out *of* ; or say, “ A board of six feet *in length*,”—“ A boy of twelve years *of age*.”

OBS. 5.—After the adjectives *like* and *near*, the preposition *to* or *unto* is generally understood ; as, “ It is like [*to* or *unto*] silver.”—“ Near [*to*] yonder copse.” As similarity and proximity are *relations*, and not *qualities*, it might seem proper to call *like* and *near* prepositions. But grammarians have not so classed them ; for the preposition *to* or *unto* is sometimes expressed after them, and the words which usually stand for them in the learned languages, are clearly adjectives. *Like*, when it expresses similarity of *manner*, and *near*, when it expresses proximity of *degree*, are adverbs.

OBS. 6.—The adjective *worth* is followed by the objective case, governed, perhaps, by *of* understood ; as, “ The book is *worth* a dollar.” Some suppose that *worth* in this construction is a noun, and that there is a double ellipsis of the preposition ; as, “ The book is [*of the*] *worth* [*of*] a dollar.” After the kindred adjective *worthy*, *of* should be expressed ; as, “ It is *worthy of* remark.”

OBS. 7.—*Worth* was anciently a verb, signifying *be*, and used in every part of the conjugation. [See *Diversions of Purley*, Vol. I. p. 178.] Some traces of this usage are found in modern writings ; as, “

“ Wo *worth* the chase, wo *worth* the day,
That cost thy life, my gallant gray!”—*Scott*.

Here *worth* is a verb, and *to* is understood after it ; the meaning being, “ Wo *be to* the chase,” &c.

OBS. 8.—After verbs of *giving, procuring*, and some others, there is usually an ellipsis of *to* or *for* before the objective of the person ; as, “ Give [*to*] him water to drink.”—“ Buy [*for*] me a knife.”

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Rule 22.

It rests with thou and me to decide.

[Not proper, because the pronoun *thou* is in the nominative case, and is governed by the preposition *with*. But, according to Rule 22d, "Prepositions govern the objective case." Therefore, *thou* should be *thee*; thus, It rests with *thee* and me to decide.]

Let that remain a secret between you and I.

I lent the book to some one, I know not who.

Let no quarrel occur among ye.

Who did he inquire for? Thou.

From he that is needy turn not away.

We are all accountable, each for his own act's.

Does that boy know who he is speaking to.

I bestow my favours on whosoever I will.

RULE XXIII.

The preposition *to* governs the infinitive mood, and commonly connects it to a finite verb: as, "I desire *to learn*."

Obs. 1.—No word is more variously explained by grammarians, than this word *to*, which is prefixed to the verb in the infinitive mood. *Johnson, Walker, Scott*, and other lexicographers, call it an *adverb*; but, in explaining its use, they say it denotes certain *relations*, which it is not the office of an *adverb* to express. [See *Johnson's Dictionary*, 4to.] *Lowth, Murray, Comly*, and others, call it a *preposition*; and some of these ascribe to it the *government* of the verb, and others do not. *Lowth* says, "The *preposition* *to* placed before the verb, *makes* the infinitive mood." *Skinner*, in his *Canones Etymologici*, calls it an *equivocal article*. *Horne Tooke*, who shows that most of our conjunctions and prepositions may be traced back to ancient verbs and nouns, says that *to* has the same origin as *do*, and he seems to consider it an *auxiliary verb*. Many are content to call it a *prefix*, a *particle*, a *sign of the infinitive*, &c. without telling us *why* or *how* it is so, or to *what part of speech* it belongs. If it be a *part of the infinitive*, it must be classed with the auxiliaries. We have chosen that explanation which we consider to be the most correct and the most simple.

Obs. 2.—Most grammarians have considered the word *to*, as a part of the infinitive; and have referred the government of this mood to a preceding verb. But the rule which they give, is partial and often inapplicable; and their exceptions to it are numerous and puzzling. They teach that at least half the different parts of

speech frequently govern the infinitive : if so, there should be a distinct rule for each ; for why should the government of one part of speech be made an exception to that of an other ? and, if this be done, with respect to the infinitive, why not also with respect to the objective case ? In all cases to which their rule is applicable, the rule here given amounts to the same thing ; and it obviates the necessity for their numerous exceptions, and the embarrassment arising from the constructions of the infinitive not noticed in them.

OBS. 3.—The infinitive thus admits a simpler solution in *English*, than in most other languages. In *French*, the infinitive, though frequently placed in immediate dependence on an other verb, may also be governed by several different prepositions, (as *à, de, pour, sans,*) according to the sense. In *Latin*, the infinitive is, for the most part, dependent on an other verb. But, according to the grammars, it may stand for a noun in all the six cases ; and many have called it an *indeclinable noun*. See the *Port Royal Latin Grammar* ; in which many constructions of the infinitive, are referred to the government of a *preposition* understood.

OBS. 4.—Though the infinitive is commonly made an adjunct to some finite verb, yet it may be joined to almost all the other parts of speech, or to an other infinitive : as,

1. To a *noun* ; as, " He had leave to go."
2. To an *adjective* ; as, " We were anxious to see you."
3. To a *pronoun* ; as, " I discovered him to be a scholar."
4. To a *verb in the infinitive* ; as, " To cease to do evil."
5. To a *participle* ; as, " Endeavouring to escape, he fell."
6. To an *adverb* ; as, " She is old enough to go to school."
7. To a *conjunction* ; as, " He knows better than to trust you."
8. To a *preposition* ; as, " I was about to write."
9. To an *interjection* ; (by ellipsis ;) as, " O to forget her !"

OBS. 5.—The infinitive is the mere verb, without affirmation ; and, in some respects, resembles a noun. It may stand for—

1. A *subject* ; as, " To steal is sinful."
2. A *predicate* ; as, " To enjoy is to obey."
3. A *purpose*, or an *end* ; as, " He's gone to do it."
4. An *employment* ; as, " He loves to ride."
5. A *cause* ; as, " I rejoice to hear it."
6. A *coming event* ; as, " A structure, soon to fall."
7. A *term of comparison* ; as, " He was so much affected as to weep."

OBS. 6. Anciently, the infinitive was sometimes preceded by *for* as well as *to* ; as, " I went up to Jerusalem *for to* worship"—*Acts*, xxiv. 11.

—————" Learn skilfullie how
" Each grain *for to* laie by itself on a mow."—*Tusser*.

Modern usage rejects the former preposition.

OBS. 7.—The infinitive sometimes depends on a verb understood ; as, " To be candid with you, [*I confess*] I was in fault."

OBS. 8.—The infinitive, or a phrase of which the infinitive is a

part, being introduced apparently as the subject of a verb, but superseded by some other word, is put absolute ; as,

“ *To be, or not to be—that is the question.*”—*Shakspeare.*

Obs. 9.—The infinitive of the verb *be*, is often understood ; as, “ I suppose it [*to be*] necessary.”

Obs. 10.—The infinitive usually follows the word on which it depends ; but this order is sometimes reversed : as,

“ *To catch your vivid scenes, too gross her hand.*”—*Thomson.*

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Rule 23.

Ought these things be tolerated ?

[Not proper, because the infinitive *be tolerated*, is not preceded by the preposition *to*. But, according to Rule 23d, “ The preposition *to* governs the infinitive mood, and commonly connects it to a finite verb.” *To* should be inserted ; thus, Ought these things *to be tolerated* ?]

Please excuse my son’s absence.

Cause every man go out from me.

Forbid them enter the garden.

Do you not perceive it move.

Allow other’s discover your merit.

He was seen go in at that gate.

Permit me pass this way.

RULE XXIV.

The active verbs *bid, dare, feel, hear, let, make, need, see*, and their participles, take the infinitive after them, without the preposition *to* : as, “ If he bade thee *depart*, how darest thou *stay* ?”

Obs. 1. The preposition is always employed after the passive form of these verbs, and, in some instances, after the active ; as, “ He was heard *to say*.”—“ I cannot see *to do it*.”—“ What would dare *to molest* him who might call, on every side, to thousands enriched by his bounty ?”—*Johnson.*

Obs. 2.—The auxiliary *be* of the passive infinitive is also suppressed, after *feel, hear, make, and see* ; as, “ I heard the letter *read*,”—not, “ *be read*.”

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Rule 24.

They need not to call upon her.

[Not proper, because the preposition *to* is inserted before *call*, which follows the active verb *need*. But, according to Rule 24th, "The active verbs *bid, dare, feel, hear, let, make, need, see,* and their participles, take the infinitive after them, without the preposition *to*." Therefore, *to* should be omitted; thus, They need not call upon her.]

I felt a chilling sensation to creep over me.

I have heard him to mention the subject.

Bid the boys to come in immediately.

I dare to say he has not got home yet.

Let no rash promise to be made.

We sometimes see bad men to be honoured.

A good reader will make himself to be distinctly heard.

RULE XXV.

A noun or a pronoun is put absolute in the nominative, when its case depends on no other word: as, "*He failing, who shall meet success?*"—"Your fathers, where are they? and the prophets, do they live forever?"—*Zech. i. 5.*

"*This said, he form'd thee, Adam! thee, O man! Dust of the ground.*"—*Milton.*

Obs. 1.—A noun or a pronoun is put absolute in the nominative, under the following four circumstances:

1. When, with a participle, it is used to express a cause, or a concomitant fact; as,—"Thou looking on,

Shame to be overcome or overreach'd,

Would utmost vigour raise."—*Milton.*

2. When it is used simply as a term of address; as, "At length, *Seged*, reflect and be wise." All nouns in the second person, are put absolute.

3. When, for the sake of emphasis, it is abruptly introduced by pleonasm; as, "*He* that is in the city, famine and pestilence shall devour him."—"Gad, a troop shall overcome him."—"The south and the north, thou hast created them."—*Bible.*

4. When it is used as a mere exclamation, without address, and

without other words expressed or implied to give it construction; as,
 "Oh! deep enchanting *prelude* to repose!"—*Campbell*.

OBS. 2.—The nominative put absolute with a participle, is equivalent to a dependent clause commencing with *when, while, if, since, or because*; as, "I being a child,"—equal to, "When I was a child."

OBS. 3.—The participle *being* is often understood after nouns or pronouns put absolute; as,

"Alike in ignorance, his reason [—] such,
 Whether he thinks too little or too much."—*Pope*.

OBS. 4.—All nouns preceded by an article, are in the third person; and, in exclamatory phrases, such nouns sometimes appear to have no determinable construction: as, "O *the depth* of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God!"—*Rom. xi. 33*.

OBS. 5.—The case of nouns used in exclamations, or in mottoes and abbreviated sayings, often depends, or may be conceived to depend, on something understood; and when their construction can be satisfactorily explained on the principle of ellipsis, they are not put absolute. The following examples may perhaps be resolved in this manner, though the expressions will lose much of their vivacity: "A horse! a horse! my kingdom for a horse!"—"Heaps upon heaps"—"Skin for skin"—"An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth"—"Day after day"—"World without end."

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Rule 25.

Him having ended his discourse, the assembly dispersed.

[Not proper, because the pronoun *him*, whose case depends on no other word, is in the objective case. But, according to Rule 25th, "A noun or a pronoun is put absolute in the nominative, when its case depends on no other word." Therefore *him* should be *he*; thus, *He* having ended his discourse, the assembly dispersed.]

Me being young, they deceived me.

Them refusing to comply, I withdrew.

Thee being present, he would not tell what he knew.

The child is lost; and me, whither shall I go?

Her quick relapsing to her former state,
 With boding fears approach the serving train.

There all thy gifts and graces we display,
 Thee, only thee, directing all our way.

RULE XXVI.

A future contingency is best expressed by a verb in the Subjunctive present; and a mere supposition,

with indefinite time, by a verb in the Subjunctive imperfect : but a conditional circumstance assumed as a fact, requires the Indicative Mood: as, "If thou *for-sake* him, he will cast thee off forever."—"If it *were* not so, I would have told you."—"If thou *went*, nothing would be gained."—"Though he *is* poor, he is contented."

NOTE I.—In connecting words that express time, the order and fitness of time, should be observed. Thus: in stead of, "I *have seen* him *last week*," say, "I *saw* him *last week*;" and in stead of, "I *saw* him *this week*," say, "I *have seen* him *this week*."

NOTE II.—Verbs of *commanding*, *desiring*, *expecting*, *hoping*, *intending*, *permitting*, and some others, in all their tenses, refer to actions or events, relatively present or future. One should therefore say, "I *hoped* you *would come*,"—not, "*would have come*;" and, "I *intended to do it*,"—not, "*to have done it*."

NOTE III.—Propositions that are at all times equally true, should generally be expressed in the present tense; as, "He *seemed* hardly to know, that two and two *make* four,"—not, "*made*."

FALSE SYNTAX.

Examples under Rule 26.

He will not be pardoned, unless he repents.

[Not proper, because the verb *repents*, which is used to express a future contingency, is in the indicative mood. But, according to the first clause of Rule 26th, "A future contingency is best expressed by a verb in the subjunctive present." Therefore, *repents* should be *repent*; thus, He will not be pardoned, unless he *repent*.]

He will maintain his cause, though he loses his estate.

They will fine thee, unless thou offerst an excuse.

I shall walk out in the afternoon, unless it rains.

Let him take heed lest he falls.

On condition that he comes, I consent to stay.

If he is but discreet, he will succeed.

Take heed that thou speakest not to Jacob.

If thou castest me off, I shall be miserable.

Send them to me, if thou pleasest.

And so would I, if I was he.

[Not proper, because the verb *was*, which is used to express a mere supposition, with indefinite time, is in the indicative mood. But, according to the second clause of Rule 26th, "A mere supposition, with indefinite time, is best expressed by a verb in the subjunctive imperfect." Therefore, *was* should be *were*; thus, And so would I, if I *were* he.]

If I was to write, he would not regard it.

If thou feltest as I do, we should soon decide.

Though thou sheddest thy blood in the cause, it would but prove thee sincerely a fool.

If thou lovedst him, there would be more evidence of it.

I believed, whatever was the issue, all would be well.

If love was never feigned, it would appear to be scarce.

There fell from his eyes, as it had been scales.

If he was an impostor, he must have been detected.

Was death denied, e'en fools would wish to die.

Was I as wealthy as a south-sea dream,

Wishing is an expedient to be poor.

If he know the way, he does not need a guide.

[Not proper, because the verb *know*, which is used to express a conditional circumstance assumed as a fact, is in the subjunctive mood. But, according to the last clause of Rule 26th, "A conditional circumstance assumed as a fact, requires the indicative mood." Therefore, *know* should be *knows*; thus, If he *knows* the way, he does not need a guide.]

Though he seem to be artless, he has deceived us.

If he think as he speaks, he may safely be trusted.

Though this event be strange, it certainly did happen.

If thou love tranquillity of mind, seek it not abroad.

If seasons of idleness be dangerous, what must a continued habit of it prove?

Though he were a son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered.

I knew thou wert not slow to hear.

Under Note 1.

The work has been finished last week.

He was out of employment this fortnight.

This mode of expression has been formerly in use.

I should be much obliged to him, if he will attend to it.

I will pay the vows which my lips have uttered when I was in trouble.

I have compassion on the multitude, because they continue with me now three days.
 I thought, by the accent, that he had been speaking to his child.
 And he that was dead, sat up and began to speak.
 Thou hast borne, and hast patience, and for my name's sake hast laboured, and hast not fainted.
 Ye will not come unto me that ye might have life.
 At the end of this quarter, I shall be at this school two years.
 We have done no more than it was our duty to have done.

Under Note 2.

We expected that he would have arrived last night.
 Our friends intended to have met us.
 We hoped to have seen you.
 He would not have been allowed to have entered.

Under Note 3.

The doctor affirmed, that fever always produced thirst.
 The ancients asserted, that virtue was its own reward.

PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES OF FALSE SYNTAX.

There is a spirit in man; and the inspiration of the Almighty giveth them understanding.
 My people doth not consider.
 I have never heard who they invited.
 Then hasten thy return; for, thee away,
 Nor lustre has the sun, nor joy the day.
 I am as well as when you was here.
 That elderly man, he that came in late, I suppose to be the superintendent.
 All the virtues of mankind are to be counted upon a few fingers; but his follies and vices are innumerable.
 It must indeed be confessed, that a lampoon or a satire do not carry in them robbery or murder.
 There was more persons than one engaged in this affair.
 A man who lacks ceremony, has need for great merit.
 A wise man avoids the showing any excellence in trifles.
 The most important and first female quality is sweetness of temper.
 We choose rather lead than follow.

Ignorance is the mother of fear, as well as admiration.
He must fear many, who many fear.
Every one partake of honour bestowed on the worthy.
The king nor the queen were not at all deceived.
Was there no difference, there would be no choice.
I had rather have been informed.
Must thee return this evening?
Life and death is in the power of the tongue.
I saw a person that I took to be she.
Let him be whom he may, I shall not stop.
This is certainly an useful invention.
'It is no more but justice,' quoth the farmer.
Great improvements has been made.
It is undoubtedly true what I have heard.
The nation is torn by feuds which threaten their ruin.
The account of these transactions were incorrect.
Godliness with contentment, are great gain.
The number of sufferers have not been ascertained.
There are one or more of them yet in confinement.
They have chose the wisest part.
He spent his whole life in doing of good.
They know scarcely that temperance is a virtue.
I am afraid lest I have laboured in vain.
Mischief to itself doth back recoil.
This construction sounds rather harshly.
What is the cause of the leaves curling?
Was it thee, that made the noise?
Let thy flock clothe upon the naked.
Wisdom and knowledge is granted unto thee.
His conduct was surprising strange.
'This woman taught my brother and I to read.
Let your promises be such that you can perform.
We shall sell them in the state they now are.
We may add this observation, however.
This came in fashion when I was young.
I did not use the leaves, but root, of the plant.
We have used every mean in our power.
Pass ye away, thou inhabitant of Saphir.—*Micah*, i. 11.
Give every syllable and every letter their proper sound.
To know exactly how much mischief may be ventured
on with impunity, are knowledge enough for some folks.

Every leaf, and every twig teem with life.

I was rejoiced at this intelligence.

At this stage of advancement, there is little difficulty in the pupil's understanding the passive and neuter verbs.

I was afraid that I should have lost the parcel.

Which of all these patterns is the prettier ?

They which despise instruction, shall not be wise.

Both thou and thy advisers have mistaken their interest.

A idle soul shall suffer hunger.

The lips of knowledge is a precious jewel.

I and my cousin are requested to attend.

Can only say, that such is my belief.

This is different from the conscience being made to feel.

Here is ground for their leaving the world with peace.

Where are you all running so fast ?

A man is the noblest work of creation.

Of all other crimes this is the most atrocious.

The tribes whom I visited, are partially civilized.

From hence I conclude, they are in error.

The girls' books are neater than the boys.

I intended to have transcribed it.

Shall a character made up of the very worst passions, pass under the name of a gentleman ?

Rhoda ran in, and told how Peter stood before the gate.

What is latitude and longitude ?

Cicero was more eloquent than any Roman.

Who dares apologize for Pizarro ?—who is but an other name for rapacity !

Tell me whether you will do it or no.

After the most strictest sect of our religion, I lived a Pharisee.

I know not who it was who did it.

Doubt not, little though there be,

But I'll cast a crumb to thee.

This rule is the best which can be given.

I have never seen no other way.

These are poor amends for the men and treasures which we have lost.

Dost thou know them boys ?

This is part of my uncle's father's estate.

Many people never learn to speak correct.

Some people are rash, and others timid : those apprehend too much, these too little.

Is it lawful for us to give tribute to Cæsar or no ?
Give no more trouble than you can possibly help.
I no sooner saw my face in it, but I was startled at the shortness of it.
Every person is answerable for their own conduct.
They are men that scorn a mean action, and who will exert themselves to serve you.
I do not recollect ever having paid it.
The stoics taught that all crimes were equal.
Every one of these theories are now exploded.
Either of these four will answer.
There is no situation where he would be happy.
The boy has been detected in stealing, that you thought so clever.
I will meet thee there, if thee please.
He is not so sick, but what he can laugh.
These clothes does not fit me.
The audience was all very attentive.
Was the master, or any of the scholars in the room ?
His father's and mother's consent was asked.
Whom is he supposed to be ?
He is an old venerable man.
It was then my purpose to have visited Sicily.
It is to the learner only, and he that is in doubt, that this assistance is recommended.
There are not the least hope of his recovery.
Anger and impatience is always unreasonable.
In his letters, there are not only correctness, but elegance.
Opportunity to do good is the highest preferment which a noble mind desires.
The year when he died is not mentioned.
Had I knew it, I should not have went.
Was it thee that spoke to me ?
The house is situated pleasantly.
He did it as private as he possibly could.
Subduing our passions is the noblest of conquests.
James is more diligent than thee.
Rain is seldom or ever seen at Lima.
He appears to be diffident excessively.
The number of our days are with thee.
Like a father pitieth his children, so the Lord pitieth them that fear him.

The circumstances of this case, is different.

Well for us, if some such other men should rise !

A man that is young in years, may be old in hours, if he have lost no time.

The chief captain, fearing lest Paul should have been pulled in pieces of them, commanded the soldiers to go down, and to take him by force from among them.

That brother should not war with brother,
And worry and devour each other.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING,

(CHAPTER VIII.)

*In which are exemplified nearly all the Observations
under the Rules of Syntax and the Notes.*

LESSON I.

The philosopher, the saint, or the hero—the wise, the good, or the great man, very often lies hid and concealed in a plebeian, *which* a proper education might have disinterred and brought to light.—*Addison*.

The darker the ignorance, *the* more praise to the sage who dispels it;—*the* deeper the prejudice, [*the*] more fame to the courage which braves it.—*A Few Days in Athens*.

The approbation of our familiars, who are with us in our secret hours, hear our private converse, know the habits of our lives, and the bent of our dispositions, ought to be far more triumphant and pleasing to us than the *shouts* of a multitude.—*Idem*.

Ah ! my sons, here is indeed a pain, a *pain* that cuts into the soul.—*He who* feels not the loss, hath never felt the possession —See the price of a friend in the duties we render *him*, and the *sacrifices* we make to him, and which, in making, we count not *sacrifices*, but *pleasures* !—O ! what a treasure is *that* for which we do so much ! And is *it* forbidden *us* to mourn its loss ? If *it be*, the power is not with us to obey.—*Idem*.

Were our body never subject to sickness, we might be insensible to the joy of health. *Were* our friendship not threatened with interruption, it might want much of its tenderness.—*Idem*.

The Muses Fortune's fickle smile deride,
Nor ever bow *the* knee to Mammon's fane.—*Beattie*.

The happier *reign*, *the* sooner it begins ;
Reign then ; what canst thou better do the while ?—*Milton*.

LESSON II.

The long-suffering of God waited in the days of Noah, while the ark was *a* preparing.—1. *Pet.* iii. 20.

Mercy and truth are met together ; righteousness and peace have kissed *each other*.—*Ps.* lxxxv. 10.

In vain do they worship me, teaching for doctrines the commandments of men.—*Mat.* xv. 9.

Knowest thou not this *of old*, since man was placed up on the earth, that the *triumphing* of the *wicked* is short, and the joy of the hypocrite *but* for a moment ?—*Job.* xx. 4, 5.

They shall *every man* turn to his own people, and flee *every one* into his own land.—*Isaiah.* xiii. 14.

Wherefore ye needs must be subject, not only for wrath, but also for *conscience'* sake.—*Rom.* xiii. 5.

But Peter continued *knocking* ; and when they *had opened* the door, and *saw* him, they were astonished.—*Acts.* xii. 16.

Ye have heard that it hath been said, 'An *eye* for an eye, and a *tooth* for a tooth.'—*Mat.* v. 35.

For now I see through a glass, darkly ; but then, *face* to face : now I know in part ; but then shall I know even as also I am known.—1 *Cor.* xiii. 12.

Every man should let his man-servant, and every man his maid-servant, being *an* Hebrew or *an* Hebrewess, go free ; that none should serve himself of them, *to wit*, of a Jew his brother.—*Jer.* xxxiv. 9.

Then the *king of Babylon's* army besieged Jerusalem : and Jeremiah the prophet was shut up in the court of the prison which was in the *king of Judah's* house.—*Jer.* xxxii. 2.

I Tertius, who wrote this epistle, salute you in the Lord.—Rom. xvi. 22.

And this is the record of John, when the Jews sent priests and Levites from Jerusalem to ask him, '*Who art thou?*' And he confessed, and denied not; but confessed, '*I am not the Christ.*' And they asked him, '*What then? art thou Elias?*' and he saith, '*I am not.*'—'*Art thou that prophet?*' and he answered, '*No.*'—*John i. 19.*

The new moons and sabbaths, the *calling* of assemblies, I cannot *away* with: it is iniquity, even the solemn *meeting*.—*Isaiah i. 13.*

Each moss, each shell, each crawling insect *holds*
A rank important in the plan of Him
Who fram'd this scale of being.

LESSON III.

The rudiments of every language, therefore, must be given *as a task*, not *as an amusement*.—*Goldsmith.*

Time we ought to consider *as a sacred trust* committed to us by God, *of* which we are now the depositaries, and [*of* which] we are to render an account *at the last*.—*Blair.*

Thus justice, properly *speaking* is the only virtue; and all the rest have their origin in it.—*Goldsmith.*

True generosity is a duty, as indispensably necessary as *those* [which are] imposed upon us by law.—*Idem.*

To teach men to be orators, is *little less* than to teach them to be poets.—*Idem.*

Lysippus is told that his banker asks a debt of forty pounds, and that a distressed acquaintance petitions for the same sum. He gives it, without hesitating, to the latter; for he demands *as a favour* what the former requires *as a debt*.—*Idem.*

'That I know not what I want,' said the prince, *is* 'the cause of my complaint; if I had any known want, I should have a certain wish; that wish would excite endeavour; and I should not then repine to see the sun move so slowly towards the western mountain, or *lament* when the day breaks, and sleep will no longer hide me from myself.'—*Johnson.*

'My friends,' said he, 'I have seriously considered our manners and our prospects; and [I] find that we have mis-

taken our own interest. Let us, therefore, stop, while *to stop* is in our power?—They staid awhile in silence *one* upon another, and *at last* drove him away by a general chorus of continued laughter.—*Idem*.

The laws of eastern hospitality allowed them to enter, and the master welcomed them, *like a man* liberal and wealthy. He was skilful enough in appearances soon *to discern* that they were *no* common guests, and spread his table with magnificence.—*Idem*.

The *year before*, he had so used the matter, that, *what* by force, *what* by policy, he had taken from the Christians above thirty small castles.—*Knolles*.

The *tear* that gathered in his eye,
He left the mountain *breeze* to dry.—*Scott*.

LESSON IV.

‘Knowledge,’ said the *Master*, ‘is the best riches that man can possess. But he often pursues it, as he does happiness, without finding it; or, *at best*, obtains of it *but* an imperfect glimpse. It is not that the road to it is either *dark* or *difficult*, but that he takes a wrong one; or, if he enters on *the right*, he does so, *unprepared* for the journey. Now, he thinks knowledge one with erudition; and, shutting himself up in his closet, he cons *all the* lore of antiquity; he fathoms the sciences, heaps up in his memory *all the* sayings of *the dead*, and, reckoning the value of his acquisitions by the measure of the time and labour he has expended on them, he is satisfied that he has reached his end. But, alas! learning is not wisdom, *nor will books* give understanding. Again, he takes a more inviting road: he rushes into the crowd; he rolls down the stream of pleasure; he courts the breath of popularity; he unravels or weaves the riddles of intrigue; he humours the passions of his fellows; and rises to name and power. Then, laughing at the credulity, ignorance, and vice, he has set his throne upon, he says, that *to know the world*, is the only knowledge, and *to see to dupe it*, is, *to be wise*. Yet, knowledge of the world is not knowledge of man, and *to triumph in the passions of others*, is not, *to triumph over our own*. No, my sons, that only is real, is sterling knowledge, which goes to make us better and hap-

pier *men*, and which fits us to assist the virtue and happiness of others. All learning is useful, all the sciences are curious, all the arts are beautiful; but more useful, more curious, and more beautiful, are the perfect knowledge and perfect government of ourselves.'—*A Few Days in Athens*.

See the sole bliss Heaven could on all bestow;
Which *who but* feels, can taste, *but* thinks, can know:
Yet, poor with fortune, and with learning blind,
The bad must miss, *the good*, untaught, will find.—*Pope*.

LESSON V.

There *are, who*, deaf to mad Ambition's call,
Would shrink to hear th' obstreperous trump of fame;
Supremely *bless'd*, if to their portion fall
Health, competence, and peace.—*Beattie*.

The end and the reward of toil *is rest*.—*Idem*.

Shame to mankind! Philander had his foes;
He felt the truths I *sing*, and I in him:
But *he*, nor *I* feel more.—*Young*.

Lorenzo, *to recriminate is just*.

Fondness for fame is avarice of air.—*Idem*.

Wrong he sustains with temper, looks on heaven,
Nor stoops to think his injurer his *foe*.—*Idem*.

Amid the forms which this full world presents
Like rivals to his choice, what human breast
E'er doubts before the *transient* and *minute*,
To prize the *vast*, the *stable*, and *sublime*?—*Akenside*.

Now fears in dire vicissitude invade;
The rustling brake alarms, and quiv'ring *shade*:
Nor light nor darkness brings his *pain* relief;
One shows the plunder, and one hides the thief.—*Johns*.

So reads he nature, whom the lamp of truth
Illuminates:—thy *lamp*, mysterious Word!
Which whoso sees, no longer wanders lost,
With intellects bemaz'd in endless doubt,
But runs the road of wisdom.—*Comper*.

From education, *as the leading cause*,
The public character its colour draws;

Hence the prevailing manners take their cast,
Extravagant or sober, loose or chaste.—*Idem.*

Mercy to him that shows it, *is* the rule
And righteous limitation of *its* act,
By which heaven moves in pard'ning guilty man.—*Idem.*
Yet O the *thought*, that thou art safe, and *he*!
That thought is joy, *arrive what may* to me.—*Idem.*

LESSON VI.

Then palaces and lofty domes arose;
These for devotion, and for pleasure *those*.—*Blackmore.*
O poor hapless nightingale, thought I,
How *sweet* thou singst, how *near* the deadly *snare*!—*Milt.*
Give every *man* thine ear, but *few* thy voice;
Take each man's censure but reserve thy judgement.
Neither a *borrower* nor a *lender* be;
For loan oft loseth both itself and friend.—*Shak.*
Sorrow breaks reasons, and reposing hours;
Makes the night *morning*, and the noon-tide *night*.—*Idem.*
Nor then the solemn nightingale *ceas'd warbling*.—*Milton.*
The bless'd to-day is as completely so,
As *who* began a thousand years ago.—*Pope.*
Thus virtue sinks beneath unnumber'd woes,
When Passions, born her *friends*, revolt her *foes*.—*Idem.*
Full *many* a gem of purest ray serene
The dark unfathom'd caves of ocean bear;
Full *many* a flower is born to blush unseen,
And waste its sweetness on the desert air.—*Gray.*
Then, kneeling down to heaven's eternal King,
The saint, the father, and the husband *prays*;
Hope springs exulting on triumphant wing,
That thus they all shall meet in future days.—*Burns.*
These are thy blessings, Industry! rough power,
Whom labour still attends, and sweat, and pain.—*Thomson.*
Sweet *bird*! thy bow'r is ever green,
Thy sky is ever clear;
Thou hast *no* sorrow in thy song,
No winter in thy year.—*Logan.*

Hark! *they* whisper; angels say,
 'Sister spirit, come away!'
 What is this *absorbs* me quite,
Steals my senses, *shuts* my sight?—*Pope*.

LESSON VII.

Oh *fool!* to think God hates the worthy mind,
 The lover and the love of human kind,
 Whose life is healthful, and whose conscience clear,
 Because *he* wants a thousand pounds a year.—*Pope*.

————— He can't flatter, he!
 An honest mind and plain; he must speak truth,
 An they will hear it so; if not, he's plain.—*Shak*.
 What! canst thou not forbear me *half an hour*?
 Then get thee gone, and dig my grave thyself.—*Idem*.
 Remote from man, with God he pass'd his days,
 Prayer all his *business*, all his *pleasure* praise.—*Parnell*.
 Nature in silence bid the world repose;
 When *near the road* a stately palace rose.—*Idem*.
 It chanc'd the noble master of the dome
 Still made his house the wand'ring stranger's *home*.—*Idem*.
 If still she loves thee, hoard that gem;
 'Tis *worth* thy vanish'd *diadem*.—*Byron*.

He calls for *Famine*, and the meagre fiend
 Blows mildew *from between* his shrivell'd lips,
 And taints the golden ear.—*Conper*.
 What *ho!* thou genius of the clime, *what ho!*
 Liest thou asleep beneath these hills of snow?—*Dryden*.
 Oh! *what a* tangled web we weave,
 When first we practice to deceive!—*Scott*.

————— Here he had need
 All *circumspection*; and *we* now, *no less*,
 Choice in our suffrage; for *on* whom we send,
 The *weight* of all, and our last hope relies.—*Milton*.
 Who wickedly is wise, or madly brave,
 Is but the more a fool, the more a knave.—*Pope*.

To *copy* beauties, *forfeits* all pretence
 To fame;—to *copy* faults, is want of sense.—*Churchill*.

*Whose freedom is by suff'rance, and at will
Of a superior, he is never free.—Cowper.*

*A field of corn, a fountain, and a wood,
Is all the wealth by nature understood.—Cowley.*

QUESTIONS ON SYNTAX.

- Of what does syntax treat?
- What is the *relation* of words?
- What is the *agreement* of words?
- What is the *government* of words?
- What is the *arrangement* of words?
- What is a *sentence*?
- What are the principal parts of a sentence?
- What are the other parts called?
- How many kinds of sentences are there?
- What is a *simple* sentence?
- What is a *compound* sentence?
- What is a *clause*?
- What is a *phrase*?
- What words must be supplied in parsing?
- How many rules of syntax are there?
- Of what do the first eighteen treat?
- To what do the rest principally refer?
- To what do articles relate?
- What case is employed as the subject of a verb?
- What agreement is required between words in apposition?
- How does a pronoun agree with its antecedent?
- How does a pronoun agree with a collective noun?
- How does a pronoun agree with joint antecedents?
- How does a pronoun agree with disjunct antecedents?
- How does a verb agree with its subject or nominative?
- How does a verb agree with a collective noun?
- How does a verb agree with joint nominatives?
- How does a verb agree with disjunct nominatives?
- What agreement is required, when verbs are connected?
- How are participles employed?
- To what do adverbs relate?
- What is the use of conjunctions?

- What is the use of prepositions?
 To what do interjections relate?
 By what is the possessive case governed?
 What case do active-transitive verbs govern?
 What case is put after other verbs?
 What case do prepositions govern?
 What governs the infinitive mood?
 What verbs take the infinitive after them, without the preposition *to*?
 When is a noun or pronoun put absolute?
 When should the subjunctive mood be employed?
 What is required of the pupil in the seventh chapter of examples for parsing?
 What are exemplified in the eighth chapter of examples for parsing?

EXERCISES IN SYNTAX.

When the pupil has been sufficiently exercised in syntactical parsing, and has corrected orally, according to the formulæ given, all the examples of false syntax explained in the Key, he should write out the following exercises, correcting them according to the principles of syntax given in the rules and notes.

EXERCISE I.—ARTICLES.

- Christianity claims an heavenly origin.
 An useless excellence is a contradiction in terms.
 It would have an happy influence on genius.
 Part not with a old friend for an new acquaintance.
 Justice eyes not the parties, but cause.
 I found in him a friend, and not mere promiser.
 These fathers lived in the fourth and following century.
 The rich and poor are seldom intimate.
 The Bible contains the old and the new testaments.
 An elegant and florid style are very different.
 The humility is a deep which no man can fathom.
 The true cheerfulness is the privilege of the innocence.
 A devotion is a refuge from a human frailty.
 The duplicity and the friendship are not congenial.
 The familiarity with the vicious fosters a vice.
 A forced happiness is a solecism in the terms.

The favourites are generally the objects of the envy.
 An equivocation is a mean and a sneaking vice.
 He sent an other and rather a more modest letter.
 The flatterers are put to a flight by an adversity.
 An obstinacy is unfavourable to the discovery of the truth.
 The conic sections are a part of the geometry.
 What is the proper meaning of a Landgrave ?
 Sensuality is one kind of pleasure, such an one as it is.
 What sovereign assumes the title of an Autocrat ?
 Believe me the man is less a fool than a knave.
 He is a much deeper deceiver than a sufferer.
 Laziness is a greater thief than pickpocket.
 Heroes who then flourished, have passed away.
 Time which is to come, may not come to us.

EXERCISE II.--NOUNS.

A friend should bear a friends infirmities'.
 Deviations' from rectitude are approaches to sin.
 Crafty person's often entrap themselves.
 Mens mind's seem to be somewhat variously constituted.
 The great doctors, adept's in science, often disagree.
 The two men were ready to cut each others' throats.
 We went at the rate of five mile an hour.
 His income is a thousand pound a year.
 Five bushel of wheat are worth forty shilling.
 Reading is one mean of acquiring knowledge.
 The well is at least ten fathom deep.
 I shall be a hundred mile off by that time.
 Wisdom and Folly's votaries travel different roads.
 The true philanthropist is all mankind's friend.
 He desires the whole human race's happiness.
 The idler and the spendthrift's faults are similar.
 A good mans words inflict no injury.
 Be not generous at other peoples expense.
 True hope is swift, and flies with swallows wings.
 Lifes current holds its course, and never returns.
 Many assume Virtues livery, who shun her service.
 I left the parcel at Richardson's, the bookseller's.
 The books are for sale at Samuel Wood's and Sons'.
 Where shall we find friendship like David's and Jonathan's.
 Acquiesce for peace's and harmony's sake.

The moons disk often appears larger than the sun.
 Consult Sheridan, Johnson, and Walker's dictionary.
 Such was my uncles' agent's wife's economy.
 A frugal plenty marks the wise mans board.
 This mob, for honesty sake, broke open all the prisons.
 Our sacks shall be a mean to sack the city.
 Such was the economy of the wife of the agent of my uncle.
 These emmet's, how little they are in our eyes !
 Childrens minds may be easily overloaded.

EXERCISE III.—ADJECTIVES.

A palmistry at which this vermin are very dexterous.
 These kind of knaves I know.
 Vanity has more subjects than any of the passions.
 The vain are delighted with fashionable and new dresses.
 So highly did they esteem this goods.
 Washington has been honoured more than any American.
 Which is the loftier of the Asiatic mountains.
 This ashes they were very careful to preserve.
 Is not she the younger of the three sisters ?
 Could not some less nobler plunder satisfy thee ?
 I can assign a more satisfactory and stronger reason.
 Peter was older than any of the twelve apostles.
 Peace of mind is easier lost than gained.
 Of this victuals he was always very fond.
 Man has more wants than any animal.
 Of all other practical rules this is the most complex.
 Is not French more fashionable than any language ?
 Vice never leads to old honoured age.
 Cloths of a more inferior quality are more saleable.
 This is found in no book published previous to mine.
 He turned away with the most utmost contempt.
 Time glides swift and imperceptible away.
 Of their more ulterior measures I know nothing.
 My three last letters were never answered.
 Fortune may frown on the most superior genius.
 It becomes a gentleman to speak correct.
 The most loftiest mountain is Mont Blanc.
 If a man acts foolish is he to be esteemed wise ?
 Drop your acquaintance with them bad boys.
 They sat silently and motionless an hour and a half.

Quiet minds, like smooth water, reflect clear.

True faith, true policy, united ran,
This was but love of God, and that of man.

EXERCISE IV.—PRONOUNS.

Him that presumes much, has much to fear.
They best can bear reproof whom merit praise.
A few pupils, older than me, excited my emulation.
Every man will find themselves in the state of Adam.
None are more rich than them who are content.
Scotland and thee did in each other live.
These trifles they do not deserve our attention.
Truth is ever to be preferred for it's own sake.
Thou art afraid—else, what ails you ?
It is not Lemuel, but God, whom you have offended.
All things which have life aspire to God.
So great was the multitude who followed him.
He which would advance, should not look backwards.
It was Sir Billy—who is an other name for a fop.
I take up the arguments in the order they stand.
There is nothing, with respect to me, and such as me.
He that is bribed, the people will abhor.
The day when the accident happened is not recorded.
We know not who to trust ; them who seem fair, are false.
The reason I told it, was this ; thee was in danger.
I did not know the precise time when it occurred.
Here he answers the question, who asks it.
Who who beheld the outrage could remain inactive ?
This was the prison where we were confined.
I could not believe but what it was a reality.
It was the boys, and not the dog, which broke the basin.
An unprincipled junto is not nice about their means.
The people forced its way, and demanded its rights.
Avoid lightness and frivolity : it is allied to folly.
Either wealth or power may ruin their possessor.
It was Joseph, him whom Pharaoh promoted.
Origen's mother hid his clothes, to prevent him going.
Him that withholdeth corn, the people shall curse him.
He that withholdeth corn the people shall curse.
I have always thought ye honest, till now.
Me being but a boy, they took no notice of me.
They that receive me I will richly reward.

Had it been them, they would have stopped.
 Vain pomp, and glory of this world, I hate ye.
 It was not me, that gave you that answer.
 Between you and I, he is a greater thief than author.
 Any dunce can copy what you or me shall write.
 You seem to forget who you are talking to.
 Thee being a stranger, the child was afraid.
 This was the most remarkable event which occurred.
 Happy are them whose pleasure is their duty.

EXERCISE V.—VERBS.

Where was you standing during the transaction?
 Was you there when the pistol was fired?
 Thou sees how little difference there are.
 If he have failed, it was not through my neglect.
 Patience and diligence, like faith, removes mountains.
 Twere was many reasons for not disturbing my repose.
 The train of brass artillery and other ordnance are immense.
 Art thou the mau that camest from Judah?
 What eye those long, long labyrinths dare explore?
 Magnus and his friends was barbarously treated.
 The propriety of these restrictions, are unquestionable.
 And I am one that believe the doctrine.
 Thou wast he that leddest out and broughtest in Israel.
 Beauty without virtue generally prove a snare.
 If thou means to advance, eye those before thee.
 A qualification for high offices, come not of indolence.
 The desires of right reason is bounded by competency.
 Useless studies is nothing but a busy idleness.
 Is virtue, then, and piety the same?
 So awful an admonition was these miraculous words.
 If the great body of the people thinks otherwise.
 A committee are a body that have only a delegated power
 In peace of mind consists our strength and happiness.
 There is no slander, where love and unity is maintained.
 His character as well as his doctrines were assailed.
 Proof, and not assertion, are what are required.
 Right reason and truth is always in unison.
 No pains nor cost were spared to make it grand.
 Ignorance stupifies, and is the source of many crimes.
 ——— Then wanders forth the sons
 Of Belial, flown with insolence and wine.

What you must chiefly rely on, is the attested facts.
 No axe or hammer have ever awakened an echo here.
 Did not she send, and gave you this information?
 Their honours are departing and come to an end.
 Neither wit, nor taste, nor learning, appear in it.
 Caligula sat himself up for a deity.
 A tortoise requested the eagle to learn him to fly.
 'O, that it was always spring!' said little Robert.
 I at first intended to have arranged it in a new form.
 The gaoler supposed that the prisoners had been fled.
 Peter saw a vessel, as it had been a great sheet.
 Peace and esteem is all that age can hope.

Alas, no wife or mother's care
 For him the milk or corn prepare.
 Thou bark that sails with man!
 Haste, haste to cleave the seas.

EXERCISE VI.--PARTICIPLES.

What dost thou mean by shaking of thy head?
 A good end warrants not using bad means.
 Be cautious in forming of connexions.
 The worshiping the two calves was still kept up.
 In reading of his lecture, he was much embarrassed.
 This devoting ourselves to God, must be habitual.
 Their estimating the prize too highly, was evident.
 He declared the project to be no less than a tempting God.
 Every deviation from virtue is approaching to vice.
 It is extremely foolish boasting of immoral achievements.
 It was the refusing all communion with paganism.
 Our deepest knowledge is knowing ourselves.
 He wilfully neglects the obtaining unspeakable good.
 Retaliating injuries is multiplying offences.
 These things are certain: there is no denying facts.
 Publicly vindicating error is openly adopting it.
 On his father asking him who it was, he answered, 'I.'
 Thus shall we escape being defeated and ruined.
 Being unjustly liberal is ostentatious pride.
 Wisdom teaches justly appreciating of all things.
 The procuring these benefits, was a gratuitous act.
 Doing good, disinterested good, is not our trade.
 Such a renouncing the world is a pernicious delusion.

Freely indulging the appetite impairs the intellect.
 The Acts mention Paul preaching of Christ at Damascus.
 The Acts mention Paul's preaching Christ at Damascus.
 The Acts mention Paul preaching Christ at Damascus.
 Constantly beholding objects prevents our admiring them.
 We purpose taking that route when we go.
 What was the cause of the young woman fainting?
 I perceived somebody's creeping through the fence.
 I was aware of them intending to arrest me.
 We saw some mischievous boys' worrying of a cat.
 To pursue fashion, is chasing a bird on the wing.
 Being very positive, is no real proof of a stable mind.
 By establishing good laws, our peace is secured.
 Distinctness is important in delivering orations.
 He guarantied the permission we demanded being granted.
 For the easier reading the numbers in the table.
 Recovering the first surprise, however, we entered boldly.

EXERCISE VII.—ADVERBS, &c.

Respect is lost often by the means used to obtain it.
 Such were the views of the then ministry.
 Railery must be very nice to not offend.
 Ye know how that it is an unlawful thing.
 From hence I infer, that they were going there.
 Quaint sayings are long remembered often.
 I cannot tell you whether this is the fact or no.
 Valleys are more fertile generally than mountains.
 A qualification of usefulness is acquired with study.
 Frequent transgression makes men slaves of sin.
 Let nothing induce you ever to utter a falsehood.
 The idle are, of necessary consequence, ignorant.
 The wind came about so as we could make no way.
 Zealots seldom are distinguished by charity.
 Study is as necessary and even more so than instruction.
 I never have, and never shall be compensated.
 Humility neither seeks the first place or the last word.
 He has never told me nothing more of the matter.
 These men ranked highly among the nobility.
 Their bodies are so solid and hard, as you need not fear.
 Of her brother's political life previously to this event.
 Attainments made easily, are not of much value often.
 He has no other merit but that of a compiler.

Venus appears uncommonly brightly to night.
 Men cannot be forced neither into or out-of true faith.
 To this man we may commit safely our cause.
 One crime cannot be a proper remedy to an other.
 Venus is not quite as large as the Earth.
 It is thinking makes what we read our own.
 Quagmires have smooth surfaces commonly.
 He was so much offended, as he would not speak to me.
 I have put my words in thy mouth.
 How wilt thou put thy trust on Egypt for chariots?

EXERCISE VIII.—PROMISCUOUS.

In his fathers reign, they were connected and joined.
 What is the Earth and its dimensions?
 He is a great deal heavier man than I.
 The citizens were never denied the privilege.
 Thankful to heaven that thou wert left behind.
 I have met with few who understood men equal to him.
 He was then recently returned from the east victorious.
 He hoped that money should have been given him.
 Laws may, and frequently are made against drunkenness.
 He appeared in an human shape.
 I do not attempt explaining the mysteries of religion.
 Ere matter, time, or place, were known,
 Thou sway'dst these spacious realms alone.
 One of the wisest persons that hath been among them.
 What is it else but to reject all authority?
 They advocate distinctions unworthy any free state.
 It would not, and ought not, be felt.
 Them who saw the disaster, were greatly alarmed.
 He knew none fitter to be their judge but himself.
 Record the names of every one present.
 We doubt not but we will satisfy the impartial.
 But time and chance happeneth to them all.
 You was in hopes to have succeeded to the inheritance.
 To make light of a small fault, are to commit a greater.
 Judge not before hearing of the cause.
 Clear articulation is requisite in publicly speaking.
 God is the avenger of all breach of faith and injustice.
 I had a letter began, and nearly half wrote.
 It is better being suspected than being guilty.
 Declare the past and present state of things.

To insult the afflicted are impious and barbarous.
 Goodness, and not greatness, lead to happiness.
 It is pride who whispers, 'What will they think of me?'
 In judging of others, charity should be exercised.
 Zanies are willing to befool, to please fools.
 Questions are easier proposed than answered rightly.

He forms his schemes the flood of vice to stem;
 But preaching Jesus is not one of them.

EXERCISE IX.—PROMISCUOUS.

The property of the rebels were confiscated.
 He was extreme covetous in all his dealings.
 There were no less than thirty islands.
 The plot was the easier detected.
 Of all the books mine has the fewer blots.
 Who does the house belong to?
 Is this the person whom you say was present?
 Knowledge is only to be acquired by application.
 Policy often prevails upon force.
 These men were seen enter the house in the night.
 These works are Cicero, the most eloquent of men's.
 Thomas has bought a bay large horse.
 Your gold and silver is cankered.
 Now abideth faith, hope, and charity.
 And, him destroyed, all this will follow.
 There is no need for your assistance.
 To whom our fathers would not obey.
 Where can we find such an one as this?
 They sat out early on their journey.
 Philosophers have often mistook the source of happiness.
 The books are as old, and perhaps older, than tradition.
 This chapter is divided in sections.
 I shall treat you as I have them.
 A prophet mightier than him.
 Neither he or his brother is capable of it.
 Richelieu profited of every circumstance.
 What was the cause of the girl screaming?
 Let him and I have half of them.
 I wrote to, and cautioned the captain against it.
 Nothing is more lovelier than virtue.
 He that is diligent, you should commend.

They ride faster than us.

Which of them grammars do you like best ?

Neither of these are the meaning intended.

Did you understand who I was speaking of ?

Whosoever of you will be chiefest, shall be servant of all.

Remember what thou wert, and be humble.

Was I deceiv'd ? or did a sable cloud

Turn forth her silver lining on the night ?

EXERCISE X.—PROMISCUOUS.

Changed to a worser shape thou canst not be.

For him through hostile camps I bend my way,

For him thus prostrate at thy feet I lay.

Thus oft by mariners are shown

Earl Godwin's castles overflown.

No civil broils have, since his death, arose.

Nor thou, that flings me floundering from thy back.

Who should I see but the doctor !

That which once was thee.

To wish him wrestle with affection.

So much she fears for William's life,

That Mary's fate she dare not mourn.

Phalaris, who was so much older than her.

They would have given him such satisfaction in other particulars, as a full and happy peace must have ensued.

The woman which we saw is very amiable.

The three first classes have read.

An union in that which is permanent.

Among every class of people self-interest prevails.

Such conduct is a disgrace of their profession.

His education has been neglected much.

There is no other bridge but the one we saw.

He went and laid down to sleep.

Whom do men say that I am ?

Take to you handfuls of ashes of the furnace, and let Moses sprinkle it towards the heaven in the sight of Pharaoh.

In eulogizing of the dead, he slandered the living.

If a dog both give the first turn and the last, he shall win.

Neither the virtuous or the vicious are exempt from trials.

He spoke as if he was in a passion.

Let him take heed lest he fails.

We have all swerved out-of the path of duty.

I cannot agree with him neither.
 He both wrote sermons and plays.
 If a man say, 'I love God,' and hateth his brother, he is a liar.
 He has long ago forsaken that party.
 It was proved to be her that opened the letter.
 Is not this the same man whom we met before?
 I forego my claim for peace's sake.
 For thou art a girl as much brighter than her,
 As she was a poet sublimer than me.

EXERCISE XI.—PROMISCUOUS.

There remains two points to be settled.
 I could not avoid frequently using it.
 The Athenians were naturally obliging and agreeable;
 they were cheerful among each other, and humane to
 their inferiors.
 I hope it is not me thou art displeased with.
 I never before saw such large trees.
 My paper is Ulysses his bow, in which every man of wit
 and learning may try his strength.
 'Twas thee, whom once Stagyra's grove
 Oft with her sage allur'd to rove.
 I could not observe by what gradations other men proceed-
 ed in their acquainting themselves with truth.
 I will show you the way how it is done.
 Imprinting, if it signify any thing, is nothing else but the
 making certain truths to be perceived.
 This arose from the young man associating with bad people.
 Him that never thinks, never can be wise.
 It was John's the Baptist head that was cut off.
 The Jews are Abraham's, Isaac's, and Jacob's posterity.
 Two architects were once candidates for the building a
 certain temple at Athens.
 This treatise is extreme elaborate.
 Them descending the ladder fell.
 The scaling ladder of sugared words, are set against them.
 One or both was there.
 What sort of an animal is that?
 These things should be never separated.
 His excuse was admitted of by his master.
 It is not me that he is engaged with.
 I intended to have rewarded him according to his merits.

They would become sooner proficient in Latin.

There is many different opinions concerning it.

There are many in town richer than her.

Let you and I be as little at variance as possible.

A coalman, by waking of one of these gentlemen, saved him from ten years imprisonment.

If a man's temper was at his own disposal, he would not choose to be of either of these parties.

The birds their notes renew, and bleating herds

Attest their joy, that hill and valley rings.

EXERCISE XII.—PROMISCUOUS.

But we of the nations beg leave to differ with them.

This is so easy and trivial, as it is a shame to mention it.

You was once quite blind; you neither saw your disease or your remedy.

Fluttering his pennons vain, plumb down he drops

Ten thousand fathom deep.

The properties of the mirror depends on reflected light.

Was you present at the last meeting?

Hence has arisen much stiffness and affectation.

The nation are powerful both by sea and land.

Those set of books was a valuable present.

The box contained forty piece of muslin.

She is much the taller of the three.

They are both remarkable tall men.

A mans manners may be pleasing, whose morals are bad.

True politeness has it's seat in the heart.

He presented him a humble petition.

I do not intend to turn a critic on this occasion.

At first sight, we took it to be they.

The certificate was wrote on parchment.

I have often swam across the river.

I have written four long letters yesterday.

I expected to have seen you last week, but I was disappointed.

We are besat by dangers on all sides.

My father and him were very intimate.

Unless he acts prudently, he will not succeed.

It was no sooner said but done.

Let neither partiality or prejudice appear.

The obligation was ceased long before.

How exquisitely is this all performed in Greek!

Who, when they came to mount Ephraim, to the house of Micah, they lodged there.

I prevailed with your father to consent.

Always act as justice and honour requires.

Them that transgress the rules will be punished.

With him is wisdom and strength.

My conductor answered, that it was him.

Be thou, O lovely isle! forever true,

To him, who more than faithful was to you.

The joys of love, are they not doubly thine,

Ye poor! whose health, whose spirits ne'er decline?

EXERCISE XIII.—PROMISCUOUS.

Having once suffered the disgrace, it is felt no longer.

The meanness or the sin will scarce be dissuasive.

Both temper and distemper consists of contraries.

Which is the cause, the writer or the reader's vanity.

The commission of a generalissimo was also given him.

The queen's kindred is styled gentlefolks.

They agree as to the fact, but differ in assigning of reasons.

Their love, and their hatred, and their envy, is now perished.

The inquiry is worthy the attention of every scholar.

Young twigs are easier bent than boughs.

It is not improbable but there are more attractive powers.

By this means, an universal ferment was excited.

Who were utterly unable to pronounce some letters, and others very indistinctly.

All vessels on board of which any person has been sick or died, perform quarantine.

Severus forbid his subjects to change their religion for that of the Christian or Jewish.

Magnus, with four thousand of his supposed accomplices, were put to death without a trial.

Art not thou that Egyptian which before these days madest an uproar, and leddest out into the wilderness four thousand men that were murderers?

Attempting to deceive children into instruction of this kind, is only deceiving ourselves.

A woman, having an alabaster box of ointment, brake and poured it on his head.

My essays, of all my other works, are the most current.

We would suggest the importance of every member, individually, using his influence.

Thy sumptuous buildings, and thy wife's attire,
Hath cost a mass of public treasure.

EXERCISE XIV.—PROMISCUOUS.

This people who knoweth not the law, are cursed.

The people shall be forgiven their iniquity.

Having been denied the favours which they were promised.

Rosaline, this favour thou shalt wear;

Hold, take you this, my sweet, and give me thine.

Rely not on any man's fidelity, who is unfaithful to God.

The rules are full as concise, and more clear than before.

For they knew all that his father was a Greek.

Thrice was Cæsar offered the crown.

For a mine undiscovered, neither the owner of the ground,
or any body else, are ever the richer.

Death may be sudden to him, though it comes by never
so slow degrees.

A brute or a man are an other thing when they are alive,
from what they are when dead.—*Hale*.

I have known the having confessed inability, become the
occasion of confirmed impotence.

I am exceeding joyful in all our tribulation.

If so much power, wisdom, goodness, and magnificence, is
displayed in the material creation, which is the least
considerable part of the universe; how great, how wise,
how good must he be, who made and governs the whole!

A good poet no sooner communicates his works, but it is
imagined he is a vain young creature, given up to the
ambition of fame.

This was a tax upon himself for the not executing the laws.

O my people, that dwellest in Zion! be not afraid.

As rushing out-of doors, to be resolved,
If Brutus so unkindly knock'd or no.

His wrath, which one day will destroy ye both.

I know thee not—nor ever saw, till now,
Sight more detestable than him and thee.

The season when to come, and when to go,
To sing, or cease to sing, we never know.

PART IV.

PROSODY.

Prosody treats of punctuation, utterance, figures, and versification.

PUNCTUATION.

Punctuation is the art of dividing composition, by points, or stops, for the purpose of showing more clearly the sense and relation of the words, and of noting the different pauses and inflections required in reading.

The following are the principal points, or marks; the Comma [,], the Semicolon [;], the Colon [:], the Period[.], the Dash [—], the Note of Interrogation [?], the Note of Exclamation [!], and the Parenthesis [()].

OBS.—The pauses that are made in the natural flow of speech, have, in reality, no definite and invariable proportions. The following, however, may serve as a general direction.

The Comma denotes the shortest pause; the Semicolon, a pause double that of the comma; the Colon, a pause double that of the semicolon; and the Period, or Full Stop, a pause double that of the colon. The pauses required by the other marks, vary, according to the structure of the sentence, and their place in it. They may be equal to any of the foregoing.

OF THE COMMA.

The Comma is used to separate those parts of a sentence, which are so nearly connected in sense, as to be only one degree removed from that close connexion which admits no point.

RULE I.

A simple sentence does not, in general admit the comma; as, "The weakest reasoners are the most positive."

Exception. When the nominative in a long simple sentence, is accompanied by inseparable adjuncts, a comma should be placed before the verb; as, "The assemblage of these vast bodies, is divided into different systems."

RULE II.

The simple members of a compound sentence, whether successive or involved, elliptical or complete, are generally divided by the comma; as,

"He speaks eloquently, and he acts wisely."

"The man, when he saw this, departed."

"It may, and it often does happen."

"That life is long, which answers life's great end."

"As thy days, so shall thy strength be."

Exception 1. When a relative immediately follows its antecedent, and is taken in a restrictive sense, the comma should not be introduced before it; as, "The things *which* are seen, are temporal: but the things *which* are not seen, are eternal."

Exception 2. When the simple members are short, and closely connected by a conjunction or a conjunctive adverb, the comma is generally omitted; as, "It is worse *than death*."—"Let him tell me *whether* the number of the stars be even or odd."

RULE III.

When more than two words or phrases are connected in the same construction, by conjunctions expressed or understood, the comma should be inserted after every one of them but the last; and if they are nominatives before a verb, the comma should follow the last also: as,

"Who, to the enraptur'd heart, and ear, and eye,
Teach beauty, virtue, truth, and love, and melody."

"Ah! what avails * * * * *

All that art, fortune, enterprise, can bring,
If envy, scorn, remorse, or pride, the bosom wring?"

“ Women are soft, mild, pitiful, and flexible ;
 Thou, stern, obdurate, flinty, rough, remorseless.”
 “ She plans, provides, expatiates, triumphs there.”

Obs.—Two or more words are in the *same construction*, when they have a common dependence on some other term.

RULE IV.

When only two words or phrases are connected by a conjunction, they should not be separated by the comma ; as, “ Despair and anguish fled.”

Exception 1. When the two words connected have several adjuncts, the comma is inserted ; as, “ Honesty in his dealings, and attention to business, procured him both esteem and wealth.”

Exception 2. When the two words connected are emphatically distinguished, the comma is inserted ; as,

“ Liberal, not lavish, is kind Nature’s hand.”

“ ’Tis certain he could write, and cipher too.”

Exception 3. When there is merely an alternative of words, the comma is inserted ; as, “ We saw a large opening, or inlet.”

Exception 4. When the conjunction is understood, the comma is inserted ; as,

“ She thought the isle that gave her birth,
 The sweetest, wildest land on earth.”

RULE V.

When successive words are joined in pairs by conjunctions, they should be separated in pairs by the comma ; as, “ Interest and ambition, honour and shame, friendship and enmity, gratitude and revenge, are the prime movers in public transactions.”

RULE VI.

Words put absolute, should, with their adjuncts, be set off by the comma ; as, “ The prince, *his father being dead*, succeeded.”—“ *This done*, we parted.”—“ *His pratorship in Sicily*, what did it produce ?”

RULE VII.

Words put in apposition, (especially if they have adjuncts,) are generally set off by the comma; as, "He that now calls upon thee, is Theodore, *the hermit of Tencriffe*."

Exception 1. When several words are used as one compound name, the comma is not inserted; as, "Samuel Johnson"—"Publius Gavius Cosanus."

Exception 2. When a common and a proper name are closely united, the comma is not inserted; as, "The brook Kidron"—"The river Don"—"The empress Catharine"—"Paul the apostle."

Exception 3. When a pronoun is added to an other word, merely for emphasis and distinction, the comma is not inserted; as, "Ye men of Athens"—"I myself"—"Thou flaming minister"—"You princes."

Exception 4. When a name acquired by some action or relation, is put in apposition with a preceding noun or pronoun, the comma is not inserted; as, "I made the *ground my bed*"—"To make *him king*"—"Whom they revered as *God*"—"With *modesty thy guide*."

RULE VIII.

Adjectives, when something depends on them, or when they have the import of a dependent clause, should with their adjuncts, be set off by the comma; as,

"Among the roots
Of hazel, *pendent o'er the plaintive stream*,
They frame the first foundation of their domes."

"Up springs the lark,
Shrill-voic'd, and *loud*, the messenger of morn."

Exception. When an adjective immediately follows its noun, and is taken in a restrictive sense, the comma should not be used; as,

"On the coast *averse from entrance*."

RULE IX.

Where a verb is understood, a comma is generally required: as, "From law arises security; from security, curiosity; from curiosity, knowledge."

RULE X.

The infinitive mood, when it follows a verb from which it must be separated, or when it depends on something remote or understood, is generally set off by the comma; as, "His delight was, *to assist the distressed.*"—" *To conclude*, I was reduced to beggary."

"The Governor of all—*has interposed*,
Not seldom, his avenging arm, *to smite*
The injurious trampler upon nature's law."

RULE XI.

Participles, when something depends on them, when they have the import of a dependent clause, or when they relate to something understood, should, with their adjuncts, be set off by the comma; as,

"Young Edwin, *lighted by the evening star*,
Ling'ring and list'ning, wander'd down the vale."

"*United*, we stand; *divided*, we fall."

"*Properly speaking*, there is no such thing as chance."

Exception. When a participle immediately follows its noun, and is taken in a restrictive sense, the comma should not be used before it; as,

"A man *renown'd for repartee*,
Will seldom scruple to make free
With friendship's finest feeling."

RULE XII.

Adverbs, when they break the connexion of a simple sentence, or when they have not a close connexion with some particular word in the context, should be set off by the comma; as, "We must not, *however*, confound this gentleness with the artificial courtesy of the world."—" *Besides*, the mind must be employed."—" *Most unquestionably*, no fraud was equal to all this."

RULE XIII.

Conjunctions, when they are separated from the principal clause that depends on them, or when they introduce an example, are generally set off by the comma; as, "*But*,

by a timely call upon Religion, the force of Habit was eluded."

RULE XIV.

Prepositions and their objects, when they break the connexion of a simple sentence, or when they do not closely follow the words on which they depend, are generally set off by the comma; as, "Fashion is, *for the most part*, nothing but the ostentation of riches."—"By reading, we add the experience of others to our own."

RULE XV.

Interjections are sometimes set off by the comma; as, "For, *lo*, I will call all the families of the kingdoms of the north."

RULE XVI.

A word emphatically repeated, should be set off by the comma; as, "Happy, happy, happy pair!"—"Ah! no, no, no."

RULE XVII.

A quotation or observation, when it is introduced by a verb. (as *say*, *reply*, and the like,) is generally separated from the rest of the sentence by the comma; as, "'The book of nature,' said he, 'is open before thee.'"—"I say unto all, Watch."

OF THE SEMICOLON.

The Semicolon is used to separate those parts of a compound sentence, which are neither so closely connected as those which are distinguished by the comma, nor so little dependent as those which require the colon.

RULE I.

When several compound members, some or all of which require the comma, are constructed into a period, they are

generally separated by the semicolon: as, "In the regions inhabited by angelic natures, unmingled felicity forever blooms; joy flows there with a perpetual and abundant stream, nor needs any mound to check its course."

RULE II.

When several simple members, each of which is complete in sense, are constructed into a period; if they require a pause greater than that of the comma, they are usually separated by the semicolon: as, "Straws swim upon the surface; but pearls lie at the bottom."

"A longer care man's helpless kind demands;
That longer care contracts more lasting bands."

RULE III.

Words in apposition, or in any other construction, if they require a pause greater than that of the comma, and less than that of the colon, may be separated by the semicolon: as, "There are five moods; the infinitive, the indicative, the potential, the subjunctive, and the imperative."

OF THE COLON.

The Colon is used to separate those parts of a compound sentence, which are neither so closely connected as those which are distinguished by the semicolon, nor so little dependent as those which require the period.

RULE I.

When the preceding clause is complete in itself, but is followed by some additional remark or illustration, the colon is generally used: as, "Avoid evil doers: in such society an honest man may become ashamed of himself."—"See that moth fluttering incessantly round the candle: man of pleasure, behold thy image!"

RULE II.

When the semicolon has been introduced, and a still greater pause is required within the period, the colon

should be employed: as, "Princes have courtiers, and merchants have partners; the voluptuous have companions, and the wicked have accomplices: none but the virtuous can have friends."

RULE III.

A quotation introduced without dependence on a verb or a conjunction, is generally preceded by the colon: as, "In his last moments, he uttered these words: '*I fall a sacrifice to sloth and luxury.*'"

OF THE PERIOD.

The Period, or Full Stop, is used to mark an entire and independent sentence, whether simple or compound.

RULE I.

When a sentence is complete in respect to sense, and independent in respect to construction, it should be marked with the period: as, "Every deviation from truth, is criminal. Abhor a falsehood. Let your words be ingenuous. Sincerity possesses the most powerful charm."

RULE II.

The period is often employed between two sentences which have a general connexion, expressed by a personal pronoun, a conjunction, or a conjunctive adverb; as, "The selfish man languishes in his narrow circle of pleasures. *They* are confined to what affects his own interests. *He* is obliged to repeat the same gratifications, till they become insipid. *But* the man of virtuous sensibility moves in a wider sphere of felicity."

RULE III.

The period is generally used after abbreviations; as, A. D., Pro tem., Ult., i. e.

OF THE DASH.

The Dash is used to denote an unexpected pause, of variable length.

RULE I.

A sudden interruption or transition should be marked with the dash; as, “I must inquire into the affair, and if—‘And *if*!’ interrupted the farmer.”

“Here lies the great—false marble, where?
Nothing but sordid dust lies here.”

RULE II.

To mark a considerable pause, greater than the structure of the sentence, or the points inserted, would seem to require, the dash may be employed; as,

“And now they part—to meet no more.”

“Revere thyself;—and yet thyself despise.”

“Behold the picture!—Is it like?—Like whom?”

OF THE NOTE OF INTERROGATION.

The Note of Interrogation is used to designate a question.

RULE I.

Questions, expressed directly as such, should always be followed by the note of interrogation; as,

“In life, can love be bought with gold?
Are friendship’s pleasures to be sold?”

RULE II.

When two or more questions are united in one compound sentence, the comma or semicolon is sometimes placed between them, and the note of interrogation, after the last only; as,

“Truths would you teach, or save a sinking land?
All fear, none aid you, and few understand.”

RULE III.

When a question is mentioned, but not put directly as a question, it loses both the quality and the sign of interrogation; as, “The Cyprians asked me *why I wept*.”

OF THE NOTE OF EXCLAMATION.

The Note of Exclamation is used to denote some strong or sudden emotion of the mind.

RULE I.

Interjections and other expressions of great emotion, are generally followed by the note of exclamation; as,

“O ! let me listen to the words of life !”

RULE II.

After an earnest address, or invocation, the note of exclamation is preferred to the comma; as, “Whereupon, O king Agrippa ! I was not disobedient to the heavenly vision.”

RULE III.

A question uttered with vehemence, and without reference to an answer, should be followed by the note of exclamation; as, “How madly have I talked !”

OF THE PARENTHESIS.

The Parenthesis is used to distinguish a clause that is hastily thrown in between the parts of a sentence to which it does not properly belong; as,

“To others do (the law is not severe)
What to thyself thou wishest to be done.”

The incidental clause should be uttered in a lower tone, and faster, than the principal sentence. It always requires a pause as great as that of a comma, or greater.

RULE I.

A clause that breaks the unity of a sentence too much to be incorporated with it, and only such, should be enclosed in a parenthesis; as,

“Know then this truth, (enough for man to know,)
Virtue alone is happiness below.”

RULE II.

The parenthesis does not supersede the other stops : it terminates with a pause equal to that which precedes it; and it should include the same point, except when the sentences differ in form : as,

“ Man’s thirst of happiness declares it is :
 (For nature never gravitates to nought :)
 That thirst unquench’d, declares it is not here.”

“ Night visions may befriend: (as sung above :)
 Our waking dreams are fatal.—How I dreamt
 Of things impossible! (could sleep do more?)
 Of joys perpetual in perpetual change!”

[¶ For oral exercises in punctuation, the teacher may select any well-pointed book, to which the foregoing rules may be applied by the pupil.]

OF THE OTHER MARKS.

There are also other marks, that are occasionally used for various purposes, as follow :

1. ['] The *Apostrophè* denotes either the possessive case, or the elision of one or more letters of a word : as, The *girl’s* regard to her *parents’* advice;—’*gan*, *lov’d*, *e’en*, *thro’* ; for *began*, *loved*, *even*, *through*.

2. [-] The *Hyphen* connects the parts of compound words; as, *ever-living*. Placed at the end of a line, it shows that one or more syllables of a word are carried forward to the next line.

3. [··] The *Diæresis*, placed over the latter of two vowels, shows that they are not a diphthong; as, *aërial*.

4. [ˈ] The *Acute Accent* marks the syllable which requires the principal stress in pronunciation; as, *équal*, *equal’ity*. It is sometimes used, in opposition to the grave accent, to distinguish a close vowel, or to denote the rising inflection of the voice.

5. [ˉ] The *Grave Accent* is used, in opposition to the acute, to distinguish an open vowel, or to denote the falling inflection of the voice.

6. [˘] The *Circumflex* generally denotes the broad sound of a vowel; as, *eclât*.

7. [˘] The *Breve* is used to denote either a close vowel, or a syllable of short quantity.

8. [ˉ] The *Macron* is used to denote either an open vowel, or a syllable of long quantity.

9. [—] or [****] The *Ellipsis* denotes the omission of some letters or words; as, *K—g*, for *king*.

10. [^] The *Caret* shows where to insert words or letters that have been accidentally omitted.

11. [{}] The *Brace* serves to unite a triplet, or to connect several terms with something to which they are all related.

12. [§] The *Section* marks the smaller divisions of a book or chapter.

13. [¶] The *Paragraph* (chiefly used in the Bible) denotes the commencement of a new subject. The parts of discourse, which are called paragraphs, are, in general, sufficiently distinguished, by beginning a new line, and carrying the first word a little forwards or backwards.

14. [“”] The *Quotation Points* distinguish words that are taken from an other author or speaker. A quotation within a quotation is marked with single points; which, when both are employed, are placed within the others.

15. [□] The *Crotchets* generally enclose some correction or explanation, or the subject to be explained; as, “He [the speaker] was of a different opinion.”

16. [☞] The *Index* points out something remarkable.

17. [*] The *Asterisk*, [†] the *Obelisk*, and [||] the *Parallels*, refer to marginal notes. The letters of the alphabet, or the numerical figures, may be used for the same purpose.

UTTERANCE.

Utterance is the art of vocal expression. It includes the principles of pronunciation and elocution.

OF PRONUNCIATION.

Pronunciation, as distinguished from elocution, is the utterance of words taken separately.

Pronunciation requires a knowledge of the just powers of the letters in all their combinations, and of the force and seat of the accent.

Accent is the peculiar stress which we lay upon some particular syllable of a word, whereby that syllable is distinguished from the rest; as, *grám-mar*, *gram-má-ri-an*.

Every word of more than one syllable, has one of its syllables accented. When the word is long, for the sake of harmony or distinctness, we often give a secondary, or less forcible accent to an other syllable; as, to the last of *tém-per-a-túre*, and to the second of *in-dém-ni-fi-cá-tion*.

A full and open pronunciation of the long vowel sounds, a clear articulation of the consonants, a forcible and well-placed accent, and a distinct utterance of the unaccented syllables, distinguish the elegant speaker.

[For a full explanation of the principles of pronunciation, the learner is referred to Walker's Critical Pronouncing Dictionary.]

OF ELOCUTION.

Elocution is the utterance of words that are arranged into sentences, and form discourse.

Elocution requires a knowledge, and right application, of emphasis, pauses, inflections, and tones.

Emphasis is the peculiar stress which we lay upon some particular word or words in a sentence, which are thereby distinguished from the rest.

Pauses are cessations in utterance, which serve equally to relieve the speaker, and to render language intelligible and pleasing. The duration of the pauses should be proportionate to the degree of connexion between the parts of the discourse.

Inflections are those peculiar variations of the human voice, by which a continuous sound is made to pass from one note into an other. The passage of the voice from a lower to a higher or shriller note, is called the *rising inflection*. The passage of the voice from a higher to a lower or graver note, is called the *falling inflection*. These two opposite inflections may be heard in the following examples: 1. *the rising*, "Do you mean to *gó*?" 2. *the falling*, "When will you *gò*?"

OBS.—Questions that may be answered by *yes* or *no*, require the rising inflection; those that demand any other answer, must be uttered with the falling inflection.

Tones are those modulations of the voice, which depend upon the feelings of the speaker. And it is of the utmost importance, that they be natural, and adapted to the subject and to the occasion: for upon them, in a great measure, depends all that is pleasing or interesting in elocution.

FIGURES.

A Figure, in grammar, is an intentional deviation from the ordinary form, construction, or application, of words. There are, accordingly, figures of Etymology, figures of Syntax, and figures of Rhetoric. When figures are judiciously employed, they both strengthen and adorn expression. They occur more frequently in poetry than in prose; and several of them are merely poetic licenses.

FIGURES OF ETYMOLOGY.

A Figure of Etymology is an intentional deviation from the ordinary form of a word. The principal figures of etymology are eight; namely, *Aphæresis*, *Prosthesis*, *Syncopè*, *Apocopè*, *Paragogè*, *Diæresis*, *Synæresis*, and *Tmesis*.

I. *Aphæresis* is the elision of some of the initial letters of a word; as, 'gainst, 'gan, 'neath,—for *against*, *began*, *beneath*.

II. *Prosthesis* is the prefixing of an expletive syllable to a word; as, *adown*, *appaid*, *bestrown*, *evanished*,—for *down*, *paid*, *strown*, *vanished*.

III. *Syncopè* is the elision of some of the middle letters of a word; as, *med'cine*, for *medicine*; *se'nnight*, for *seven-night*.

IV. *Apocopè* is the elision of some of the final letters of a word; as, *tho'*, for *though*.

V. *Paragogè* is the annexing of an expletive syllable to a word; as, *withauten*, for *without*.

VI. *Diaeresis* is the separating of two vowels that might form a diphthong; as, *coöperate*.

VII. *Synæresis* is the sinking of two syllables into one; as, *seest*, for *seëst*.

Obs.—When a vowel is entirely suppressed in pronunciation, (whether retained in writing or not,) the consonants connected with it, fall into an other syllable: thus, *tried*, *triest*, *loved* or *lov'd*, *lovest* or *lov'st*, are monosyllables; except in solemn discourse, in which the *e* is made vocal.

VIII. *Tmesis* is the inserting of a word between the parts of a compound; as, “On *which* side soever,”—“To us *ward*,”—“To God *ward*.”

FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A figure of Syntax is an intentional deviation from the ordinary construction of words. The principal figures of Syntax are five; namely, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, *Syllepsis*, *Enallagè*, and *Hyperbaton*.

I. *Ellipsis* is the omission of some words which are necessary to complete the construction, but not, to convey the meaning.

Almost all compound sentences are more or less elliptical. There may be an ellipsis of any of the parts of speech, or even of a whole clause: as,

1. Of the *Article*; as, “A man and [*a*] woman.”—“The day, [*the*] month, and [*the*] year.”

2. Of the *Noun*; as, “The common [*law*] and the statute law.”—“The twelve [*apostles*].”—“One [*book*] of my books.”—“A dozen [*bottles*] of wine.”

3. Of the *Adjective*; as, “A little boy and [*a little*] girl.”—“Much trouble and [*much*] time.”

4. Of the *Pronoun*; as, “I love [*him*] and [*I*] fear him.”—“The estates [*which*] we own.”

5. Of the *Verb*; as, “Who did this? I” [*did it*].—“To whom thus Eve, yet sinless” [*spoke*].

6. Of the *Participle*; as, “That [*being*] o’er, they part.”

7. Of the *Adverb*; as, “He spoke [*wisely*] and acted wisely.”—“Exceedingly great and [*exceedingly*] powerful.”

8. Of the *Conjunction*; as, “The fruit of the Spirit is love, [*and*] joy, [*and*] peace, [*and*] long-suffering, [*and*]

gentleness, [*and*] goodness, [*and*] faith, [*and*] meekness, [*and*] temperance." The repetition of the conjunction is called *Polysyndeton*; and the omission of it, *Asyndeton*.

9. Of the *Preposition*; as, "[*On*] this day."—" [*In*] next month."—" He departed [*from*] this life."—" He gave [*to*] me a book."—" To walk [*through*] a mile."

10. Of the *Interjection*; as, "Oh! the frailty, [*Oh!*] the wickedness of men!"

11. Of a *Clause*; as, "It is our duty to show respect to the virtuous, and [*it is our duty to show*] deference to our superiors."

II. *Pleonasm*, is the introduction of superfluous words. This figure is allowable only, when, in animated discourse, it abruptly introduces an emphatic word, or repeats an idea to impress it more strongly; as, "*He* that hath ears to hear, let him hear!"—"All ye inhabitants of the world, and dwellers on the earth!"—"There shall not be left one stone upon another *that shall not be thrown down*."—"I know thee *who thou art*." A Pleonasm is sometimes impressive and elegant; but an unemphatic repetition of the same idea, is one of the worst faults of bad writing.

III. *Syllepsis* is agreement formed according to the figurative sense of a word, or the mental conception of the thing spoken of, and not according to the literal or common use of the term; it is therefore, in general, connected with some other figure: as, "The *Word* was made flesh, and dwelt among us, and we beheld *his* glory."—*John* i. 14. "Then Philip went down to the *city* of Samaria, and preached Christ unto *them*."—*Acts* viii. 5. "While *Evening* draws *her* crimson curtain round."—*Thomson*.

IV. *Enallagè* is the use of one part of speech, or of one modification, for an other.* This figure borders closely upon solecism. It is a licence sparingly indulged in poetry; but it is very seldom allowable in prose: as,

"They fall *successive* [*ly*], and *successive* [*ly*] rise."

* Deviations of this kind are, in general, to be considered solecisms; otherwise, the rules of grammar would be of no use or authority. *Despauter*, an ancient Latin grammarian, gave an improper latitude to this figure, under the name of *Antiptosis*; and *Behourt* and others extended it still further. But *Sanctius* says, *Antiptosis grammaticorum nihil imperitius, quod figmentum si esset verum, frustra quæreretur, quem casum verba regerent*. And the *Messieurs De Port Royal* reject the figure altogether. There are, however, some changes of this kind, which the grammarian is not competent to condemn, though they do not accord with the ordinary principles of construction.

“Than *whom* [who] none higher sat.”

“Sure some disaster has *befell*” [befallen].

“So furious was that onset’s shock,

Destruction’s gates at once *unlock*.”—*Hogg*.

V. *Hyperbaton* is the transposition of words; as, “He wanders *earth around*.”—“*Rings the world* with the vain stir.” This figure is much employed in poetry. A judicious use of it confers harmony, variety, strength, and vivacity upon composition. But care should be taken lest it produce ambiguity or obscurity.

FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

A Figure of Rhetoric is an intentional deviation from the ordinary application of words. Figures of this kind are commonly called Tropes. Numerous departures from perfect simplicity of diction, occur in almost every kind of composition. They are mostly founded on some similitude or relation of things, which, by the power of imagination, is rendered conducive to ornament or illustration. The principal figures of rhetoric are fourteen; namely, *Similè*, *Metaphor*, *Allegory*, *Metonymy*, *Synecdochè*, *Hyperbolè*, *Vision*, *Apostrophè*, *Personification*, *Erotesis*, *Ecphonesis*, *Antithesis*, *Climax*, and *Irony*.

I. A *Similè* is a simple and express comparison; and is generally introduced by *like*, *as*, or *so* : as,

“At first, *like thunder’s distant tone*,

The rattling din came rolling on.—*Hogg*.

“Man, *like the generous vine*, supported lives ;

The strength he gains, is from th’ embrace he gives.”

II. A *Metaphor* is a figure that expresses the resemblance of two objects by applying either the name, or some attribute, adjunct, or action, of the one, directly to the other ; as,

“His eye was *morning’s brightest ray*.”—*Hogg*.

“An angler in the *tides* of fame.”—*Idem*.

“Beside him *sleeps* the warrior’s bow.”—*Langhorne*.

“ Wild fancies in his moody brain,
Gamboled unbridled and unbound.”—*Hogg.*

“ Speechless, and fix’d in all the *death* of wo.”—*Thom.*

III. An *Allegory* is a continued narration of fictitious events, designed to represent and illustrate important realities. Thus the Psalmist represents the Jewish nation under the symbol of a *vine*: “Thou hast brought a vine out of Egypt: thou hast cast out the heathen and planted it. Thou preparedst room before it, and didst cause it to take deep root; and it filled the land. The hills were covered with the shadow of it, and the boughs thereof were like the goodly cedars.”—*Ps.* lxxx. 8.

OBS.—The *Allegory*, agreeably to the foregoing definition of it, includes most of those similitudes which in the scriptures are called *parables*; it includes also the better sort of *fables*. The term *allegory* is sometimes applied to a *true history* in which something else is intended, than is contained in the words literally taken. [See *Gal* iv. 24.] In *Scripture*, the term *fable* denotes an idle and groundless story. [See *1 Tim.* iv. 1, and *2 Pet.* i. 16.]

IV. A *Metonymy* is a change of names. It is founded on some such relation as that of *cause* and *effect*, of *subject* and *adjunct*, of *place* and *inhabitant*, of *container* and *thing contained*, or of *sign* and *thing signified*: as, “God is our *salvation* ;” i. e. *Saviour*.—“The *sigh* of her secret soul ;” i. e. the *youth* she loved.—“They smote the *city* ;” i. e. *citizens*.—“My son, give me thy *heart* ;” i. e. *affection*.—“The *sceptre* shall not depart from Judah ;” i. e. *kingly power*.

V. *Synecdochè* is the naming of the whole for a part, or of a part for the whole; as, “This *roof* [i. e. house] protects you.”—“Now the *year* [i. e. summer] is beautiful.”

VI. *Hyperbolè* is extravagant exaggeration, in which the imagination is indulged beyond the sobriety of truth; as,

“ The sky shrunk upward with unusual dread,
 And trembling Tiber div’d beneath his bed.” *Dryden.*

VII. *Vision*, or *Imagery*, is a figure by which the speaker represents the objects of his imagination, as actual-

ly before his eyes and present to his senses ; as,

“ I see the dagger-crest of Mar !
I see the Moray’s silver star
Wave o’er the cloud of Saxon war,
That up the lake comes winding far !”—*Scott*.

VIII. *Apostrophè* is a turning from the regular course of the subject, into an animated address ; as, “ Death is swallowed up in victory. O Death ! where is thy sting ? O Grave ! where is thy victory ?”—1 *Cor.* xv. 54, 55.

IX. *Personification* is a figure by which, in imagination, we ascribe intelligence and personality to unintelligent beings or abstract qualities ; as,

“ The *Worm*, aware of his intent,
Harangued him thus, right eloquent.”—*Comper*.
“ Lo, steel-clad *War* his gorgeous standard rears !” *Reg*.
“ Hark ! *Truth* proclaims, thy triumphs cease.”—*Id*.

X. *Erotesis* is a figure in which the speaker adopts the form of interrogation, not to express a doubt, but, in general, confidently to assert the reverse of what is asked ; as, “ Hast thou an arm like God ? or canst thou thunder with a voice like him ?”—*Job* xl. 9. “ He that planted the ear, shall he not hear ? He that formed the eye, shall he not see ?”—*Ps.* xciv. 9.

XI. *Ecphonesis* is a pathetic exclamation, denoting some violent emotion of the mind ; as, “ O liberty !—O sound once delightful to every Roman ear !—O sacred privilege of Roman citizenship !—once sacred—now trampled upon !”—*Cicero*. “ O that I had wings like a dove ! for then would I fly away, and be at rest !”—*Ps.* lv. 6.

XII. *Antithesis* is a placing of things in opposition, to heighten their effect by contrast ; as,

“ Contrasted faults through all their manners reign ;
Though poor, *luxurious* ; though *submissive*, *vain* ;
Though grave, yet *trifling* ; *zealous*, yet *untrue* ;
And, e’en in penance, *planning sins* anew.”—*Golds*.

XIII. *Climax* is a figure in which the sense is made to advance by successive steps, to rise gradually to what is more and more important and interesting, or to descend to what is more and more minute and particular ; as, “ And

besides this, giving all diligence, add to your faith, virtue; and to virtue, knowledge; and to knowledge, temperance; and to temperance, patience; and to patience, godliness; and to godliness, brotherly kindness; and to brotherly kindness, charity."—2 *Pet.* i. 5.

XIV. *Irony* is a figure in which the speaker sneeringly utters the direct reverse of what he intends shall be understood; as, "We have, to be sure, great reason to believe the modest man would not ask him for his debt, when he pursues his life."—*Cicero*.

VERSIFICATION.

Versification is the art of arranging words into lines of correspondent length, so as to produce harmony by the regular alternation of syllables differing in quantity.

The *Quantity* of a syllable, is the relative portion of time occupied in uttering it. In poetry, every syllable is considered to be either long or short. A long syllable is said to be equal to two short ones. The quantity of a syllable, does not depend on the sound of the vowel or diphthong, but, principally, on the degree of accentual force with which the syllable is uttered, whereby a greater or less portion of time is employed. The open vowel sounds are those which are the most easily protracted, yet they often occur in the shortest and feeblest syllables. Most monosyllables are variable, and may be made either long or short, as suits the rhythm. In words of greater length, the accented syllable is always long; and a syllable immediately before or after that which is accented, is always short.

Rhyme is a similarity of sound, between the last syllables of different lines. The principal rhyming syllables are almost always long. Double rhyme adds one short syllable; triple rhyme, two. Such syllables are redundant, in iambic and anapæstic verses.

Blank verse is verse without rhyme.

A line of poetry consists of successive combinations of

syllables, called *feet*. A poetic foot consists either of two or of three syllables. The principal English feet are the *Iambus*, the *Trochee*, the *Anapæst*, and the *Dactyl*.

1. The *Iambus* consists of a short syllable and a long one; as, *bêtrây*, *cōnfæss*.

2. The *Trochee* consists of a long syllable and a short one; as *hâtcfûl*, *pëttîsh*.

3. The *Anapæst* consists of two short syllables and one long one; as, *cōntrāvēne*, *âcquîtesce*.

4. The *Dactyl* consists of one long syllable and two short ones; as, *lâbôurër*, *pōssîblë*.*

We have, accordingly, four kinds of verse, or poetic measure; *Iambic*, *Trochaic*, *Anapæstic*, and *Dactylic*. The more pure these several kinds are preserved, the more complete is the chime of the verse. But poets generally indulge some variety; not so much, however, as to confound the drift of the rhythmical pulsations.

Scanning is the dividing of verses into the feet which compose them.

I. OF IAMBIC VERSE.

In Iambic verse, the stress is laid on the even syllables. It consists of the following measures.

1. Iambic of Seven feet.

Thē Lōrd | dēscēn|dēd frōm | ābōve, | ānd bōw'd | the
hēav|ēns hīgh.

Modern poets have divided this kind of verse, into alternate lines of four and of three feet: thus,

O blīnd | tō ēach | īndū|gēnt āim

Of pōw'r | sūprēmē|ļy wīse,

Whō fan|cy hap|piness | in aught

The hand | of heav'n | denies!

2. Iambic of Six feet, or Hexameter.

Thy rēalm | fōrēv|ēr lāsts, | thy ōwn | Mēssī|āh rēigns.

This is the *Alexandrine*; it is seldom used except to complete a stanza in an ode, or occasionally to close a period in heroic rhyme. French heroics are similar to this.

3. Iambic of Five feet, or Pentameter.

Fōr prāise | tōo dēar|ļy lōv'd | ōr wārm|ļy sōught,

Enfee|bles all | inter|nal strength | of thought.

With sōl|ēmn ād|ōrā|tiōn dōwn | thēy cāst
 Their crowns | inwove | with am|arant | and gold.

This is the regular English *heroic*. It is, perhaps, the only measure suitable for blank verse.

The *Elegiac stanza* consists of four heroics rhyming alternately ; as,

Enough | has Heav'n | indulg'd | of joy | below,
 To tempt | our tar|riance in | this lov'd | retreat ;
 Enough | has Heav'n | ordain'd | of use|ful wo,
 To make | us lang|uish for | a hap|pier seat.

4. Iambic of Four feet.

Thē jōys | ābōve | āre ūn|dērstōod
 And rel|ish'd on|ly by | the good.

5. Iambic of Three feet.

Blūe līght|'nīngs tīnge | thē wāve,
 And thun|der rends | the rock.

6. Iambic of Two feet.

Thēir lōve | ānd āwe
 Supply | the law.

7. Iambic of One foot.

Hōw brīght,
 The light !

The last three measures are seldom found, except in connexion with longer verses.

In iambic verse, the first foot is often varied, by introducing a trochee ; as,

Plānēts | ānd sūns | rŭn lāw|lēss thrōugh | thē skȳ.

By a synæresis of the two short syllables, an anapæst may sometimes be employed for an iambus; or a dactyl, for a trochee : as, *O'er mā|ny ā frō|zēn, mā|ny ā fī|rȳ ālp.*

II. OF TROCHAIC VERSE.

In Trochaic verse, the stress is laid on the odd syllables. Single-rhymed trochaic omits the final short syllable, that it may end with a long one. This kind of verse is the same

as iambic without the initial short syllable. Iambics and trochaics often occur in the same poem.

1. Trochaic of Six feet.

On ă | mōuntăin | strēch'd bē|nēath ă | hōarŷ | wīllōw,
Lay a | shepherd | swain, and | view'd the | rolling | billow.

2. Trochaic of Five feet.

Vīrtūe's | brīght'nīng | rāy shāll | bēam fōr | ēvēr.

Single rhyme.

Idlē | āftēr | dīnnēr | īn hīs | chāir,
Sat a | farmer | ruddy | fat and | fair.

3. Trochaic of Four feet.

Rōund ă | hōlŷ | cālm dīf|fūsīng,
Love of | peace and | lonely | musing.

Single rhyme.

Rēstlēss | mōrtāls | tōil fōr | nāught;
Bliss in | vain from | earth is | sought.

4. Trochaic of Three feet.

Whēn ōur | heārts āre | mōurnīng.

Single rhyme.

In thē | dāys ōf | ōld,
Stories | plainly | told—

5. Trochaic of Two feet.

Fāncŷ | viēwīng
Joys en|suing.

Single rhyme.

Tūmūlt | cēase,
Sink to-| peace.

6. Trochaic of One foot.

Chāngīng,
Rangīng.

III. ANAPÆSTIC VERSE.

In Anapæstic verse the stress is laid on every third syllable. The first foot of an anapæstic line, may be an iambus.

1. Anapæstic of Four feet.

At the clōse | of the dāy | when the hām|let is still,
And mor|tals the sweets | of forget|fulness prove.

2. Anapæstic of Three feet.

I am mōn|arch of āll | I sŭrvēy ;
My right | there is none | to dispute.

3. Anapæstic of Two feet.

When I lōok | on mŷ bōys,
They renew | all my joys.

4. Anapæstic of One foot.

On the lānd
Let me stand.

IV. OF DACTYLIC VERSE.

In pure dactylic verse, the stress is laid on the first, the fourth, the seventh, and the tenth syllable. Full dactylic generally forms triple rhyme. When one of the final short syllables is omitted, the rhyme is double ; when both, single. Dactylic with single rhyme, is the same as anapæstic without its initial short syllables. Dactylic measure is uncommon ; and, when employed, is seldom perfectly regular.

1. Dactylic of Four feet.

Bōys will an|ticipāte, | lāvish and | dissīpāte
All that yōur | būsŷ pāte | hōardēd with | cāre ;
And, in their | foolishness, | passion, and | mulishness,
Charge you with | churlishness, | spurning your | pray'r.

2. Dactylic of Three feet.

Evēr sing | mērrily, | mērrily.

3. Dactylic of Two feet.

Frēe frōm sā|tiētŷ,
Care, and anx|iety,
Charms in va|riety,
Fall to his | share.

4. Dactylic of One foot.

Fēarfūllŷ,
'Tearfully.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING,

(CHAPTER IX.)

In which are exemplified the several Figures of Etymology, of Syntax, and of Rhetoric; and in which the pupil may also be exercised in relation to the principles of Punctuation, Utterance, and Versification.

LESSON I.

FIGURES OF ETYMOLOGY.

Bend 'gainst the steepy hill thy breast,
Burst down like torrent from its crest.—*Scott.*

'Tis mine to teach *th'* inactive hand to reap
Kind nature's bounties, o'er the globe *diffus'd*.—*Dyer.*

Alas! alas! how impotently true
Th' ærial pencil forms the scene anew.—*Canthorne.*

Here a deformed monster *joy'd* to won,
Which on fell rancour ever was *ybent*.—*Lloyd.*

Withouten tromp was proclamation made.—*Thomson.*

The gentle knight, who saw their rueful case,
Let fall *adown* his silver beard some tears.

'Certes,' quoth he, 'it is not *e'en* in grace,
T' undo the past and eke your broken years.'—*Idem.*

Vain *tamp'ring* has but *foster'd* his disease;
'*Tis desp'rate*, and he sleeps the sleep of death.—*Conper.*

I have a pain upon my forehead here—
Why *that's* with watching; 'twill away again.—*Shak.*

I'll to the woods, among the happier brutes:
Come, *let's* away; hark! the shrill horn resounds.—*Smith.*

What prayer and supplication *soever* be made.—*Bible.*

By the grace of God we have had our conversation in
the world, and more abundantly to you *ward*.—*Idem.*

LESSON. II.

FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

1. And now he faintly kens the bounding fawn,
And [—] villager abroad at early toil.—*Beattie*.
The cottage curs at [—] early pilgrim bark.—*Idem*.
'Tis granted, and no plainer truth appears,
Our most important [—] are our earliest years.—*Comper*.
To earn her aid, with fix'd and anxious eye,
He looks on nature's [—] and on fortune's course;
Too much in vain.—*Akenside*.
True dignity is his, whose tranquil mind
Virtue has rais'd above the things [—] below;
Who, ev'ry hope and [—] fear to Heav'n resign'd,
Shrinks not, though Fortune aim her deadliest blow.
For longer in that paradise to dwell,
The law [—] I gave to nature, him forbids.—*Milton*.
So little mercy shows [—] who needs so much.—*Comper*.
Bliss is the same in subject as in king,
In [—] who obtain defence, and [—] who defend.—*Pope*.
Man made for kings! those optics are but dim
That tell you so—say rather, they [—] for him.—*Comper*.
Man may dismiss compassion from his heart,
But God will never [—————].—*Idem*.
Mortals whose pleasures are their only care,
First wish to be impos'd on, and then are [—].—*Idem*.
Vigour[—]from toil, from trouble patience grows.—*Beattie*.
Where now the rill, melodious, [—] pure, and cool,
And meads, with life, and mirth, and beauty crown'd?
How dead the vegetable kingdom lies!
How dumb the tuneful [—————]!—*Thomson*.
Self-love and Reason to one end aspire,
Pain [—] their aversion, pleasure [—] their desire;
But greedy that its object would devour,
This [—] taste the honey, and not wound the flower.

LESSON III.

2. *According* to their deeds, *accordingly* he will repay, fury to his adversaries, recompense to his enemies.—*Bible*.

My head is filled with dew, and my locks with the drops of the night.—*Idem*.

Thou hast chastised me, and *I was chastised*, as a bullock unaccustomed to the yoke: turn thou me, and *I shall be turned*; for thou art the Lord my God.—*Idem*.

Consider the *lilies* of the field how *they* grow —*Idem*.

He that glorieth, let *him* glory in the Lord.—*Idem*.

He too is witness, noblest of the train

That wait on man, the flight-performing horse.—*Conper*.

3. Thou art Simon the son of Jona: thou shalt be called *Cephas*; which is, by interpretation, a stone.—*Bible*.

Thus saith the Lord of hosts: 'Behold I will break the bow of *Elam*, the chief of *their* might.—*Idem*.

Behold I lay in Zion a *stumbling-stone* and *rock* of offence; and whosoever believeth on *him* shall not be ashamed.—*Idem*.

Thus *Conscience* pleads *her* cause within the breast,
Though long rebell'd against, not yet suppress'd.—*Comp*.

Knowledge is proud that *he* has learn'd so much;
Wisdom is humble that *he* knows no more.—*Idem*.

For those the *race* of Israel oft forsook
Their living *strength*, and unfrequented left
His righteous altar, bowing lowly down
To bestial gods.—*Milton*.

LESSON IV.

4. Come Philomelus; let us *instant* go,
O'erturn his bow'rs, and lay his castle low.—*Thomson*.

Then palaces shall rise; the joyful son
Shall finish what the shortliv'd sire begun.—*Pope*.

Such was that temple built by Solomon,
Than *whom* none richer reign'd o'er Israel.

He spoke: with fatal eagerness we burn,
And quit the shores, undestin'd to return.—*Day*.

Still as he pass'd, the nations he *sublimes*.—*Thomson*.

Sometimes, with early morn, he mounted *gay*.—*Idem*.

5. Such *resting found the sole* of unblest feet.—*Milton*.

Yet, though successless, *will the toil* delight.—*Thomson*.

Where, 'midst the changeful scen'ry ever new,
Fancy a thousand wondrous *forms* describes.—*Beattie*.

Yet so much bounty is in God, such grace,
That who advance his glory, not their own,
Them he himself to glory will advance.—*Milton*.

But *apt* the mind or fancy is to rove
Uncheck'd; and of her roving is no *end*.—*Idem*.

No quick *reply* to dubious questions make;
Suspense and caution still prevent mistake.—*Denham*.

LESSON V.

FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

1. Human greatness is short and transitory, *as the odour of incense in the fire*.—*Dr. Johnson*.

Terrestrial happiness is of short continuance: *the brightness of the flame is wasting its fuel, the fragrant flower is passing away in its own odours*.—*Idem*.

Thy nod is *as the earthquake that shakes the mountains*; and thy smile, *as the dawn of the vernal day*.—*Id.*

Plants rais'd with tenderness are seldom strong;
Man's coltish disposition asks the thong;
And, without discipline, the fav'rite child,
Like a neglected forester, runs wild.—*Conper*.

2. Cathmon, thy name is a pleasant *gale*.—*Ossian*.

Rolled into himself he flew, wide on the *bosom of winds*.
The old *oak* felt his departure, and *shook* its whistling head.—*Idem*.

Carazan gradually lost the inclination to do good, as he acquired the power; and as the *hand of time* scattered snow upon his head, the *freezing influence* extended to his bosom.—*Hawkesworth*.

The sun *grew weary* of gilding the palaces of Morad;
the *clouds of sorrow* gathered round his head; and the *tempest of hatred* roared about his dwelling.—*Johnson*.

The *tree of knowledge*, blasted by disputes,
Produces sapless leaves in stead of fruits.—*Denham*.

LESSON VI.

3. But what think ye? A certain man had two sons;
and he came to the first, and said, 'Son, go work to-day
in my vineyard.' He answered and said, 'I will not.' but
afterward he repented, and went. And he came to the
second, and said likewise. And he answered and said,
'I go, sir:' and went not. Whether of them twain did the
will of his father? They said unto him, 'The first.'—*Mat.*
xxi. 28.

4. Swifter than a whirlwind, flies the leaden *death*.—*Hervey*.
'Be all the dead forgot,' said Foldath's bursting *wrath*.
'Did not I fail in the field?'—*Ossian*.

Their *furrow* oft the stubborn glebe has broke.—*Gray*.

Firm in his love, resistless in his hate,
His arm is *conquest*, and his frown is *fate*.—*Day*.

At length the *world*, renew'd by calm repose,
Was strong for toil; the dappled morn arose.—*Parnell*.

What modes of sight betwixt each wide extreme,
The mole's dim curtain and the lynx's *beam*!

Of hearing from the *life* that fills the flood,
To *that* which warbles through the vernal wood!—*Pope*.

5. 'Twas then his *threshold* first receiv'd a guest.—*Par*.

For yet by swains alone the world he knew,
Whose *feet* came wand'ring o'er the nightly dew.—*Id*.

Flush'd by the spirit of the genial *year*,
Now from the virgin's cheek a fresher bloom
Shoots, less and less, the live carnation round.—*Thoms*.

LESSON VII.

6. I saw their chief, tall as a rock of ice; his spear, the
blasted fir; his shield, the rising moon; he sat on the shore,
like a cloud of mist on the hill.—*Ossian*.

At which the universal host up sent
A shout that tore Hell's concave, and beyond
Frighted the reign of Chaos and old Night.—*Milton*.

Will all great Neptune's ocean wash this blood
Clean from my hand? No; this my hand will rather
The multitudinous seas incarnadine,
Making the green one red.—*Shak.*

Endless tears flow down in streams.—*Swift.*

7. How powerfully do they contend who fight with lawful weapons! Hark! 'Tis the voice of eloquence, pouring forth the living energies of the soul; pleading, with generous indignation, the cause of injured humanity against lawless might, and reading the awful destiny that awaits the oppressor!—I see the stern countenance of Despotism over-awed! I see the eye fallen that kindled the elements of war! I see the brow relaxed that scowled defiance at hostile thousands! I see the knees tremble that trod with firmness the embattled field! Fear has entered that heart which ambition had betrayed into violence! The tyrant feels himself a man, and subject to the weakness of humanity!—Behold! and tell me, is that power contemptible which can thus find access to the sternest hearts?

LESSON VIII.

8. Yet still they breathe destruction, still go on
Inhumanly ingenious to find out
New pains for life, new terrors for the grave;
Artificers of death! Still monarchs dream
Of universal empire growing up
From universal ruin. *Blast the design,
Great God of Hosts! nor let thy creatures fall
Unpitied victims at Ambition's shrine.—Porteus.*
9. Hail, sacred *Polity*, by *Freedom* rear'd!
Hail, sacred *Freedom*, when by *Law* restrain'd!
Without you, what were man? A grovelling herd,
In darkness, wretchedness, and want, enchain'd.—*Beat.*
Let cheerful *Mem'ry*, from her purest cells,
Lead forth a goodly train of *Virtues* fair,
Cherish'd in early youth, now paying back
With tenfold usury the pious care.—*Porteus.*
10. He that chastiseth the heathen, shall he not correct?
He that teacheth man knowledge, shall he not know?
Can the Ethiopian change his skin, or the Leopard his

spots? then may ye also do good, that are accustomed to do evil.--*Jeremiah*.

11. O that my head were waters, and mine eyes a fountain of tears, that I might weep day and night for the slain of the daughter of my people! O that I had in the wilderness a lodging place of way-faring men, that I might leave my people, and go from them!--*Idem*.

LESSON IX.

12. On this side modesty is engaged; on that, impudence: on this, chastity; on that, lewdness: on this, integrity; on that, fraud: on this, piety; on that, profaneness: on this, constancy; on that, fickleness: on this, honour; on that, baseness: on this, moderation; on that, unbridled passion.--*Cicero*.

She from the rending earth, and bursting skies,
Saw gods descend, and fiends infernal rise;
Here fix'd the dreadful, there the blest abodes,
Fear made her devils, and weak hope her gods.--*Pope*.

13. Virtuous actions are necessarily approved by the awakened conscience; and when they are approved, they are commended to practice; and when they are practised, they become easy; and when they become easy, they afford pleasure; and when they afford pleasure, they are done frequently; and when they are done frequently, they are confirmed by habit: and confirmed habit is a kind of second nature.

14. And it came to pass at noon, that Elijah mocked them, and said, 'Cry aloud; for he is a god; either he is talking, or he is pursuing, or he is in [on] a journey, or peradventure he sleepeth, and must be awaked.'--*1 Kings*.

Some lead a life unblamable and just,
Their own dear virtue their unshaken trust;
They never sin—or if (as all offend)
Some trivial slips their daily walk attend,
The poor are near at hand, the charge is small,
A slight gratuity atones for all.--*Comper*.

QUESTIONS ON PROSODY.

Of what does Prosody treat?

What is PUNCTUATION?

What are the principal points, or marks?

What is the proportion of the pauses denoted by the comma, the semicolon, the colon, and the period?

What pauses are required by the other four?

What is the use of the comma?

How many rules are there for the comma?

What is Rule first for the comma?

What is the exception to rule first?

What is Rule second for the comma?

What is the first exception to rule second?

What is the second exception to rule second?

What is Rule third for the comma?

When are words in the same construction?

What is Rule fourth for the comma?

What is the first exception to rule fourth?

What is the second exception to rule fourth?

What is the third exception to rule fourth?

What is the fourth exception to rule fourth?

What is Rule fifth for the comma?

What is Rule sixth for the comma?

What is Rule seventh for the comma?

What is the first exception to rule seventh?

What is the second exception to rule seventh?

What is the third exception to rule seventh?

What is the fourth exception to rule seventh?

What is Rule eighth for the comma?

What is the exception to rule eighth?

What is Rule ninth for the comma?

What is Rule tenth for the comma?

What is Rule eleventh for the comma?

What is the exception to rule eleventh?

What is Rule twelfth for the comma?

What is Rule thirteenth for the comma?

What is Rule fourteenth for the comma?

What is Rule fifteenth for the comma?

What is Rule sixteenth for the comma?

What is Rule seventeenth for the comma?

What is the use of the semicolon?

- How many rules are there for the semicolon ?
 What is Rule first for the semicolon ?
 What is Rule second for the semicolon ?
 What is Rule third for the semicolon ?
 What is the use of the colon ?
 How many rules are there for the colon ?
 What is Rule first for the colon ?
 What is Rule second for the colon ?
 What is Rule third for the colon ?
 What is the use of the period ?
 How many rules are there for the period ?
 What is Rule first for the period ?
 What is Rule second for the period ?
 What is Rule third for the period ?
 What is the use of the dash ?
 How many rules are there for the dash ?
 What is Rule first for the dash ?
 What is Rule second for the dash ?
 What is the use of the note of interrogation ?
 How many rules are there for the note of interrogation ?
 What is Rule first for the note of interrogation ?
 What is Rule second for the note of interrogation ?
 What is Rule third for the note of interrogation ?
 What is the use of the note of exclamation ?
 How many rules are there for the note of exclamation ?
 What is Rule first for the note of exclamation ?
 What is Rule second for the note of exclamation ?
 What is Rule third for the note of exclamation ?
 What is the use of the parenthesis ?
 How should the incidental clause be uttered ?
 How many rules are there for the parenthesis ?
 What is Rule first for the parenthesis ?
 What is Rule second for the parenthesis ?
 Are there any other marks used in printing ?
 What does the apostrophè denote ?
 What is the use of the hyphen ?
 How is the diæresis employed ?
 What is the use of the acute accent ?
 What is the use of the grave accent ?
 What is the use of the circumflex ?
 For what purpose is the breve employed ?
 For what purpose is the macron employed ?

- What does the ellipsis denote ?
 What does the caret show ?
 What is the use of the brace ?
 What does the section mark ?
 What does the paragraph denote ?
 How is a new subject generally distinguished ?
 What do the quotation points denote ?
 What is the use of crotchets ?
 What does the index point out ?
 To what do the asterisk, the obelisk, and the parallels refer ?
 What is **UTTERANCE** ? and what does it include ?
 What is pronunciation ?
 What does pronunciation require ?
 What is accent ?
 Is every word accented ?
 Can a word have more than one accent ?
 What niceties of pronunciation distinguish the elegant speaker ?
 What is elocution ?
 What does elocution require ?
 What is emphasis ?
 What are pauses ?
 What are inflections ?
 What is the rising inflection ?
 What is the falling inflection ?
 How are these inflections applied in asking questions ?
 What are tones ?
 What is a **FIGURE** in grammar ?
 How many kinds of figures are there ?
 What is a figure of etymology ?
 How many and what are the figures of etymology ?
 What is aphæresis ?
 What is prosthesis ?
 What is syncope ?
 What is apocope ?
 What is paragoge ?
 What is diæresis ?
 What is synæresis ?
 What is tmesis ?
 What is a figure of syntax ?
 How many and what are the figures of syntax ?
 What is ellipsis ?

- Are sentences often elliptical?
- Exemplify ellipsis by all the parts of speech.
- What is pleonasm?
- What is enallagè?
- What is hyperbaton?
- What is a figure of rhetoric?
- On what are the figures of rhetoric founded?
- How many and what are the figures of rhetoric?
- What is a simîle?
- What is a metaphor?
- What is an allegory?
- What is a metonymy?
- What is synecdochè?
- What is hyperbolè?
- What is vision?
- What is apostrophè?
- What is personification?
- What is erotesis?
- What is ecphonesis?
- What is antithesis?
- What is climax?
- What is irony?
- What is VERSIFICATION?
- What is quantity?
- What is rhyme?
- What is blank verse?
- What are the principal English feet?
- What is an iambus?
- What is a trochee?
- What is an anapæst?
- What is a dactyl?
- How many kinds of verse are there?
- What is *Scanning*?
- What syllables are accented in an iambic line?
- What are the several measures of iambic verse?
- What syllables are accented in a trochaic line?
- What are the several measures of trochaic verse?
- What syllables are accented in an anapæstic line?
- What are the several measures of anapæstic verse?
- What syllables are accented in a dactylic line?
- What are the several measures of dactylic verse?

EXERCISES IN PROSODY.

When the pupil can readily answer all the questions on Prosody, and apply the rules of punctuation to any composition in which the points are rightly inserted, he should write out the following exercises, supplying what is required.

EXERCISE I.—PUNCTUATION.

Copy the following sentences, and insert the comma where it is requisite.

COM. RULE I. The dogmatist's assurance is paramount to argument.

The whole course of his argumentation comes to nothing.

The fieldmouse builds her garner under ground.

Ex. The first principles of almost all sciences are few.

What he gave me to publish was but a small part.

To remain insensible to such provocation is apathy.

Minds ashamed of poverty would be proud of affluence.

R. II. I was eyes to the blind and feet was I to the lame.

They are gone but the remembrance of them is sweet.

He has passed it is likely through varieties of fortune.

The mind though free has a governor within itself.

They I doubt not oppose the bill on public principles.

Be silent be grateful and adore.

He is an adept in language who always speaks the truth.

The race is not to the swift nor the battle to the strong.

Ex. 1. Hobbes believed the eternal truths which he opposed.

He that has far to go should not hurry.

Feeble are all pleasures in which the heart has no share.

Ex. 2. A good name is better than precious ointment.

Thinkst thou that duty shall have dread to speak?

The spleen is seldom felt where Flora reigns.

R. III. The city army court espouse my cause.

Wars pestilences and diseases are terrible instructors.

Walk daily in a pleasant airy and umbrageous garden.

Wit spirits faculties but make it worse.

Men wives and children stare cry out and run.

R. IV. Hope and fear are essentials in religion.

Praise and adoration are perfective of our souls.
 We know bodies and their properties most perfectly.
 Satisfy yourselves with what is rational and attainable.

Ex. 1. God will rather look to the inward motions of the mind than to the outward form of the body.

Gentleness is unassuming in opinion and temperate in zeal.

Ex. 2. He has experienced prosperity and adversity.
 All sin essentially is and must be mortal.

Ex. 3. One person is chosen chairman or moderator.
 Duration or time is measured by motion.
 The governor or viceroy is chosen annually.

Ex. 4. Reflection reason still the ties improve.
 His neat plain parlour wants our modern style.

R. V. I inquired and rejected consulted and deliberated.
 Seed time and harvest cold and heat summer and winter
 day and night shall not cease.

EXERCISE II.—PUNCTUATION.

Copy the following sentences, and insert the comma where it is requisite.

Com. R. VI. The night being dark they did not proceed.
 There being no other coach we had no alternative.
 Remember my son that human life is the journey of a day.
 All circumstances considered it seems right.
 He that overcometh to him will I give power.
 Your land strangers devour it in your presence.
 Ah sinful nation a people laden with iniquity !

With heads declin'd ye cedars homage pay ;
 Be smooth ye rocks ye rapid floods give way !

R. VII. Now Philomel sweet songstress charms the night.
 'Tis chanticleer the shepherd's clock announcing day.
 The evening star love's harbinger appears.
 The queen of night fair Dian smiles serene.
 There is yet one man Micaiah the son of Imlah.
 Our whole company man by man ventured down.
 As a work of wit the Dunciad has few equals.

In the same temple the resounding wood
 All vocal beings hymned their equal God.

Ex. 1. The last king of Rome was Tarquinius Superbus.
Bossuet highly eulogizes Maria Theresa of Austria.

Ex. 2. For he went and dwelt by the brook Cherith.
Remember the example of the patriarch Joseph.

Ex. 3. I wisdom dwell with prudence.
Ye fools be ye of an understanding heart.
I tell you that which you yourselves do know.

Ex. 4. I crown thee king of intimate delights.
I count the world a stranger for thy sake.
And this makes friends such miracles below.
God hath pronounced it death to taste that tree.
Grace makes the slave a freeman.

R. VIII. Deaf with the noise I took my hasty flight.
Him piteous of his youth soft disengage.
I played a while obedient to the fair.
Love free as air spreads his light wings and flies.

Then active still and unconfin'd his mind
Explores the vast extent of ages past.

But there is yet a liberty unsung
By poets and by senators unpraised.

Ex. I will marry a wife beautiful as the Houries.
He was a man able to speak upon doubtful questions.
These are the persons anxious for the change.
Are they men worthy of confidence and support?

R. IX Poverty wants some things—avarice all things.
Honesty has one face—flattery two.
One king is too soft and easy—an other too fiery.
Mankind's esteem they court--and he his own:
Theirs the wild chase of false felicities;
His the compos'd possession of the true.

EXERCISE III.--PUNCTUATION.

Copy the following sentences, and insert the comma where it is requisite.

Com. R. X. My desire is to live in peace.
The great difficulty was to compel them to pay their debts.
To strengthen our virtue God bids us trust in him.
I made no bargain with you to live always drudging.
To sum up all her tongue confessed the shrew.

To proceed my own adventure was still more laughable.

We come not with design of wasteful prey
To drive the country force the swains away.

R. XI. Having given this answer he departed.
Some sunk to beasts find pleasure end in pain.
Eased of her load subjection grows more light.
Death still draws nearer never seeming near.
He lies full low gored with wounds and weltering in his blood.

Kind is fell Lucifer compared to thee.
Man considered in himself is helpless and wretched.
Like scattered down by howling Eurus blown.
He with wide nostrils snorting skims the wave.
Youth is properly speaking introductory to manhood.

Ex. He kept his eye fixed upon the country before him.
They have their part assigned them to act.
Years will not repair the injuries done by him.

R. XII. Yes we both were philosophers.
However providence saw fit to cross our design.
Besides I know that the eye of the public is upon me.
The fact certainly is much otherwise.
For nothing surely can be more inconsistent.

R. XIII. For in such retirement the soul is strengthened.
It engages our desires; and in some degree satisfies them.
But of every Christian virtue piety is an essential part.
The English verb is variable; as *love lovest loves*.

R. XIV. In a word charity is the soul of social life.
By the bowstring I can repress violence and fraud.
Some by being too artful forfeit the reputation of probity.
With regard to morality I was not indifferent.

R. XV. Lo earth receives him from the bending skies!
Behold I am against thee O inhabitant of the valley!

R. XVI. I would never consent never never never.
His teeth did chatter chatter chatter still.
Come come come come---to bed to bed to bed.

R. XVII. He ried 'Cause every man to go out from me.'
Almet' said he 'remember what thou hast seen.'
I answered 'Mock not thy servant, who is but a worm before thee'.

EXERCISE IV.—PUNCTUATION.

1. Copy the following sentences, and insert the comma and the semicolon where they are requisite.

SEM. R. I. 'Man is weak' answered his companion
'knowledge is more than equivalent to force.'

To judge rightly of the present we must oppose it to the past for all judgement is comparative and of the future nothing can be known.

'Content is natural wealth' says Socrates to which shall add 'luxury is artificial poverty.'

Converse and love mankind might strongly draw
When love was liberty and nature law.

SEM. R. II. Be wise to-day 'tis madness to defer.

The present all their care the future his.

Wit makes an enterpriser sense a man.

Ask thought for joy grow rich and hoard within.

Song soothes our pains and age has pains to soothe.

Here an enemy encounters there a rival supplants him.

Our answer to their reasons is No to their scoffs nothing.

SEM. R. III. In Latin there are six cases namely the nominative the genitive the dative the accusative the vocative and the ablative.

Most English nouns form the plural by adding *s* as *boy boys nation nations king kings bay bays*.

Bodies are such as are endued with a vegetable soul as plants a sensitive soul as animals or a rational soul as the body of man.

2. Copy the following sentences, and insert the comma, the semicolon, and the colon, where they are requisite.

COL. R. I. Death wounds to cure we fall we rise we reign.

Bliss is there none but unprecious bliss

That is the gem sell all and purchase that.

Beware of usurpation God is the judge of all.

COL. R. II. I have the world here before me I will review it at leisure surely happiness is somewhere to be found.

A melancholy enthusiast courts persecution and when he cannot obtain it afflicts himself with absurd penances but the holiness of St. Paul consisted in the simplicity of a pious life.

Observe his awful portrait and admire
Nor stop at wonder imitate and live.

COL. R. III. Such is our Lord's injunction "Watch and pray."

He died praying for his persecutors "Father forgive them they know not what they do."

On his cane was inscribed this motto "*Festina lentè.*"

3. Copy the following sentences, and insert the comma, the semicolon, the colon, and the period, where they are requisite.

PER. R. I. Then appeared the sea and the dry land the mountains rose and the rivers flowed the sun and moon began their course in the skies herbs and plants clothed the ground the air the earth and the waters were stored with their respective inhabitants at last man was made in the image of God

In general those parents have most reverence who most deserve it for he that lives well cannot be despised

PER. R. II. Civil accomplishments frequently give rise to fame but a distinction is to be made between fame and true honour the statesman the orator or the poet may be famous while yet the man himself is far from being honoured

PER. R. III. Glass was invented in England by Benalt a monk A D 664

The Roman era U C commenced A C 753 years

Here is the Literary Life of S T Coleridge Esq

EXERCISE V.—PUNCTUATION.

1. Copy the following sentences, and insert the dash, and such other points as are necessary.

R. I. You say *famous* very often and I don't know exactly what it means a *famous* uniform *famous* doings What does famous mean

O why *famous* means Now don't you know what *famous* means It means It is a word that people say It is the fashion to say it It means it means *famous*

R. II. But this life is not all there is full surely an other
state abiding us And if there is what is thy prospect
O remorseless obdurate Thou shalt hear it would be
thy wisdom to think thou now hearest the sound of
that trumpet which shall awake the dead Return O
yet return to the Father of mercies and live

The future pleases Why The present pains
But that's a secret yes which all men know

2. Copy the following sentences, and insert the note of
interrogation, and such other points as are necessary.

R. I. Does Nature bear a tyrant's breast
Is she the friend of stern control
Wears she the despot's purple vest
Or fetters she the free-born soul

Why should a man whose blood is warm within
Sit like his grandsire cut in alabaster

Who art thou courteous stranger and from whence
Why roam thy steps to this abandon'd dale

R. II. Who bid the stork Columbus-like explore
Heavens not his own and worlds unknown before
Who calls the council states the certain day
Who forms the phalanx and who points the way

R. III. Ask of thy mother Earth why oaks are made
Taller and stronger than the weeds they shade

They asked me who I was and whither I was going

3. Copy the following sentences, and insert the note
of exclamation, and such other points as are necessary.

R. I. Alas how is that rugged heart forlorn

Behold the victor vanquish'd by the worm

Bliss sublunary bliss proud words and vain

R. II. O Popular Applause what heart of man
Is proof against thy sweet seducing charms

More than thy balm O Gilead heals the wound

R. III. How often have I loiter'd o'er thy green
Where humble happiness endear'd each scene

What black despair what horror fills his heart

4. Copy the following sentences, and insert the paren-
thesis, and such other points as are necessary.

- R. I. And all the question wrangle e'er so long
Is only this If God has plac'd him wrong
And who what God foretells who speaks in things
Still louder than in words shall dare deny
- R. II. Say was it virtue more though Heav'n ne'er gave
Lamented Digby sunk thee to the grave
Where is that thrift that avarice of time
O glorious avarice thought of death inspires
And oh the last last what can words express
Thought reach the last last silence of a friend

EXERCISE VI. PUNCTUATION.

Copy the following promiscuous sentences, and insert the points which they require.

As one of them opened his sack he espied his money
They cried out the more exceedingly Crucify him
The soldiers' counsel was to kill the prisoners
Great injury these vermin mice and rats do in the field
It is my son's coat an evil beast hath devoured him
Peace of all worldly blessings is the most valuable
By this time the very foundation was removed
The only words he uttered were I am a Roman citizen
Some distress either felt or feared gnaws like a worm
How then must I determine Have I no interest If I have
not I am stationed here to no purpose
In the fire the destruction was so swift sudden vast and
miserable as to have no parallel in story
Dionysius the tyrant of Sicily was far from being happy
I ask now Verres what thou hast to advance
Excess began and sloth sustains the trade
Fame can never reconcile a man to a death bed
They that sail on the sea tell of the danger
Be doers of the word and not hearers only
The storms of wint'ry time will quickly pass
Here Hope that smiling angel stands
Disguise I see thou art a wickedness
There are no tricks in plain and simple faith
True love strikes root in reason passion's foe
Two gods divide them all Pleasure and Gain

I am satisfied My son has done his duty
 Remember Almet the vision which thou hast seen
 I beheld an enclosure beautiful as the gardens of paradise
 The knowledge which I have received I will communicate
 But I am not yet happy and therefore I despair
 Wretched mortals said I to what purpose are you busy
 Bad as the world is respect is always paid to virtue
 In a word he views men in the clear sunshine of charity
 This being the case I am astonished and amazed
 These men approached him and saluted him king
 Excellent and obliging sages these undoubtedly
 Yet at the same time the man himself undergoes a change
 One constant effect of idleness is to nourish the passions
 You heroes regard nothing but glory
 Take care lest while you strive to reach the top you fall
 Proud and presumptuous they can brook no opposition
 Nay some awe of religion may still subsist
 Then said he Lo I come to do thy will O God
 As for me behold I am in your hand
 Now I Paul myself beseech you
 He who lives always in public cannot live to his own soul
 whereas he who retires remains calm
 Therefore behold I even I will utterly forget you
 This text speaks only of those to whom it speaks
 Yea he warmeth himself and saith Aha I am warm
 King Agrippa believest thou the prophets

EXERCISE VII.--PUNCTUATION.

Copy the following promiscuous sentences, and insert the points which they require.

To whom can riches give repute or trust
 Content or pleasure but the good and just
 To him no high no low no great no small
 He fills he bounds connects and equals all
 Reason's whole pleasure all the joys of sense
 Lie in three words health peace and competence
 No so for once indulg'd they sweep the main
 Deaf to the call or hearing hear in vain
 Say will the falcon stooping from above
 Smit with her varying plumage spare the dove

Throw Egypt's by and offer in its stead
Offer the crown on Berenice's head
Falsely luxurious will not man awake
And spinging from the bed of sloth enjoy
The cool the fragrant and the silent hour
Yet thus it is nor otherwise can be
So far from ought romantic what I sing
Thyself first know then love a self there is
Of virtue fond that kindles at her charms
How far that little candle throws his beams
So shines a good deed in a naughty world
You have too much respect upon the world
They lose it that do buy it with much care
How many things by season season'd are
To their right praise and true perfection
Canst thou descend from converse with the skies
And seize thy brother's throat for what a clod
In two short precepts all your business lies
Would you be great *be virtuous and be wise*
But sometimes virtue starves while vice is fed
What then is the reward of virtue bread
A life all turbulence and noise may seem
To him that leads it wise and to be prais'd
But wisdom is a pearl with most success
Sought in still waters and beneath clear skies
All but the swellings of the softened heart
That waken not disturb the tranquil mind
Inspiring God who boundless spirit all
And unremitting energy pervades
Adjusts sustains and agitates the whole
Ye ladies for indiff'rent in your cause
I should deserve to forfeit all applause
Whatever shocks or gives the least offence
To virtue delicacy truth or sense
Try the criterion 'tis a faithful guide
Nor has nor can have scripture on its side

EXERCISE VIII.—SCANNING.

Divide the following verses into the feet which compose them, and mark the long and the short syllables.

Alone thou sitst above the everlasting hills,
And all immensity of space thy presence fills :
For thou alone art God—as God thy saints adore thee;
Jehovah is thy name—they have no gods before thee.

Up the dewy mountain, Health is bounding lightly;
On her brows a garland, twin'd with richest posies :
Gay is she, elate with hope, and smiling sprightly;
Redder is her cheek, and sweeter, than the rose is.

The impenitent sinner whom mercy empowers,
Dishonours that goodness which seeks to restore;
As the sands of the desert are water'd by showers,
Yet barren and fruitless remain as before.

Holy and pure are the pleasures of piety,
Drawn from the fountain of mercy and love;
Endless, exhaustless, exempt from satiety,
Rising unearthly, and soaring above.

The bolt that strikes the tow'ring cedar dead,
Oft passes harmless o'er the hazel's head.

Yet to their gen'ral's voice they soon obey'd
Innum'erable. As when the potent rod
Of Amram's son, in Egypt's evil day,
Wav'd round the coast, up call'd a pitchy cloud
Of locusts, warping on the eastern wind,
That o'er the realm of impious Pharaoh hung
Like night, and darken'd all the land of Nile.—*Mil.*

Thy name is dear—'tis virtue balm'd in love;
Yet e'en thy name a pensive sadness brings.
Ah! wo the day, our hearts were doom'd to prove,
That fondest love but points affliction's stings!

Zephyrs, moving bland, and breathing fragrant
With the sweetest odours of the spring,
O'er the winged boy, a thoughtless vagrant,
Slumb'ring in the grove, their perfumes fling.

When the winds o'er Gennesaret rear'd,
 And the billows tremendously rose,
 The Saviour but utter'd the word,
 They were hush'd to the calmest repose.
 Come from the mount of the leopard, spouse,
 Come from the den of the lion;
 Come to the tent of thy shepherd, spouse,
 Come to the mountain of Zion.

In the days of thy youth,
 Remember thy God:
 O forsake not his truth,
 Incur not his rod!

Constant and duteous,
 Meek as the dove,
 How art thou beauteous,
 Daughter of love!

ODE.

Led by the pow'r of song, and nature's love,
 Which raise the soul all vulgar themes above,
 The mountain grove
 Would Edwin rove,
 And seek the woody dell,
 Where noontide shadows fell,
 Cheering,
 Veering,
 Mov'd by the zephyr's swell.
 Nor less he lov'd (rude nature's child)
 The elemental conflict wild;
 When, fold on fold, above was pil'd
 The wat'ry swathe, careering on the wind.
 Such scenes he saw
 With solemn awe,
 As in the presence of th' Eternal mind.
 Fix'd he gaz'd,
 Tranc'd and rais'd,
 Sublimely rapt in awful pleasure undefin'd.
 Lo! now, within the deep ravine,
 A black impending cloud
 Infolds him in its shroud;

And dark and darker glooms the scene.
Through the thicket streaming,
Lightnings now are gleaming;
Thunders rolling dread,
Shake the mountain's head;
Nature's war
Echoes far
O'er ether borne.
That flash
The ash
Has scath'd and torn!
Now it rages;
Oaks of ages
Of their honours are retrench'd.
The tempest-driven
Cloud is riven;
And the thirsty land is drench'd.

THE END OF PART FOURTH.

A
KEY
TO THE
EXAMPLES OF FALSE CONSTRUCTION
DESIGNED FOR ORAL EXERCISES,
UNDER
THE RULES OF SYNTAX AND THE NOTES.

[THE examples of False Syntax here explained, should be corrected orally by the pupil, according to the formulæ given under the rules; and the following corrections may afterwards be used as examples for parsing, if necessary.]

RULE 1.

Note 1.

This is *a* hard saying.
An humble heart shall find favour.
Passing from an earthly to *a* heavenly diadem.
Few have the happiness of living with such *a* one.
She evinced *a* uniform adherence to the truth.
An hospital is an asylum for the sick.
This is truly *a* wonderful invention.
He is *a* younger man than we supposed.
A humorsome child is never long pleased.
A careless man is unfit for *an* hostler.

Note 2.

Avoid rude sports; an eye is soon lost, or *a* bone broken.
As the drop of the bucket, and *the* dust of the balance.
Not *a* word was uttered, nor *a* sign given.
I despise not the doer, but *the* deed.

Note 3.

What is the difference between the old and *the* new method.
The sixth and *the* tenth have a close resemblance.

Is Paris on the right hand, or *the* left ?
 Does Peru join the Atlantic, or *the* Pacific ocean ?
 He was influenced both by a just and *a* generous principle.
 The book was read by the old and *the* young.
 I have both the large and *the* small grammar.
 Is the north and south line measured ?
 Are the two north and south lines both measured ?
 Are both the north and *the* south line measured ?
 Are the north line and *the* south both measured ?
 Are both the north and *the* south lines measured ?
 Are both the north lines and *the* south measured ?

Note 4.

Cleon was an other sort of man.
 There is a species of animal called seal.
 Let us wait in patience and quietness.
 The contemplative mind delights in silence.
 Arithmetic is a branch of mathematics.
 You will never have an other such chance.
 I expected some such answer.
 And I persecuted this way unto death.

Note 5.

He is entitled to the appellation of gentleman.
 Cromwell assumed the title of Protector.
 Her father is honoured with the title of Earl.
 The chief magistrate is styled President.
 The highest title in the state is that of Governor.

Note 6.

He is a better writer than reader.
 He was an abler mathematician than linguist.
 I should rather have an orange than *an* apple.

Note 7.

Those words which are signs of complex ideas, are liable to be misunderstood.
The carriages which were formerly in use, were very clumsy.
 The place is not mentioned by *the* geographers who wrote at that time.

RULE II.

He that is studious, will improve.
They that seek wisdom, will be wise.
 She and *I* are of the same age.
 You are two or three years older than *we*.
 Are not John and *thou* cousins ?
 I can write as handsomely as *thou*.
 Nobody said so but *he*.
Who dost thou think was there ?
 Who broke this slate ? *I*.
 We are alone ; here's none but *thou* and *I*.
 Them that honour me, I will honour ; and *they* that despise me, shall be lightly esteemed.

He *who* in that instance was deceived, is a man of sound judgement.

RULE III.

The book is a present from my brother Richard, *him* that keeps the bookstore.

I am going to see my friends in the country, *them* that we met at the ferry.

This dress was made by Catharine, the milliner, *her* that we saw at work.

Dennis, the gardener, *he* that gave me the tulips, has promised me a piony.

Resolve me, why the cottager, and king,
He whom sea-sever'd realms obey, and *he*
 Who steals his whole dominion from the waste,
 Repelling winter blasts with mud and straw,
 Disquieted alike, draw sigh for sigh.

RULE IV.

Note 1.

Things of *this* sort are easily understood.

Who broke *those* tongs?

Where did I drop *these* scissors?

Bring out *those* oats.

Extinguish *those* embers.

I disregard *these* minutiae.

That kind of injuries we need not fear.

What was the height of *that* gallows which Haman erected?

Note 2.

We rode about ten *miles* an hour.

'Tis for a thousand *pounds*.

How deep is the water? About six *fathoms*.

The lot is twenty-five *feet* wide.

I have bought eight *loads* of wood.

Note 3.

Industry is one *means* of obtaining competence.

Scholasticus sought opportunities to display his learning; and, by *this* means, rendered himself ridiculous.

Caled was remarkable for his modesty, docility, and ingenuity; and, by *these* means, he acquired both knowledge and fame.

Note 4.

He chose the *last* of these three.

Trissyllables are often accented on the *first* syllable.

Which are the two *most* remarkable isthmuses in the world?

Note 5.

The scriptures are more valuable than any *other* writings.

The Russian Empire is more extensive than any *other* government in the world.

Israel loved Joseph more than all his *other* children, because he was the son of his old age.

Note 6.

Of all ill habits, idleness is the most incorrigible.

Eve was the fairest of *women*.

Hope is the most constant of all the passions.

Note 7.

That opinion is too *general* to be easily corrected.

Virtue confers the *greatest* (or *highest*) dignity upon man.

The tongue is like a race-horse: the *less* weight it carries the faster it runs.

A more *healthy* place cannot be found.

The best and the wisest men often meet with discouragements.

Note 8.

He showed us *an easier* and *more agreeable* way.

This was the *plainest* and *most convincing* argument.

Some of the *wisest* and *most moderate* of the senators.

This is an *ancient* and *honourable* fraternity.

There vice shall meet a *fatal* and *irrevocable* doom.

Note 9.

He is an *industrious* young man.

She has an *elegant* new house.

The *first two* classes have read.

The *two oldest* sons have removed to the westward.

England had not seen an *other* such king.

Note 10.

She reads well, and writes *neatly*.

He was *extremely* prodigal.

They went, *conformably* to their engagement.

He speaks very *fluently*, and reasons justly.

The deepest streams run the most *silently*.

These appear to be finished the most *neatly*.

He was *scarcely* gone, when you arrived.

I am *exceedingly* sorry to hear of your misfortunes.

The work was *uncommonly* well executed.

This is not so *large* a cargo as the last.

Thou knowst *how good* a horse mine is.

I cannot think so *meanly* of him.

He acted much *more wisely* than the others.

Note 11.

I bought *those* books at a very low price.

Go and tell *those* boys to be still.

I have several copies: thou art welcome to *those two*.

Which of *those* three men is the most useful?

Note 12.

Hope is as strong an incentive to action as fear: *that* is the anticipation of good, *this* of evil.

The poor want some advantages which the rich enjoy; but we should not therefore account *these* happy, and *those* miserable.

Memory and forecast just returns engage,
That pointing back to youth, *this* on to age.

Note 13.

Let each of them be heard in *his* turn.

Is either of these men kown?

No: neither of them *has* any connexions here.

Note 14.

Did *any* of the company stop to assist you?

Here are six; but *none* of them will answer.

RULE V.

Every one must judge of *his* own feelings.

Can any person, on *his* entrance into the world, be fully secure;
that *he* shall not be deceived?

He cannot see one in prosperity without envying *him*.

I gave him oats, but he would not eat *them*.

Rebecca took goodly raiment, and put *it* on Jacob.

Take up the tongs, and put *them* in *their* place.

Let each esteem others better than *himself*.

A person may make *himself* happy without riches.

Every man should try to provide for *himself*.

The mind of man should not be left without something on which
to employ *its* energies.

An idler is a watch that wants both hands,

As useless if *it* goes, as when *it* stands.

Note 1.

Many words darken speech.

These praises he then seemed inclined to retract.

These people are all very ignorant.

Asa's heart was perfect with the Lord.

Who, instead of going about doing good, are perpetually doing
mischief.

Whom ye delivered up, and denied in the presence of Pontius
Pilate.

Whom, when they had washed *her*, they laid in an upper cham-
ber.

There are witnesses of the fact which I have mentioned.

He is now sorry for what he said.

The empress, approving these conditions, immediately ratified
them.

Though this incident appears improbable, yet I cannot doubt the
author's veracity.

Note 2.

Thou art my father's brother; else would I reprove *thee*.

Your weakness is excusable, but *your* wickedness is not.

Now, my son, I forgive thee, and freely pardon *thy* fault.

Thou drawst the inspiring breath of ancient song,

Till nobly rises emulous *thy* own.

Note 3.

This is the horse *which* my father imported.
 Those are the birds *which* we call gregarious.
 He has two brothers, one of *whom* I am acquainted with.
 What was that creature *which* Job called leviathan?
 Those *who* desire to be safe, should be careful to do that which is right.
 A butterfly, *who* thought himself an accomplished traveller, happened to light upon a bee-hive.
 There was a certain householder *who* planted a vineyard.

Note 4.

He instructed and fed the crowds *that* surrounded him.
 The court, *which* has great influence upon the public manners, ought to be very exemplary.
 The wild tribes *that* inhabit the wilderness, contemplate the ocean with astonishment, and gaze upon the starry heavens with delight.

Note 5.

Judas, (*which* is now an other name for treachery,) betrayed his master with a kiss.
 He alluded to Phalaris,—*which* is a name for all that is cruel.

Note 6.

He was the first *that* entered.
 He was the drollest fellow *that* I ever saw.
 This is the same man *that* we saw before.
 Who is she *that* comes clothed in a robe of green?
 The wife and fortune *that* he gained, did not aid him.
 Men *that* are avaricious, never have enough.
 All *that* I have, is thine.
 Was it thou, or the wind, *that* shut the door?
 It was not I, *that* shut it.
 The babe *that* was in the cradle, appeared to be healthy.

Note 7.

He is a man that knows what belongs to good manners, and *that* will not do a dishonourable act.
 The friend who was here, and *who* entertained us so much, will never be able to visit us again.
 The curiosities which he has brought home, and *which* we shall soon have the pleasure of seeing, are said to be very rare.

Note 8.

Observe them in the order *in which* they stand.
 We proceeded immediately to the place *to which* we were directed.
 My companion remained a week in the state *in which* I left him.
 The way *in which* I do it, is this.

Note 9.

Remember the condition *from which* thou art rescued.
 I know of no rule *by which* it may be done.

He drew up a petition, *in which* he too freely represented his own merits.

The hour is hastening, *in which* whatever praise or censure I have acquired, will be remembered with equal indifference.

Note 10.

Many will acknowledge the excellence of religion, who cannot tell wherein *that excellence* consists.

Every difference of opinion is not a *difference* of principle.

Next to the knowledge of God, this *knowledge* of ourselves, seems most worthy of our endeavour.

Note 11.

Thou, who hast thus condemned the act, art thyself the man that committed it.

There is in simplicity a certain *majesty*, which is far above the quaintness of wit.

Thou, who art a party concerned, hast no right to judge.

It is impossible for such men as *those who* are likely to receive the appointment, ever to determine this question.

There are in the empire of China millions of *people*, whose support is derived almost entirely from rice.

Note 12.

I had no idea but *that* the story was true.

The post-boy is not so weary but *that* he can whistle.

He had no intimation but *that* the men were honest.

RULE VI.

In youth the multitude eagerly pursue pleasure, as if it were *their* chief good.

The council were not unanimous, and *they* separated without coming to any determination.

The committee were divided in sentiment, and *they* referred the business to the general meeting.

There happened to the army a very strange accident, which put *them* in great consternation.

The enemy were not able to support the charge, and *they* dispersed and fled.

The defendant's counsel had a very difficult task imposed on *them*.

The board of health publish *their* proceedings.

I saw all the species thus delivered from *their* sorrows.

Note 1.

I saw the whole species thus delivered from *its* sorrows.

This court is famous for the justice of *its* decisions.

The convention then resolved *itself* into a committee of the whole.

The crowd was so great, that the judges with difficulty made their way through *it*.

RULE VII.

Your levity and heedlessness, if *they* continue, will prevent all substantial improvement.

Poverty and obscurity will oppress him only, who esteems *them* oppressive.

Good sense and refined policy are obvious to few, because *they* cannot be discovered but by a train of reflection.

Avoid haughtiness of behaviour, and affectation of manners: *they* imply a want of solid merit.

If love and unity continue, *they* will make you partakers of one another's joy.

Suffer not jealousy and distrust to enter: *they* will destroy, like a canker, every germ of friendship.

Hatred and animosity are inconsistent with Christian charity: guard, therefore, against the slightest indulgence of *them*.

Every man is entitled to liberty of conscience, and freedom of opinion, if he does not pervert *them* to the injury of others.

RULE VIII.

Neither Sarah, Ann, nor Jane, has performed *her* task.

One or the other must relinquish *his* claim.

A man is not such a machine as a clock or a watch, which will move only as *it* is moved.

Rye or barley, when *it* is scorched, may supply the place of coffee.

A man may see a metaphor or an allegory in a picture, as well as read *it* in a description.

Despise no infirmity of mind or body, nor any condition of life; for *it* may be thy own lot.

RULE IX.

We *were* disappointed.

She *dares* not oppose it.

His pulse *is* too quick.

Circumstances *alter* cases.

He *needs* not trouble himself.

Twenty-four pence *are* two shillings.

On one side *were* beautiful meadows.

He may pursue what studies he *pleases*.

What *has* become of our cousins?

There *were* more impostors than one.

What *say* his friends on this subject?

Thou *knowst* the urgency of the case.

What *avail* good sentiments with a bad life?

Have those books been sent to the school?

There *are* many occasions for the exercise of patience.

What sounds *has* each of the vowels?

There *was* a great number of spectators.

There *is* an abundance of treatises on this easy science.

While, ever and anon, there *falls*

A heap of hoary moulder'd walls.

He that *trusts* in the Lord, will never be without a friend.

Errors that *originate* in ignorance, *are* generally excusable.

Be ye not as the horse, or as the mule, which *has* no understanding.

Not one of the authors who *mention* this incident, is entitled to credit.

The man and woman that *were* present, being strangers to him, wondered at his conduct.

There necessarily *follow* from thence, these plain and unquestionable consequences.

O thou, forever present in my way,
Who *dost* my motives and my toils survey.

Note 1.

The derivation of these words *is* uncertain.

Four years interest *was* demanded.

One, added to nineteen, *makes* twenty.

The increase of orphans *renders* the addition necessary.

The road to virtue and happiness, *is* open to all.

The ship, with all her crew, *was* lost.

Nothing but vain and foolish pursuits, *delights* some folks.

Note 2.

To obtain the praise of men, *was* their only object.

To steal and then deny it *is* a double sin.

To copy and claim the writings of others, *is* plagiarism.

To live soberly, righteously, and piously, *is* required of all men.

That it is our duty to promote peace and harmony among men,
admits of no dispute.

Note 3.

The reproofs of instruction *are* the way of life.

A diphthong *is* two vowels joined in one syllable.

So great an affliction to him *were* his wicked sons.

What *are* the latitude and longitude of that island?

Note 4.

1. Familiar Style.

Was it thou, that *built* that house?

That boy *writes* very elegantly.

Could not thou write without blotting thy book?

Dost not thou think—or, *Do'n't* thou think, it will rain to-day?

Does not—or, *Do'n't* your cousin, intend to visit you?

That boy *has* torn my book.

Was it thou, that *spread* the hay?

Was it James, or thou, that *let* him in?

He *dares* not say a word.

Thou *stood* in my way, and *hindered* me.

2. Solemn Style.

The Lord *hath* prepared his throne in the heavens; and his kingdom *ruleth* over all.

Thou *answeredst* them, O Lord our God: thou *wast* a God that forgave* them, though thou *tookest* vengeance of their inventions.

Then thou *spakest* in vision to thy Holy One, and *saidst*—

**Forgavest* (as in Ps. xcix. 8.) appears to be wrong.

So then, it is not of him that *willeth*, nor of him that *runneth*, but of God that *showeth* mercy.

Note 5.

Dear friend, *I* am sorry to hear of thy loss ; but *I* hope it may be retrieved. *I* should be happy to render thee any assistance in my power. *I* shall call to see thee to-morrow morning. Accept assurances of my regard.

I have just received a fresh supply of goods ; and *they* are of the first quality.

Will martial flames for ever fire thy mind,
And *wilt thou* never be to heaven resign'd ?

RULE X.

The nobility *were* assured that he would not interpose.

The committee *have* attended to their appointment.

Mankind *were* not, at that time, united by the bonds of civil society.

The majority *were* disposed to adopt the measure.

The peasantry *go* barefoot, and the middle sort *make* use of wooden shoes.

All the world *are* spectators of your conduct.

Blessed *are* the people that know the joyful sound.

Note 1.

The church *has* no power to inflict corporal punishments.

The fleet *was* seen sailing up the channel.

The meeting *has* established several salutary regulations.

The regiment *consists* of a thousand men.

A detachment of two hundred men, *was* immediately sent.

Every auditory *takes* this in good part.

In this business, the house of commons *was* of no weight.

Is the senate considered as a separate body ?

There is a flock of birds.

No society *is* chargeable with the disapproved conduct of particular members.

RULE XI.

Temperance and exercise *preserve* health.

Time and tide *wait* for no man.

My love and affection towards thee, *remain* unaltered.

Wealth, honour, and happiness, *forsake* the indolent.

My flesh and my heart *fail*.

In all his words, there *are* sprightliness and vigour.

Elizabeth's meekness and humility *were* extraordinary.

In unity, *consist* the security and welfare of every society.

High pleasures and luxurious living *beget* satiety.

Much *do* human pride and folly require correction.

Our conversation and intercourse with the world, *are*, in several respects, an education for vice.

Occasional release from toil, and indulgence of ease, *are* what nature demands, and virtue allows.

What generosity, and what humanity, *were* then displayed !

What thou desir'st,
And what thou fearest, alike *destroy* all hope.

Note 1.

Wisdom, and not wealth, *procures* esteem.
Prudence, and not pomp, *is* the basis of his fame.
Not fear, but labour *has* overcome him.
His constitution, as well as his fortune, *requires* care.
Their religion, as well as their manners, *was* ridiculed.
The decency, and not the abstinence, *makes* the difference.
The buyer, as well as the seller, *renders himself* liable.
Not her beauty, but her talents *attract* attention.
It is her talents, and not her beauty, that *attract* attention.
It is her beauty, and not her talents, that *attracts* attention.

Note 2.

Each day, and each hour, *brings its* portion of duty.
Every house, and even every cottage, *was* plundered.
Every thought, every word, and every action, will be brought in-
to judgement, whether *it* be good or evil.
The time will come, when no oppressor, no unjust man, will be able
to screen *himself* from punishment.

No bandit fierce, no tyrant mad with pride,
No cavern'd hermit, *rests* self-satisfied.

Note 3.

In this affair, perseverance *and* dexterity were requisite.
Town *and* country are equally agreeable to me.
Sobriety *and* humility lead to honour.
The king, the lords, and the commons, compose the British parlia-
ment.
The man, *and* his whole family, are dead.
A small house, *and* a trifling annuity, are still granted him.

Note 4.

To profess, and to possess, *are* very different things.
To do justly, to love mercy, and to walk humbly with God, *are* du-
ties of universal obligation.
To be round or square, to be solid or fluid, to be large or small,
and to be moved swiftly or slowly, *are* all equally alien from the
nature of thought.

RULE XII.

Neither imprudence, credulity, nor vanity, *has* ever been imputed
to him.
What the heart or the imagination *dictates*, flows readily.
Neither authority nor analogy *supports* thy opinion.
Either ability or inclination *was* wanting.
Redundant grass or heath *affords* abundance to their cattle.
The returns of kindness are sweet ; and there is neither honour, nor
virtue ; nor utility, in repelling them.

The sense or drift of a proposition, often *depends* upon a single letter.

Note 1.

Neither he nor you *were* there.

Either the boys or I *was* in fault.

Neither he nor I *intend* to be present.

Neither the captain nor the sailors *were* saved.

Whether one person or more *were* concerned in the business, does not yet appear.

Note 2.

Are they, or *am* I, expected to be there?

Neither *is* he, nor *am* I, capable of it.

Either he has been imprudent, or his associates *have been* vindictive.

Neither were their riches, nor *was* their influence, great.

Note 3.

My father and I were riding out.

The premiums were given to George and me.

Jane and I are invited.

They ought to invite my sister and me.

We dreamed a dream in one night, he and I.

Note 4.

To practise tale-bearing, or even to countenance it, *is* great injustice.

To reveal secrets, or to betray a friend, *is* contemptible perfidy.

RULE XIII.

Doth he not leave the ninety and nine, and *go* into the wilderness to seek that which is lost?

Did he not tell thee his fault, and *entreat* thee to forgive him?

If he understands the business, and *attends* to it, he cannot fail of success.

The day is approaching, and *is hastening* upon us, in which we must give an account of our stewardship.

If thou *turn* not unto the Lord, but forget him who remembered thee in thy distress, great will be thy condemnation.

There are a few, who have kept their integrity to the Lord, and *who* prefer his truth to all other enjoyments.

This report was current yesterday, and *it* agrees with what we heard before.

Virtue is generally praised, and *it* would be generally practised also, if men were wise.

Note 1.

He would have *gone* with us, if we had invited him.

They have *chosen* the part of honour and virtue.

He soon *began* to be weary of having nothing to do.

Somebody has *broken* my slate.

I *saw* him, when he *did* it.

Note 2.

He *had* entered into the conspiracy.

The American planters *raise* cotton and rice.

The report is *founded* on truth.

I entered the room and *sat* down.

Go and *lie* down, my son.

With such books, it will always be difficult to *teach* children to read.

RULE XIV.

Note 1.

By observing truth, you will command respect.

I could not, for my heart, forbear pitying him.

I heard them discussing this subject.

By consulting the best authors, he became learned.

Here are rules, by observing which, you may avoid error.

Note 2.

Their consent was necessary for the raising *of* any supplies.

Thus the saving *of* a great nation devolved on a husbandman.

It is an overvaluing *of* ourselves, to decide upon every thing.

The teacher does not allow any calling *of* ill names.

That burning *of* the capitol was a wanton outrage.

May nothing hinder our receiving *of* so great a good.

My admitting *of* the fact, will not affect the argument.

Cain's killing *of* his brother, originated in envy.

Note 3.

Cæsar carried off the treasures, which his opponent had neglected *to take* with him.

It is dangerous *to play* with edge tools.

I intend *to return* in a few days.

Needless suffering is never a duty.

Nor is it wise *to complain*.

I well remember *that I told* you so.

The doing of good—or, *To do good*, is a Christain's vocation.

Piety is a *constant endeavour* to live to God. It is an *earnest desire* to do his will, and not our own.

Note 4.

There is no harm in *women's* knowing about these things.

They did not give notice of the *pupil's* leaving.

The *sun*, darting his beams through my window, awoke me.

The maturity of the sago tree is known by the *leaves'* being covered with a delicate white powder.

Note 5.

Sailing up the river, *you may see* the whole town.

Consciousness of guilt *renders* death terrible.

By yielding to temptation, *we sacrifice* our peace.

In loving our enemies, *we shed* no man's blood.

By teaching the young, *we prepare* them for usefulness.

Note 6.

A nail well *driven* will support a great weight.
 See here a hundred sentences, *stolen* from my work.
 I found the water entirely *frozen*, and the pitcher *broken*.
 Being *forsaken* by my friends, I had no other resource.

RULE XV.

Note 1.

The work *will never be* completed.
 We *should always prefer* our duty to our pleasure.
 It is impossible *to be continually* at work.
 He *behaved impertinently* to his master.
 The heavenly bodies *are perpetually* in motion.
 He found her *not only busy*, but even pleased and happy

Note 2.

The *preceding* remarks are quoted from memory.
 When a substantive is put *absolute*.
 Such expressions sound *harsh*.
 His *subsequent* conduct was more satisfactory.
 Such events are of *rare* (or *unfrequent*) occurrence.
 Velvet feels very *smooth*.

Note 3.

Bring him *hither* to me.
 I shall go *thither* again in a few days.
Whither are they all riding in so great haste?

Note 4.

Hence it appears, that the statement is incorrect.
Thence arose the misunderstanding.
 Do you know *whence* it proceeds?

Note 5.

You see *that* not many are required.
 I knew *that* they had heard of his misfortunes.
 He remarked, *that* time was valuable.

Note 6.

Know now, whether this *is* thy son's coat or *not*.
 Whether he is in fault or *not*, I cannot tell.
 I will ascertain whether it is so or *not*.

Note 7.

I will by no means entertain a spy.
 Nobody *ever* invented or discovered *any* thing, in *any* way to be compared to this.
 Be honest, *and* take no shape or semblance of disguise.
 I did not like *either* his temper or his principles.
 Nothing *ever* affected her so much as this misconduct of her son.

RULE XVI

Note 1.

He has made alterations *in* the work, and additions *to it*.
He is more bold and active *than his companion*, but not so wise and studious.

Sincerity is as valuable *as knowledge*, and even more so.

He may be said to have saved the life of a citizen; and, consequently, *he is* entitled to the reward.

I always have *been*, and always shall be, of this opinion.

The men had made inquiry for Simon's house, and *were standing* before the gate.

The king of France, or of England, was to be the umpire.

What is now kept secret, shall be hereafter displayed and *seen* in the clearest light.

We pervert the noble faculty of speech, when we use it to *defame* or to disquiet our neighbours.

That the art of printing was then unknown, was a circumstance, in some respects favourable to the freedom of the pen.

An other passion which the present age is apt to run into, is a *desire* to make children learn all things.

Be more anxious to acquire knowledge, than *to show it*.

It requires few talents to which most men are not born, or *which*, at least, *they* may not acquire.

The court of chancery frequently mitigates and *disarms* the common law.

Note 2.

We were apprehensive *that* some accident had happened.

I do not deny *that* he has merit.

Are you afraid *that* he will forget you?

These paths and bowers, doubt not *that* our joint hands

Will keep from wilderness.

Note 3.

It was no other *than* his own father.

Have you no further proof *than* this?

I expected something more *than* this.

He no sooner retires *than* his heart burns with devotion.

Such literary filching is nothing else *than* robbery.

Note 4.

Neither despise *nor* oppose what you do not understand.

He would *neither* do it himself, nor let me do it.

The majesty of good things is such, *that* the confines of them are reverend.

Whether he intends to do so *or not*, I cannot tell.

Send me such articles only, *as* are adapted to this market.

So far as I am able to judge, the book is well written.

No errors are so trivial *as not to deserve* correction.

It will *neither* improve the mind, nor delight the fancy.

The one is *as* deserving as the other.

There is no condition so secure *that* it cannot admit of change.

Do you think this is *as* good as that ?

The relations are so obscure *that* they require much thought.

None is so fierce *as to dare* stir him up.

There was no man so sanguine *as* not to apprehend some ill consequence.

I must be so candid *as* to own that I do not understand it.

The book is not *so* well printed as it ought to be.

As still he sat as those who wait,
Till judgement speak the doom of fate.

RULE XVII.

Note 1.

She finds a difficulty *in* fixing her mind.

This affair did not fall *under* his cognizance.

He was accused *of* betraying his trust.

There was no water, and he died *of* thirst.

I have no occasion *for* his services.

You may safely confide *in* him.

I entertain no prejudice *against* him.

You may rely *on* what I tell you.

Virtue and vice differ widely *from* each other.

This remark is founded *on* truth.

After many toils, we arrived *at* our journey's end.

I will tell you a story very different *from* that.

Their conduct is agreeable *to* their profession.

Excessive pleasures pass from satiety *into* disgust.

I turned *in* disgust from the spectacle.

They are gone *into* the meadow.

Let this be divided *among* the three.

The shells were broken *into* pieces.

The deception has passed *with* every one.

They never quarrel *with* each other.

Under every difficulty—or, Amidst *all* difficulties, he persevered.

Let us go *up* stairs.

I was *in* London, when this happened.

We were detained *at* home, and disappointed *of* our walk.

This originated *in* mistake.

The Bridewell is situated *on* the west of the City-Hall, and it has no communication *with* the other buildings.

I am disappointed *in* the work ; it is very inferior *to* what I expected.

RULE XIX.

Note 1.

Man's chief good is an upright mind.

I will not destroy the city for *ten's* sake.

Moses's rod was turned into a serpent.

They are wolves in *sheeps'* clothing.

The tree is known by *its* fruit.

This privilege is not *theirs*, any more than it is *yours*

Yet he was gentle as soft summer airs,
Had grace for *others'* sins, but none for *theirs*.

Note 2.

There is but little difference between the *Earth's* and *Venus's* diameter.

This hat is *John's*, or *James's*.

The store is opposite to *Morris* and Company's.

This palace had been the grand *sultan* Mahomet's.

This was the *Apostle* Paul's advice.

Were Cain's occupation and *Abel's* the same?

Were *Cain's* and *Abel's* occupation the same?

Were *Cain* and *Abel's* occupations the same?

Were *Cain's* and *Abel's* parents the same?

Were Cain's parents and *Abel's* the same?

Was *Cain* and *Abel's* father there?

Were *Cain* and *Abel's* parents there?

Thy Maker's will has placed thee here,
A *Maker* wise and good.

Note 3.

The government of the world is not left to chance.

He was heir to the son of Louis the Sixteenth.

The throne we honour, is the *people's* choice.

We met at the house of my brother's partner.

An account of the proceedings of *Alexander's* court.

Here is a copy of the Constitution of the *Teachers' Society*, in the city of New-York.

RULE XX.

Thee only have I chosen.

Whom shall we send on this errand?

My father allowed my brother and *me* to accompany him.

Him that is idle and mischievous, reprove sharply.

Whom should I meet but my old friend!

How long will it take *you* to do it?

He accosts *whomever* he meets.

Whomsoever the court favours, is safe.

Them that honor me, I will honour.

Whom do you think I saw the other day?

Note 1.

The ambitious are always seeking to aggrandize *themselves*.

I must premise *three* circumstances.

This society does not allow *personal* reflections.

False accusation cannot *diminish* real merit.

His servants ye are *whom* ye obey.

Note 2.

Good keeping *fattens* the herd.

We endeavoured to *reconcile* the parties.

Being weary, he *sat* down.

Go, *flee* away into the land of Judah.

The popular lords did not fail to *enlarge* on the subject.

Note 3.

The *benefit* of their recantation *was* refused *them*.
 Temporal *riches* are not promised *to* *believers*.
 Several beautiful *pictures* were shown *us*.
 But, unfortunately, the *favour* was denied *me*.
 A high *compliment* *was* paid *you*.
 The *question* *has* never been asked *me*.

RULE XXI.

We thought it *was* *thou*.
 I would act the same part, if I were *he*.
 It could not have been *she*.
 It is not *I* that he is angry with.
 They believed it to be *me*.
 It was thought to be *he*.
 If it had been *she*, she would have told us
 We know it to be *them*.
Who do you think it is?
Whom do you suppose it to be?
 We did not know *who* they were.
 Thou art *he* whom they described.
 Impossible! it can't be *I*.
Who did he think you were?
Who say ye that I am?

RULE XXII.

Let that remain a secret between you and *me*.
 I lent the book to some one, I know not *whom*.
 Let no quarrel occur among *you*.
Whom did he inquire for? *Thee*.
 From *him* that is needy, turn not away.
 We are all accountable, each for his own *acts*.
 Does that boy know *whom* he is speaking to?
 I bestow my favours on *whomsoever* I will.

RULE XXIII.

Please *to* excuse my son's absence.
 Cause every man *to* go out from me.
 Forbid them *to* enter the garden.
 Do you not perceive it *to* move?
 Allow others *to* discover your merit.
 He was seen *to* go in at that gate.
 Permit me *to* pass this way.

RULE XXIV.

I felt a chilling sensation *creep* over me.
 I have heard him *mention* the subject.
 Bid the boys *come* in immediately.
 I dare *say* he has not got home yet.
 Let no rash promise *be* made.
 We sometimes see bad men *honoured*.
 A good reader will make himself distinctly *heard*.

RULE XXV.

I being young, they deceived me.
They refusing to comply, *I* withdrew.
Thou being present, he would not tell what he knew.
 The child is lost ; and *I*, whither shall *I* go ?

She quick relapsing to her former state,
 With boding fears approach the serving train.

There all thy gifts and graces we display,
Thou, only *thou*, directing all our way.

RULE XXVI.

He will maintain his cause, though he *lose* his estate.
 They will fine thee, unless thou *offer* an excuse.
I shall walk out in the afternoon, unless it *rain*.
 Let him take heed lest he *fall*.

On condition that he *come*, *I* consent to stay.

If he *be* but discreet, he will succeed.

Take heed that thou *speak* not to Jacob.

If thou *cast* me off, *I* shall be miserable.

Send them to me, if thou *please*.

If *I were* to write, he would not regard it.

If thou *felt* as *I* do, we should soon decide.

Though thou *shed* thy blood in the cause, it would but prove thee
 sincerely a fool.

If thou *loved* him, there would be more evidence of it.

I believed, whatever *were* the issue, all would be well.

If love *were* never feigned, it would appear to be scarce.

There fell from his eyes, as it *were* scales.

If he *were* an impostor, he must have been detected.

Were death denied, e'en fools would wish to die.

Were *I* as wealthy as a South-sea dream,

Wishing is an expedient to be poor.

Though he *seems* to be artless, he has deceived us.

If he *thinks* as he speaks, he may safely be trusted.

Though this event *is* strange, it certainly did happen.

If thou *lovest* tranquillity of mind, seek it not abroad.

If seasons of idleness *are* dangerous, what must a continued habit
 of it prove ?

Though he *was* a son, yet learned he obedience by the things which
 he suffered.

I knew thou *wast* not slow to hear.

Note 1.

The work *was finished* last week.

He *has been* out of employment this fortnight.

This mode of expression *was* formerly in use.

I shall be much obliged to him, if he will attend to it.

I will pay the vows which my lips *uttered* when *I* was in trouble.

I have compassion on the multitude, because they *have continued*
 with me now three days.

I thought, by the accent, that he *was speaking* to his child.

And he that *had been* dead, sat up and began to speak.
 Thou hast borne, and *hast had* patience, and for my name's sake
 hast laboured, and hast not fainted.
 Ye will not come unto me, that ye *may have* life.
 At the end of this quarter, I *shall have been* at this school two
 years.
 We have done no more than it was our duty to do.

Note 2.

We expected that he *would arrive* last night.
 Our friends intended to *meet* us.
 We hoped to *see* you.
 He would not have been allowed to *enter*.

Note 3.

The doctor affirmed, that fever always *produces* thirst.
 The ancients asserted, that virtue *is* its own reward.

PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES.

There is a spirit in man ; and the inspiration of the Almighty giveth
him understanding.
 My people *do not* consider.
 I have never heard *whom* they invited.
 Then hasten thy return ; for, *thou* away,
 Nor lustre has the sun, nor joy the day.
 I am as well as when you *were* here.
 That elderly man, *him* that came in late, I supposed to be the su-
 perintendent.
 All the virtues of mankind are to be counted upon a few fingers ;
 but *their* follies and vices are innumerable.
 It must indeed be confessed, that a lampoon or a satire *does not*
 carry in *it* robbery or murder.
 There *were* more persons than one engaged in this affair.
 A man who lacks ceremony, has need of great merit.
 A wise man avoids the showing of any excellence in trifles. Bet-
 ter—*forbears to show*—or, *is careful not to show*, &c.
 The *first* and *most important* female quality, is sweetness of temper.
 We choose rather to lead than to follow.
 Ignorance is the mother of fear, as well as of admiration.
 He must fear many, *whom* many fear.
 Every one *partakes* of honour bestowed on the worthy.
 The king *and* the queen were not at all deceived—or, *Neither* the
 king nor the queen *was* at all deceived.
 Were there no difference, there would be no choice.
 I *would* rather have been informed.
 Must *thou* return this evening ?
 Life and death *are* in the power of the tongue.
 I saw a person that I took to be *her*.
 Let him be *who* he may, I shall not stop.
 This is certainly *a* useful invention.
 'It is no more *than* justice,' quoth the farmer.
 Great improvements *have* been made.

What I have heard, is undoubtedly true.
 The nation is torn by feuds which threaten *its* ruin.
 The account of these transactions, *was* incorrect.
 Godliness with contentment, *is* great gain.
 The number of sufferers *has* not been ascertained.
 There *is* one or more of them yet in confinement.
 They have *chosen* the wisest part.
 He spent his whole life in doing good.
 They *scarcely* know that temperance is a virtue.
 I am afraid *that* I have laboured in vain.
 Mischief *on* itself doth back recoil.
 This construction sounds rather *harsh*.
 What is the cause of the *leaves'* curling.
 Was it *thou*, that made the noise?
 Let thy flock *clothe* the naked.
 Wisdom and knowledge *are* granted unto thee.
 His conduct was *surprisingly* strange.
 This woman taught my brother and *me* to read.
 Let your promises be such *as* you can perform.
 We shall sell them in the state *in* which they now are.
 We may, *however*, add this observation.
 This came *into* fashion when I was young.
 I did not use the leaves, but *the* root, of the plant.
 We have used every *means* in our power.
 Pass away, thou inhabitant of Saphir.
 Give every syllable, and every letter, *its* proper sound.
 To know exactly how much mischief may be ventured upon with
 impunity, *is* knowledge enough for some folks.
 Every leaf, and every twig, *teems* with life.
 I *rejoiced* at this intelligence.
 At this stage of advancement, *the pupil finds little difficulty in un-*
derstanding the passive and *the* neuter verbs.
 I was afraid that I *should* lose the parcel.
 Which of all these patterns is the *prettiest*?
 They *that* [or *who*] despise instruction, shall not be wise.
 Both thou and thy advisers have mistaken *your* interest.
 An idle soul shall suffer hunger.
 The lips of knowledge *are* a precious jewel.
 My cousin and I are requested to attend.
 I can only say, that such is my belief.
 This is different from the *conscience'* being made to feel.
 Here is ground *for* leaving the world with peace.
Whither are you all running so fast?
Man is the noblest work of creation.
 Of *all* crimes this is the most atrocious.
 The tribes *that* I visited, are partially civilized.
 Hence I conclude, they are in error.
 The girls' books are neater than the *boys'*.
 I intended *to* transcribe it.
 Shall a character made up of the very worst passions, pass under
 the name of gentleman?
 Rhoda ran in, and told *that* Peter stood before the gate.

What *are* latitude and longitude ?

Cicero was more eloquent than any *other* Roman—or, Cicero was the most eloquent of the Romans.

Who dares apologize for Pizarro ?—*which* is but another name for rapacity !

Tell me whether you will do it or *not*.

After the *straitest* [*strictest*] sect of our religion, I lived a Pharisee.

I know who it was *that* did it.

Doubt not, little though there be,
That I'll cast a crumb to thee.

This rule is the best *that* can be given.

I have never seen *any* other way.

These are poor amends for the men and treasures *that* we have lost.
Dost thou know *those* boys ?

This is part of *the estate of my uncle's father*.

Many people never learn to speak *correctly*.

Some people are rash, and others timid: *these* apprehend too much,
those too little.

Is it lawful for us to give tribute to Cæsar or *not* ?

Give no more trouble than you *cannot* possibly help.

I no sooner saw my face in it, *than* I was startled at the shortness of it.

Every person is answerable for *his* own conduct.

They are men that scorn a mean action, and *that* will exert themselves to serve you.

I do not recollect ever *to have paid* it.

The stoics taught, that all crimes *are* equal.

Every one of these theories *is* now exploded.

Any of these four will answer.

There is no situation *in which* he would be happy.

The boy *that you thought so clever*, has been detected in stealing.

I will meet thee there, if *thou* please.

He is not so sick but *that* he can laugh.

These clothes *do* not fit me.

The audience *were* all very attentive.

Was the master, or *were* any of the scholars, in the room ?

His father and mother's consent was asked.

Who is he supposed to be ?

He is *a venerable old* man.

It was then my purpose to *visit* Sicily.

It is *only* to the learner, and *him* that is in doubt, that this assistance is recommended.

There *is* not the least hope of his recovery.

Anger and impatience *are* always unreasonable.

In his letters, there *is* not only correctness, but elegance.

Opportunity to do good, is the highest preferment *that* a noble mind desires.

The year *in which* he died, is not mentioned.

Had I *known* it, I should not have gone.

Was it *thou* that spoke to me ?

The house is *pleasantly* situated.

He did it as *privately* as he possibly could.

The subduing of our passions, is the noblest of conquests.

James is more diligent than *thou*.

Rain is seldom or *never* seen at Lima.

He appears to be *excessively* diffident.

The number of our days *is* with thee.

As a father pitieth his children, so the Lord pitieth them that fear him.

The circumstances of this case *are* different.

Well for us, if some *other such* men should rise !

A man that is young in years, may be old in hours, if he *lose* no time.

The chief captain, fearing *that* Paul *would* be pulled *into* pieces by them, commanded the soldiers to go down, and to take him by force from among them.

That brother should not war with brother,

Nor one despise and grieve an other.

APPENDIX I.

(ORTHOGRAPHY.)

OF THE SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

A

A has four sounds properly its own :

1. The open, long, or slender ; as in *fame, favour, efficacious*.
2. The close or short ; as in *bat, bawner, balance*.
3. The middle ; as in *far, father, aha, comma, scoria, sofa*.
4. The broad ; as in *wall, warm, water*.

The only proper diphthong in which *a* is put first, is the word *ay* ; in which *a* has its middle sound, and *y* that of open *e*.

Aa, when pronounced as an improper diphthong, takes the sound of close *a* ; as in *Balaam, Canaan, Isaac*.

Æ, a Latin improper diphthong, generally has the sound of open *e* ; as in *Cæsar, ænigma, pæan* ; sometimes that of close *e* ; as in *aphæresis, diæresis, et cætera*. Some authors reject the *a*, and write *Cesar, enigma, &c.*

Ai, an improper diphthong, generally has the sound of open *a* ; as in *bail, sail, vain*. In a final unaccented syllable, it takes the sound of close *i* ; as in *certain, fountain, mountain* : in *said, saith, again, and against*, that of close *e* : and in the name *Britain*, that of close *u*.

Ao, an improper diphthong, occurs only in the word *gaol* ; now frequently written, as it is pronounced, *jail*.

Au, an improper diphthong, is generally sounded like broad *a* ; as in *cause, caught*. Before *n* and an other consonant, it has the sound of middle *a* ; as in *aunt, flaunt, launch, laundry*. *Gauge* is pronounced *gage*.

Aw, an improper diphthong, is always sounded like broad *a* ; as in *draw, drawn, drawl*.

Ay, an improper diphthong, like *ai*, has the sound of open *a* ; as in *day, pay, delay* : in *sayst, says*, that of close *e*. *Quay* is pronounced like *key*.

B

B has but one sound ; as in *boy, robber, cub*.

B is silent before *t*, or after *m* in the same syllable ; as in *debt, debtor, dumb, lamb*. It is heard in *subtile, fine*, but not in *subtle, cunning*.

C

C before *a, o, u, l, r, t*, or when it ends a syllable, is hard like *k* ; as in *can, come, curb, clay, crab, act, action, accent, flaccid*.

C before *e, i, or y*, is soft like *s*; as in *cent, civil, decency*.

C before *ea, ia, ie, io, or eou*, when the accent precedes, sounds like *sh*; as in *ocean, special, gracious, cetaceous*.

C is silent in *czar, czarina, victuals, indict, muscle, corpuscle*.

Ch is generally sounded like *tch*; as in *church, chance, child*. But in words derived from the learned languages, it has the sound of *k*; as in *character, scheme, catechise, chorus, chyle, patriarch, drachma, magna charta*; except *chart, charter, charity*. *Ch*, in words derived from the French, takes the sound of *sh*; as in *chaise, machine*.

Arch, before a vowel, is pronounced *ark*; as in *archives, archangel, Archipelago*: except in *arched, archer, archery, archenemy*. Before a consonant, it is pronounced *artch*; as in *archbishop, archduke*.

Ch is silent in *schedule, schism, yacht, drachm*.

D

The general sound of *d*, is heard in *dog, eddy, did*.

D, in the termination *ed* preceded by a sharp consonant, takes the sound of *t*, when the *e* is suppressed: as in *faced, stuffed, cracked, tripped, passed*; pronounced, *faste, stufst, crackt, tript, past*.

D before *ia, ie, io, or eou*, when the accent precedes, generally sounds like *j*; as in *Indian, soldier, tedious, hideous*. So in *veredure, arduous, education*.

E

E has three sounds properly its own:

1. The open or long; as in *me, mere, menial, melodious*.

2. The close or short; as in *men, merry, ebony*.

3. The obscure; as in *open, garden, shovel, able*. This third sound is scarcely perceptible, and is barely sufficient to articulate the consonant and form a syllable.

E final is mute; as in *age, eve, ice, ore*. Except, 1. In the words *be, he, me, we, she, and the*, in which it has the open sound. 2. In Greek and Latin words, in which it has its open sound, and forms a distinct syllable; as in *Penelope, Pasiphaë, Cyaneë, Gargaphië, Arsinoë, apostrophe, catastrophe, simile, extempore, epitome*. 3. In the terminations *cre, gre, tre*, in which it has the sound of close *u*; as in *acre, meagre, centre*.

Mute *e* generally lengthens the preceding vowel; as in *cane, here, pine, cone, tune, thyme*.

E, before an other vowel, in general, either forms an improper diphthong or a separate syllable.

Ea, an improper diphthong, mostly sounds like open *e*; as in *ear, fear, tea*: frequently, like close *e*; as in *earl, head, health*: sometimes like open *a*; as in *steak, bear, forswear*: rarely, like middle *a*; as in *heart, hearth, harken*. *Ea* unaccented, sounds like close *u*; as in *vengeance, pageant*.

Eau, a French triphthong, sounds like open *o*; as in *beau, flam-*

beau, portmanteau, bureau : except in *beauty* and its compounds, in which it is pronounced like *open u*.

Ee, an improper diphthong, has the sounds of *open e* ; as in *eel, sheep, tree*. The contractions *e'er* and *ne'er*, are pronounced *air* and *nair*.

Ei, an improper diphthong, mostly sounds like *open u* ; as in *reign, veil* : frequently, like *open e* ; as in *deceit, either, neither, seize* : sometimes, like *open i* ; as in *height, sleight* : often, in unaccented syllables, like *close i* ; as in *foreign, forfeit, surfeit, sovereign* : rarely, like *close e* ; as in *heifer, nonpareil*.

Eo, an improper diphthong, in *people* sounds like *open e* ; in *feoff, feoffment, leopard, jeopardy*, like *close e* ; in *yeoman*, like *open o* ; in *George, georgic*, like *close o* ; in *dungeon, puncheon, sturgeon, &c.* like *close u* ; *Ftod, feodal, feodatory*, are now written as they are pronounced, *feud, feudal, feudatory*.

Eu and *ew* have the diphthongal sound of *open u* ; as in *feud, deuce* ; *jew, dew, few, new*. These diphthongs, when initial, sound like *yu*. Nouns beginning with this sound, require the article *a*, and not *an*, before them ; as, *A European, a ewer*. After *r* or *rh*, *eu* and *ew* are commonly sounded like *oo* ; as in *drew, grew, screw, rheumatism*.

In *sew* and *Shrewsbury*, *ew* sounds like *open o*. *Shew* and *strew*, are properly spelled, as they are pronounced, *show, strow*.

Ey, accented, has the sound of *open a* ; as in *bey, prey, survey* : unaccented, it has the sound of *open e* : as in *alley, valley, money*. *Key* and *ley* are pronounced *kee, lee*. *Eye* is pronounced like *open i*.

F

F has one unvaried sound, which is heard in *fan, effort, staff* : except *of*, which, when simple, is pronounced *ov*.

G

G before *a, o, u, l, r*, or at the end of a word, is hard ; as in *game, gone, gull, glory, grace, log, bog*.

G before *e, i, or y*, is soft ; as in *gem, ginger, elegy*. Except, 1. In *get, give, gewgaw, finger*, and a few other words. 2. When a syllable is added to a word ending in *g* : as, *long, longer, fog, foggy*.

G is silent before *m* or *n* in the same syllable ; as in *phlegm, apothegm, gnaw, resign*.

G when silent, usually lengthens the preceding vowel ; as in *sign, impugn*.

Gh at the beginning of a word, has the sound of *g hard* ; as in *ghost, ghastly* : in other situations, it is generally silent ; as in *high, mighty, plough, bought, through*.

Gh final sometimes sounds like *f* ; as in *laugh, rough, tough* : and sometimes, like *g hard* ; as in *burgh*. In *lough, shough*, it sounds like *k*.

H

The sound of *h*, (though it is articulate and audible when properly uttered,) is little more than an aspirate breathing. It is heard in *hat, hit, hot, hut, adhere*.

H at the beginning of words, is always sounded; except in *heir, herb, honest, honour, hospital, hostler, hour, humble, humour*, and their compounds

H after *r*, is always silent; as, *rheum, rhetoric*.

H final, preceded by a vowel, is always silent; as, *ah, oh, Sarah, Nineveh*.

I

I has three sounds properly its own.

1. The open or long; as in *life, fine, time, find, bind, child, mild, wild, pint*. This is a diphthongal sound, and is equivalent to the sound of *middle a* and that of *open e* quickly united.

2. The close or short; as in *ink, think, sinking*.

3. The feeble; as in *divest, doctrinal, diversity*. This sound is equivalent to that of *open e* uttered feebly. *I* generally has this sound, when it occurs at the end of an unaccented syllable: except at the end of Latin words, where it is long; as in *literati*. In some words, (principally from other modern languages,) *i* has the full sound of *open e*, under the accent; as in *Porto Rico, machine, magazine, antique, shire*.

Accented *i* followed by a vowel, has its open sound; and the vowels belong to separate syllables; as in *pliant, diet, satiety, violet, pious*.

Unaccented *i* followed by a vowel, has its feeble sound; as in *expatiate, obedient, various, abstemious*. *I* in this situation, readily coalesces with the vowel which follows, and is often sunk into the same syllable, forming a proper diphthong; as in *fustian, quotient, question, bilious, vicious, precious*. The terminations *cion, sion*, and *tion*, are pronounced *shun*; *cious* and *tious* are pronounced *shus*.

Ie is commonly an improper diphthong. *Ie* final has the sound of *open i*; as in *die, lie, pie, tie*. *Ie* medial generally has the sound of *open e*; as in *grief, thief, grenadier*. *Ieu* and *iew* sound like *open u*; as in *lieu, adieu, view*.

J

J always has the sound of *soft g*; except in *hallelujah*, better written as it is pronounced, *halleluiah*.

K

K has the sound of *c hard*; and occurs where *c* would have its soft sound: as in *keep, kind, smoky*.

K before *n* is mute; as in *knave, know, knuckle*. It is never doubled, except in the name *Habakkuk*. *C* before it, doubles the sound, and shortens the preceding vowel, as in *cockle, wicked*.

L

L has a soft liquid sound ; as in *line, lily, roll, follow*.

L is sometimes mute ; as in *alms, almonds, calf, chalk, could, would, should*.

M

M has but one sound ; as in *map, murmur, mammon*. *Comptroller* is pronounced *controller*.

N

N has two sounds : the pure ; as in *nun, banner, cannon* ; and the ringing sound of *ng* ; as in *think, mangle, conquer, congress, singing, twinkling*. The latter sound should be carefully preserved in all words ending in *ing* ; and in such others as require it.

N final preceded by *m*, is mute ; as in *hymn, solemn*.

O

O has three sounds properly its own :

1. The open or long ; as in *no, note, opiate, opacity, domain*.
2. The close or short ; as in *not, nor, torrid, dollar*.
3. The slender ; as in *prove, move, who, to, do, tomb*.

O in many words sounds like close *u* ; as in *love, above, son, come, nothing, dost, attorney, gallon, dragon*. In the termination *on*, immediately after the accent, *o* is often sunk into a sound scarcely perceptible like that of *obscure e* ; as in *mason, person*. *One* is pronounced *wun*.

Oa an improper diphthong, has the sound of open *o* ; as in *boat, coal, roach* : except in *broad*, and *groat*, which have the sound of broad *a*.

Oe, an improper diphthong, when final, has the sound of open *o* ; as in *doe, foe, throe* : except in *canoe, shoe*, pronounced *canoo, shoo*.

Œ, a Latin diphthong, generally sounds like open *e* ; as in *Antæci, fœtus* : sometimes like close *e* ; as in *fœtid*. Some authors reject the *o*, and write *fetid*, &c

Oi is generally a proper diphthong, uniting the sound of close *o* or broad *a*, and that of open *e* ; as in *boil, coil, soil, rejoice*. But the vowels sometimes belong to separate syllables ; as in *stoic*. *Oi* unaccented, sometimes has the sound of close *i* ; as in *avoir du pois, connoisseur, tortoise*. *Choir* is now frequently written, as it is pronounced, *quire*.

Oo, an improper diphthong, generally has the slender sound of *o* ; as in *coo, too, woo, fool, room*. It has a shorter sound in *foot, good, wood, stood, wool* ; that of close *u*, in *blood* and *flood* ; and that of open *o*, in *door*, and *floor*.

Ou is generally a proper diphthong, uniting the sound of close *o*, and that of *u* sounded as slender *o* or *oo* ; as in *bound, found, sound, ounce, thou*.

Ou is also an improper diphthong ; and, as such, it has six sounds :

1. That of *close u* ; as in *rough, tough, young, flourish*.
 2. That of *broad a* ; as in *ought, bought, thought*.
 3. That of *open o* ; as in *court, dough, four, though*.
 4. That of *close o* ; only in *cough, trough, lough, shough*.
 5. That of *slender o* or *oo* ; as in *soup, you, through*.
 6. That of *oo*, shortened ; only in *would, could, should*.
- Ow* generally sounds like the proper diphthong *ou* ; as in *brown, dowry, now, shower* : but it often has the sound of *open o* ; as in *owe, know*.
- Oy* is always sounded like *oi* ; as in *joy, toy*.

P

P has but one sound : which is heard in *pen, sup, supper*. It is sometimes silent ; as in *psalm, receipt, corps*.

Ph generally sounds like *f* ; as in *philosophy*. In *Stephen* and *new*, *ph* has the sound of *v*. The *h* after *p*, is mute in *diphthong, triphthong, naphtha, ophthalmic* ; and both the *p* and *h*, in *apophthegm, phthisis, phthisical*. From the last three words *ph* is sometimes dropped.

Q

Q has the sound of *k*, and is always followed by *u* sounded like *w* ; as in *queen, quarter, request*. The *u* is sometimes silent ; as in *coquet, liquor, burlesque*.

R

R, at the beginning of words, has a rough sound ; as in *rose, roam* : in other situations, a smoother one ; as in *proud, harrow, barber*.

S

S has a sharp, hissing sound ; as in *sad, sister, thus* : and a flat sound, like that of *z* ; as in *rose, dismal*.

S, at the beginning of words, or after any of the sharp consonants, is always sharp ; as in *see, steps, cliffs, sits, stocks, smiths*.

S, after any of the flat mutes, or at the end of words when not preceded by a sharp consonant, is generally flat ; as in *eyes, trees, beds, bags, calves*. *Ss* is generally sharp.

S, in the termination *sion*, takes the sound of *sh*, after a consonant ; as in *aspersion, session* : and that of *zh*, after a vowel ; as in *invasion, elision*.

S is silent in *isle, island, aisle, demesne, viscount*.

T

The general sound of *t*, is heard in *time, tierce, letter, set*.

T, immediately after the accent, takes the sound of *tch*, before *n*, and generally also before *eu* : as in *nature, feature, virtue, righteous, courteous* : when *s* precedes, it takes this sound before *ia* or *io* ; as in *fustian, bastian*. But the general sound of *t* after the ac-

cent, when followed by *i* and another vowel, is that of *sh*; as in *creation, patient, cautious*.

T is sometimes silent; as in *often, rustle, whistle*.

Th represents an elementary sound. It is either sharp, as in *thing, ethical, thinketh*: or flat, as in *this, whither, thither*.

Th initial is sharp; as in *thank*: except in *than, that, the, thee, their, them, then, thence, there, these, they, thine, this, thither, those, thou, thus, thy*, and their compounds.

Th final is also sharp; as in *south*: except in *beneath, booth, with*, and several verbs in *th*, which are frequently (and more properly) written with final *e*; as *soothe, smoothe, bequeathe*.

Th medial is sharp, when preceded or followed by a consonant; as in *swarthy, athwart*: except in *brethren, burthen, farther, farthing, murther, northern, worthy*.

Th between two vowels, is generally flat in words purely English; as in *gather, neither, whither*: and sharp in words from the learned languages; as in *atheist, ether, method*.

Th, in *Thames, Thomas, thyme, asthma, phthisic*, and their compounds, is pronounced like *t*.

U

U has three sounds properly its own:

1. The open, long, or diphthongal; as in *tube, cubic, juvenile*.
2. The close or short; as in *tub, butter, justice*.
3. The middle; as in *pull, pulpit, artful*.

Open *u* is equivalent in sound to *you*, and requires the article *a*, and not *an*, before it; as, *a union*.

Bury and *busy* are pronounced *berry, bizzy*. Their compounds are similar.

After *r* or *rh*, open *u*, and the diphthongs *ue* and *ui*, take the sound of *oo*; as in *rude, rhubarb, rue, rueful, fruit, fruitful*.

U, in the proper diphthongs *ua, ue, ui, wo, uy*, has the sound of *w*, or *oo feeble*; as in *persuade, query, quell, quiet, languid, quote, obloquy*.

Ua, an improper diphthong, has the sound—1. of middle *a*; as *guard, guardian*: 2. of close *a*; as in *guarantee, piquant*: 3. of obscure *e*; as in *victuals* and its compounds: 4. of open *u*; as in *mantuamaker*.

Ue, an improper diphthong, has the sound—1. of open *u*; as in *blue, ensue, ague*: 2. of close *e*; as in *guest*: 3. of obscure *e*; as in *league, antique*.

Ui, an improper diphthong, has the sound—1. of open *i*; as in *guide, guile*: 2. of close *i*; as in *languid, circuit*: 3. of open *u*; as in *juice, suit*.

Uy, an improper diphthong, has the sound—1. of open *y*; as in *buy*: 2. of feeble *y*, or open *e feeble*; as in *plaguy*.

V

V always has the sound of *f* flat; as in *love, vulture*.

W

W, as a consonant, has the sound heard in *wine, win*.

W before *h*, is pronounced as if it followed the *h*; as in *what*, *when*. Before *r*, it is always silent; as in *wrath*, *wrench*: so in *whole*, *whoop*, *sword*, *answer*.

W is never used alone as a vowel. In a diphthong, when heard, it has the power of *u*; but it is frequently silent.

X

X has a sharp sound, like *ks*; as in *ox*: and a flat one, like *gz*; as in *example*.

X is sharp, when it ends an accented syllable; as in *exit*, *excellence*: or when it precedes an accented syllable beginning with a consonant; as in *expound*, *expunge*.

X unaccented, is generally flat when the next syllable begins with a vowel; as in *exist*, *exotic*.

X initial, in Greek proper names, has the sound of *z*; as in *Xanthus*, *Xantippe*, *Xenophon*, *Xerxes*.

Y

Y, as a consonant, has the sound heard in *yard*, *youth*.

Y, as a vowel, has the same sounds as *i*:

1. The open or long; as in *cry*, *thyme*, *cycle*.
2. The close or short; as in *system*, *symptom*, *cynic*.
3. The feeble; (like open *e* feeble;) as in *cymar*, *cycloidal*, *mercy*.

The vowels *i* and *y* have, in general, exactly the same sound, under similar circumstances; and, in forming derivatives, the one is often changed for the other: as in *city*, *cities*; *tie*, *tying*; *easy*, *easily*.

Z

Z always has the sound of *s* flat; as in *breeze*, *zenith*.

APPENDIX II.

(ETYMOLOGY.)

OF DERIVATION.

Derivation is a species of Etymology, which explains the various methods by which those derivative words which are not formed by mere grammatical inflections, are deduced from their primitives.

Most of those words which are regarded as primitives in English, may be traced to ulterior sources, and many of them are found to be compounds or derivatives in other languages. But as the learner is supposed to be unacquainted with those languages, we shall not go beyond the precincts of our own; except to show him the origin and primitive import of some of our definitive and connecting particles, and to explain the prefixes and terminations which are frequently employed to form English derivatives.

The rude and cursory languages of barbarous nations, to whom literature is unknown, are among those transitory things which by the hand of time are irrecoverably buried in oblivion. The fabric of the English language is undoubtedly of *Saxon* origin; but what was the form of the language spoken by the *Saxons*, when, about the year 449, they entered Britain, cannot now be known. It was probably a dialect of the *Gothic* or *Teutonic*. This *Anglo-Saxon* dialect gradually improved, as christianity, civilization, and knowledge, advanced the arts of life in Britain; and, as early as the ninth century, it became a language capable of expressing all the sentiments of a civilized people. From this period, its progress may be traced by means of writings which remain; but it can scarcely be called *English* till about the thirteenth century. And for two or three centuries later, it was so different from the modern English, as to be scarcely intelligible to most readers; but, gradually improving, by means upon which we cannot here dilate, it at length became what we now find it, a language, copious, strong, refined, and capable of no inconsiderable degree of harmony.

The following is an explanation of the *Saxon* letters employed below :

a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q
a	b	c	ð	e	f	g	h	i		k	l	m	n	o	p	cp
			r	s	t	th	u	v	w	x	y	z.				
			þ	j	τ	ð	u	v	p	x	ý	z.				

OF THE ARTICLES.

According to *Horne Tooke*, THE is the *Saxon* ðe from ðean to take; and is nearly equivalent in meaning to *that* or *those*. We

find it written in ancient works, *re*, *se*, *see*, *te*, *ſe*, and *the*.

AN is the Saxon *æn*, *ane*, *an*, one; and, by dropping *n* before a consonant becomes *a*. Gawen Douglas, an ancient English writer, wrote *ane*, even before a consonant; as, "*Ane* book,"—" *ane* lang spere,"—" *ane* volume."

OF NOUNS.

In English, Nouns are derived from nouns, from adjectives, from verbs, and from participles.

I. Nouns are derived from nouns:

1. By adding *ship*, *dom*, *rick*, *wick*, or, *ate*, *hood*, or *head*: as *fellow*, *fellowship*; *king*, *kingdom*; *bishop*, *bishoprick*; *bailiff*, *bailiwick*; *senate*, *senator*; *tetrarch*, *tetrarchate*; *child*, *childhood*; *God*, *Godhead*. These generally denote dominion, office, or character.

2. By adding *ian*: as *music*, *musician*; *physic*, *physician*. These generally denote profession.

3. By adding *y* or *ery*: as, *slave*, *slavery*; *fool*, *foolery*; *scene*, *scenery*; *cutler*, *cutlery*; *grocer*, *grocery*. These sometimes denote a state, or habit of action; sometimes, an artificer's wares or shop.

4. By adding *age* or *ade*: as, *patron*, *patronage*; *porter*, *porterage*; *band*, *bandage*; *lemon*, *lemonade*.

5. By adding *kin*, *let*, *ling*, *ock*, *el* or *erel*: as *lamb*, *lambkin*; *river*, *rivulet*; *duck*, *duckling*; *hill*, *hillock*; *cock*, *cockerel*. These denote little things, and are called diminutives.

6. By adding *ist*: as *psalm*, *psalmist*; *botany*, *botanist*. These denote persons devoted to, or skilled in, the subject expressed by the primitive.

7. By prefixing an adjective, or an other noun, and forming a compound word; as, *holiday*, *foreman*, *statesman*, *tradesman*.

II. Nouns are derived from adjectives:

1. By adding *ness*, *ity*, *ship*, *dom*, or *hood*: as, *good*, *goodness*; *real*, *reality*; *hard*, *hardship*; *wise*, *wisdom*; *false*, *falsehood*.

2. By changing *t* into *ce* or *cy*: as *radiant*, *radiance*; *consequent*, *consequence*; *flagrant*, *flagrancy*; *current*, *currency*.

3. By changing some of the letters, and adding *t* or *th*: as, *long*, *length*; *broad*, *breadth*; *high*, *height*. The nouns included under these three heads, generally denote abstract qualities, and are called abstract nouns.

4. By adding *ard*: as, *drunk*, *drunkard*; *dull*, *dullard*. These denote the character of a person.

5. By adding *ist*: as, *sensual*, *sensualist*; *royal*, *royalist*. These denote persons devoted, addicted, or attached, to something.

III. Nouns are derived from verbs:

1. By adding *ment*, *ance*, *ure*, or *age*: as, *punish*, *punishment*; *repent*, *repentance*; *forfeit*, *forfeiture*; *stow*, *stowage*; *equip*, *equippage*.

2. By changing the termination of the verb, into *se*, *ce*, *sion*, *tion*, *ation*, or *ition*: as, *expand*, *expanse*, *expansion*; *pretend*, *pretence*, *pretension*; *invent*, *invention*; *create*, *creation*; *omit*, *omission*; *provide*, *provision*; *reform*, *reformation*; *oppose*, *opposition*. These denote the act of doing, or the thing done.

3. By adding *er* or *or* : as, *hunt, hunter* ; *write, writer* ; *collect, collector*. These generally denote the doer.

4. Nouns and verbs are sometimes alike in orthography, but different in pronunciation : as, a *house*, to *house* ; a *reb'el*, to *rebel'* ; a *rec'ord*, to *record'*. Sometimes they are wholly alike, and are distinguished only by the construction : as, *love*, to *love* ; *fear*, to *fear* ; *sleep*, to *sleep*.

IV. Nouns are often derived from participles in *ing*. Such nouns are usually distinguished from participles, only by their construction : as, a *meeting*, the *understanding*, *murmurings*, *disputings*.

OF ADJECTIVES.

In English, Adjectives are derived from nouns, from adjectives, from verbs, or from participles.

I. Adjectives are derived from nouns:

1. By adding *ous, ious, eous, y, ly, ic, al, ical, or ine* : (sometimes, with an omission or change of some of the final letters :) as, *danger, dangerous* ; *glory, glorious* ; *right, righteous* ; *rock, rocky* ; *cost, costly* ; *poet, poetic* ; *nation, national* ; *method, methodical* ; *vertex, vertical* ; *clergy, clerical* ; *adamant, adamantine*. Adjectives thus formed, generally apply the properties of their primitives, to the nouns to which they relate.

2. By adding *ful* : as, *fear, fearful* ; *cheer, cheerful* ; *grace, graceful*. These denote abundance.

3. By adding *some* : as, *burden, burdensome* ; *game, gamesome*. These denote plenty, but with some diminution.

4. By adding *en* : as, *oak, oaken* ; *silk, silken*. These generally denote the matter of which a thing is made.

5. By adding *ly* or *ish* : as, *friend, friendly* ; *child, childish*. These denote resemblance : *ly* signifies *like*.

6. By adding *able* or *ible* : as, *fashion, fashionable* ; *access, accessible*. But these terminations are generally added to verbs.

7. By adding *less* : as, *house, houseless* ; *death, deathless*. These denote privation or exemption.

8. Adjectives from proper names, take various terminations : as, *America, American* ; *England, English* ; *Dane, Danish* ; *Portugal, Portuguese* ; *Plato, Platonic*.

9. By adding *ed* : as, *saint, sainted* ; *bigot, bigoted*. These are participial.

10. Nouns are often converted into adjectives, without change of termination : as, *paper currency* ; *a gold chain*.

II. Adjectives are derived from adjectives :

1. By adding *ish* or *some* : as, *white, whitish* ; *lone, lonesome*. These denote quality, with diminution.

2. By prefixing *dis, in, or un* : as, *honest, dishonest* ; *consistent, inconsistent* ; *wise, unwise*. These express a negation of the quality denoted by their primitives.

3. By adding *y* or *ly* : as, *swarth, swarthy* ; *good, goodly*. Of these there are very few. Almost all the derivatives of this form are adverbs.

III. Adjectives are derived from verbs:

1. By adding *able* or *ible* : (sometimes with a change of some of

the final letters :) as, *perish, perishable; vary, variable; convert, convertible; divide, divisible.* These denote susceptibility.

2. By adding *ive* or *ory*: (sometimes, with a change of some of the final letters :) as, *elect, elective; interrogate, interrogative, interrogatory; defend, defensive; defame, defamatory.*

3. Words ending in *ate*, are mostly verbs; but some of them may be employed as adjectives, in the same form: as, *reprobate, complicate.*

IV. Adjectives are derived from participles:

1. By prefixing *un*: as, *unyielding, unregarded, undeserved.*

2. By combining the participle with some word which does not belong to the verb; as, *way-faring, hollow-sounding, long-drawn.*

3. Participles often become adjectives without change of form. Such adjectives are distinguished from participles only by the construction: as, "*A lasting ornament,*"—"The *starving* chymist,"—"Words of *learned* length."

OF THE PRONOUNS.

The English Pronouns are all of *Saxon* origin. The following appears to be their derivation:

Eng. I,	my or mine,	me;	we, our or ours,	us.
Sax. ic,	mýn,	me;	pe, ure,	ur.
Eng. thou, thy or thine,	thee;	ye, your or yours,		you.
Sax. ðu,	ðu, ðe;	ge, eoƿer,		eoƿ.
Eng. he,	his, him;	they, their or theirs,		them.
Sax. he,	hýr, him;	hi, heƿ or ðeoƿa,		hem.
Eng. she, her or hers,	her;	they, their or theirs,		them.
Sax. heo, heƿa or hýra,	heƿ;	hi, heƿ or ðeoƿa,		hem.
Eng. it,	its, it;	they, their or theirs,		them.
Sax. hit,	hýr, hit;	hi; heƿ or ðeoƿa,		hem.

The plurals and oblique cases do not all appear to be regular derivatives from the nominative singular. Many of these pronouns, as well as a vast number of other words of frequent use in the language, were variously written by the old English and Anglo-Saxon authors. He who traces the history of our language will meet with them under all the following forms, and perhaps more:

1. I, J, Y, y, ÿ, i, ic, ich, ic,—MY, mi, miu, MINE, myne, myn, mýn,—ME, mee, me;—WE, wee, pe,—OUR or OURS, oure, ure,—US, ur.

2. THOU, thu, ðu,—THY, thi, thin, THINE, thyne, thyn, ðin,—THEE, the, ðe;—YE, ze, zee, ge,—YOUR or YOURS, youre, gour, goure, eoƿer,—YOU, zou, iuh, eoƿ.

3. HE, hee, hie, he,—HIS, hise, is, hys, hyse, ys, ýs, hýs, hýr,—HIM, hine, hen, hyne, hym, hým, him;—THEY, thay, thei, hi, hii, hý, hig, hi,—THEIR or THEIRS, ther, theyr, thair, thare, here, her, hire, hýra, ðeoƿa,—THEM, theym, thaym, thaim, thame, tham, em, hem, heom.

4. SHE, *sche, scho, ꝥcæ, ꝥeo, heo*,—HER, [possessive,] *hir*, *hire, hyre, hȳꝥc, hȳꝥa, hꝥa*,—HER, [objective,] *hir, hire, heꝥ*.

5. IT, *yt, yꝥ, hit, it, hit*. This pronoun is from the perfect participle of *hætan*, *to name*, and signifies *the said*; it seems to have been originally of both numbers, and all genders.

The relatives are derived from the same source, and have passed through similar changes; as,

1. WHO, *ho, wha, hwa, qua, hpa*,—WHOSE, *whos, hꝥæꝥ*,—WHOM, *whome, hwom, hꝥam*.

2. WHICH, *whiche, whyche, wilch, quilch, quilk, quhilk, hwilc, hꝥilc*.

3. WHAT, *hwat, hwæt, hwet, qubat, quthat, qua that, hwa that, hpa ȝæt*. This pronoun appears to have been originally a compound of *who* and *that*, though the Anglo-Saxons wrote it as one word, *hꝥæt*. Its compound signification strengthens this idea of its formation.

4. THAT, *ȝæt, ȝæt, ȝe*. Horne Tooke supposes this word to have been originally the perfect participle of *ȝean*, *to take*.

From its various uses, the word *that* is called sometimes a pronoun, sometimes an adjective, and sometimes a conjunction; but, in respect to derivation, it is, doubtless, one and the same.—As an adjective, it was formerly applicable to a plural noun; as, “*That holy ordres*.”—*Dr. Martin*.

OF VERBS.

In English, Verbs are derived from nouns, from adjectives, or from verbs.

I. Verbs are derived from nouns:

1. By adding *ize, ise, en, or ate*; as, *author, authorize; method, methodise; length, lengthen; origin, originate*. The termination *ize* is of Greek origin; and *ise* of French: the former only should be employed in forming English derivatives.

2. By changing a consonant, or by adding mute *e*: as, *advice, advise; bath, bathe; breath, breathe*.

II. Verbs are derived from adjectives:

1. By adding *en, ate, or ize*: as, *deep, deepen; domestic, domesticate; civil, civilize*.

2. Many adjectives become verbs, without change of form: as, *warm, to warm; dry, to dry; black, to black; forward, to forward*.

III. Verbs are derived from verbs:

By prefixing *a, be, dis, for, fore, mis, over, out, un, under, up, or with*: as, *rise, arise; sprinkle, besprinkle; own, disown; bid, forbid; see, foresee; take, mistake; look, overlook; run, outrun; fasten, unfasten; go, undergo; hold, uphold; draw, withdraw*.

OF PARTICIPLES.

All English Participles are derived from English verbs, in the manner explained under the head of Etymology; and when foreign participles are introduced into the language, they become other parts of speech.

OF ADVERBS.

1. In English, many Adverbs are derived from adjectives by adding *ly*, which is an abbreviation for *like*: as, *candid*, *candidly*; *sordid*, *sordidly*. Most adverbs of manner are thus formed.

2. Many adverbs are compounds formed from two or more English words; as, *herein*, *indeed*, *to-day*, *always*, *already*, *elsewhere*, *sometimes*, *wherewithal*. The formation and the meaning of these are in general sufficiently obvious.

3. About seventy adverbs are formed by means of the prefix *a*; as, *Abreast*, *abroad*, *across*, *afresh*, *away*, *ago*, *awry*, *astray*.

4. *Needs* is a contraction of *need is*; *prilhee*, of *I pray thee*; *alone*, of *all one*; *only*, of *one like*; *anon*, of *in one* [instant]; *never*, of *ne ever* [not ever].

5. *Very* is from the French *veray* or *vrai*, true; *still*, is from the imperative of the Saxon *ſtellan*, *to put*; *else* is from the imperative of *aleſan*, *to dismiss*. *Rather* is the comparative of the ancient *rath*, soon.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

The English Conjunctions are mostly of Saxon origin. The best dictionaries of our language give us, for the most part, the same words in Saxon characters; but *Horne Tooke*, in his *Diversions of Purley*, a learned and curious work which the advanced student may peruse with advantage, traces these, and many other English particles to Saxon verbs or participles. The following derivations are offered principally on his authority: *AN* (signifying *if*, now obsolete) is the imperative of *anad*, *to grant*;—*AND* is from *an-að*, the imperative of *anan-að*, *to grant to*, *to add to*;—*IF*, from *ſiƿ*, [*giƿ*,] the imperative of *ſiƿað*, *to give*;—*YET*, from *ſet*, [*get*,] the imperative of *ſetan*, *to get*;—*EKE*, (signifying *also*, nearly obsolete,) from *eac*, the imperative of *eacan*, *to add*;—*THOUGH*, from *ðaƿiſ*, [*thaſiſ*,] the imperative of *ðaƿiſað*, *to allow*;—*BUT*, (implying *addition*,) from *bot*, the imperative of *botan*, *to boot*, *to add*;—*BUT*, (denoting *exception*,) from *be-utan*, the imperative of *beon-utan*, *to be out*;—*UNLESS*, from *onley*, [*onles*] the imperative of *onleſan*, *to dismiss*;—*LEST*, from *leſed*, [*leſed*,] the perfect participle of *leſan*, *to dismiss*;—*THAT*, from *ðæt*, [*thæt*,] the perfect participle of *ðeað*, *to take*;—*SINCE*, from *ſiue* [or *ſyue*,] the perfect participle of *ſeon*, *to see*;—*OR* is a contraction of the Saxon *oðer*, *other*;—*NOR* is a contraction of *ne or*;—*EI*

THER is from the Saxon ægðer, *æither* ;—NEITHER is a contraction of *ne either* ;—NOTWITHSTANDING is an English compound which needs no explanation.

OF PREPOSITIONS.

The following is the derivation of most of the English Prepositions: ABOVE, from *a* [*on* or *at*] *be* and *uƿa*, *high* ;—ABOUT, from *a* and *bout*, *limit* ;—AFTER, the comparative of *aft*, now used only by seamen ;—AGAINST, from *aƿ-geƿið*, *gone at* ;—ALONG, from *a* and *long* ;—AMID, from *a* and *mid* ;—AMIDST, from *a* and *midst*, contracted from *middest* ;—AMONG, abbreviated for *amongst* ;—AMONGST, from *a* and *mongst*, a Saxon participle, signifying *mixed* ;—AT, from the Saxon *æt* ;—BEFORE, from *be* [*by*] and the adjective *fore* ;—BEHIND, from *be* and *hind* ;—BELOW, from *be* and *low* ;—BENEATH, from *be* and *neath*, *low*, whence *nether*, *lower* ;—BESIDE, from *be* and the noun *side* ;—BESIDES,* from *be* and *sides* ;—BETWEEN, from *be* and *twain*, *two* ;—BETWIXT, from *be* and a Gothic word signifying *two* ;—BEYOND, from *be* and *geƿið*, the perfect participle of *geƿiðan*, *to pass* ;—BY, formerly written *bi* and *be*, is the imperative of *beon*, *to be* ;—CONCERNING, from the imperfect participle of the verb *concern* ;—DOWN, from the Anglo-Saxon *dun*, *low* ;—DURING, from the old verb *dure*, *to last* ;—EXCEPT, from the imperative of the verb *except* ;—FOR, from a Gothic noun signifying *cause* ;—FROM, from the Saxon *ƿƿan* or *ƿƿan*, *beginning* ;—IN, from the Latin *in* ;—INTO, from *in* and *to* ;—OF, from the Saxon *of*, which *H. Tooke* supposes to be from a noun signifying *offspring* ;—ON, perhaps contracted from *upon*, which *H. Tooke* says, is from *uƿon*, *high* ;—OVER, from *uƿra*, *higher* ;—ROUND, from the adjective *round* ;—AROUND, from *a* and *round* ;—SINCE, from *Seon*, *to see* ;—THROUGH, contracted for *thorough*, which is from a Saxon word signifying *a door, or passage* ;—THROUGHOUT, from *through* and *out* ;—TILL, from *til*, noting *end* of time ;—TO, from the Saxon *to*, which, according to *H. Tooke*, is from a Gothic noun signifying *end* ;—TOUCHING, from the verb *touch* ;—TOWARD, or TOWARDS, from *toƿarð*, which is probably composed of *to*, *to*, and *ƿarð*, *ward*, from *ƿarðian*, *to look* ;—UNDER, from the Dutch *on-neder*, i. e. *on-nether* ;—UNDERNEATH, from *under* and *neath* ;—UP, from *uƿ*, Sax. which *H. Tooke* traces to *uƿa*, *high* ;—WITH, perhaps from *ƿiðan*, *to join* ;—WITHIN, from *with* and *in* ;—WITHOUT, from *with* and *out*. According to *H. Tooke*, *with* in the last two compounds, is from *ƿýrð*, the imperative of *ƿýrðan*, *to be* ; and the meaning of the former is *be in*, and of the latter *be out*.

*Beside should be used as a preposition, and besides only as an adverb. See reasons for this distinction, in *Campbell's Philosophy of Rhetoric*.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

Those significant and constructive words which are occasionally used as Interjections, do not require an explanation here ; and those mere sounds which are in no wise expressive of thought, scarcely admit of definition or derivation. The interjection *HEY* is probably a corruption of the adjective *high* ;—*ALAS* is from the French *hèlas* ;—*ALACK* is probably a corruption of *alas* ;—*WELAWAY*, which is sometimes corrupted into *welladay*, is from the Saxon *palapa*, *wo on wo* ;—*FIE*, from *fiend*, *to hate* ;—*HEYDAY*, from *high day* ;—*AVAUNT*, from the French *avant*, *before* ;—*LO*, from *look* ;—*BEGONE*, from *be* and *gone* ;—*WELCOME*, from *well* and *come*.

OF PREFIXES.

In the formation of words, certain particles are often employed as prefixes ; which, as they generally have some peculiar import, may be separately explained. A few of them are of Anglo-Saxon origin ; and the greater part of these, are still employed as separate words in our language. The rest are Latin and Greek prepositions.—The roots to which they are prefixed, are not always proper English words.

I. ENGLISH OR ANGLO-SAXON PREFIXES.

1. *A* signifies, *on*, *in*, *at*, or *to* ; as in *a-broad*, *a-shore*, *a-sleep*, *a-far*, *a-field*. The French *à*, *to*, is probably the same ; as in *a-dieu*. This prefix is sometimes redundant ; as in *a-wake*, *a-rise*.

2. *Be* signifies *upon*, *by*, *to*, or *for* ; as in *be-spatter*, *be-times*, *be-tide*, *be-speak*. It is sometimes redundant ; as in *be-gird*, *be-deck*, *be-loved*.

3. *For*, in composition, seems to signify *from* ; it is found in the irregular verbs, *for-bear*, *for-bid*, *for-get*, *for-give*, *for-sake*, *for-swear*.

4. *Fore*, prefixed to verbs, signifies *before* ; as in *fore-know*, *fore-tell* : prefixed to nouns, it is an adjective, and signifies *anterior* ; as in *fore-side*, *fore-part*.

5. *Mis*, signifies *wrong* ; as in *mis-do*, *mis-place*.

6. *Over*, denotes superiority or excess ; as in *over-power*, *over-strain*, *over-large*.

7. *Out*, prefixed to verbs denotes excess ; as in, *out-do*, *out-leap* : prefixed to nouns, it is an adjective, and signifies *exterior* ; as in *out-side*.

8. *Un* denotes negation or contrariety ; as in *un-kind*, *un-load*.

9. *Under* denotes inferiority ; as in *under-value*, *under-clerk*.

10. *Up*, denotes motion upwards ; as in *up-lift* : sometimes, subversion ; as in *up-set*.

11. *With*, signifies *against*, *from*, or *back* ; as in *with-stand*, *with-hold*, *with-draw*.

II. LATIN PREFIXES.

The primitive words to which these are prefixed, are not many

of them employed separately in English. The final letter of the preposition is often changed before certain consonants.

1. *A, ab, abs*,—from or away : as, *a-vert*, to turn from ; *ab-duce*, to lead from ; *abs-tract*, to draw away.

2. *Ad, ac, af, al, an, ap, as, at*,—to or at : as, *ad-vert*, to turn to ; *ac-cede*, to yield to ; *af-flux*, a flowing to ; *al-ly*, to bind to ; *an-nex*, to link to ; *ap-ply*, to put to ; *as-sume*, to take to ; *at-test* to witness to.

3. *Ante*,—before : as, *ante-cedent*, going before ; *ante-mundane*, before the world.

4. *Circum*,—around or about : as, *circum-volve*, to roll around.

5. *Con, com, co, col, cor*,—together : as, *con-tract*, to draw together ; *com-pel*, to drive together ; *co-erce*, to force together ; *col-lect*, to gather together, *cor-rade*, to scrape together.

6. *Contra*,—against : as, *contra-dict*, to speak against.

7. *De*,—from or down : as, *de-tract*, to draw from ; *de-pend*, to hang from ; *de-press*, to press down.

8. *Dis, di*,—away or apart : as, *dis-pel*, to drive away ; *dis-sect*, to cut apart : *di-vert*, to turn away. *Dis*, before English words, generally reverses their meaning : as, *please, dis-please*.

9. *E, ex, ec, ef*,—out : as, *e-ject*, to cast out ; *ex-tract*, to draw out ; *ec-stasy*, a raising out ; *ef-face*, to blot out.

10. *Extra*,—beyond : as, *extra-vagant*, wandering beyond.

11. *In, il, im, ir*,—in : as *in-spire*, to breathe in ; *il-lude*, to draw in by deceit ; *im-mure*, to wall in ; *ir-ruption*, a breaking in. These syllables, prefixed to nouns or adjectives, generally reverse their meaning ; as, *ir-religion, ir-rational, in-secure*.

12. *Inter*,—between : as, *inter-sperse*, to scatter between.

13. *Intro*,—within : as, *intro-vert*, to turn within.

14. *Ob, oc, of, op*,—against : as, *ob-trude*, to thrust against ; *oc-cur*, to run against ; *of-fer*, to bring against ; *op-pose*, to place against.

15. *Per*,—through or by : as, *per-vade*, to go through ; *per-chance*, by chance.

16. *Post*,—after : as, *post-pone*, to place after.

17. *Præ, or pre*,—before ; as, *pre-sume*, to take before.

18. *Pro*,—for, forth, or forwards : as, *pro-vide*, to take care for ; *pro-duce*, to bring forth ; *pro-trude*, to thrust forward.

19. *Præter*,—past or beyond : as, *præter-it*, gone by ; *præter-natural*, beyond what is natural.

20. *Re*,—again or back : as, *re-view*, to view again ; *re-pel*, to drive back.

21. *Retro*,—backwards : as, *retro-cession*, a going backwards.

22. *Se*,—aside or apart : as, *se-duce*, to lead aside ; *se-cede*, to go apart.

23. *Sub, sup*,—under : as, *sub-scribe*, to write under ; *sup-ply*, to put under.

24. *Subter*,—beneath : as, *subter-fluous*, flowing beneath.

25. *Super*,—over or above : as, *super-fluous*, flowing over ; *super-natant*, swimming above.

26. *Trans*,—beyond, over, to another state or place : as, *trans-gress*, to pass beyond, or over ; *trans-mit*, to send to an other place ; *trans-form*, to change to an other shape.

III. GREEK PREFIXES.

1. *A* and *an* denote privation : as in *a-nomalous*, wanting rule ; *an-onymous*, wanting name ; *an-archy*, want of government.

2. *Amphi*,—both or two : as, *amphi-bious*, living in *two* elements.

3. *Anti*,—against : as, *anti-acid*, against acidity ; *anti-febrile*, against fever.

4. *Apo*, *aph*,—from : as, *apo-strophe*, a turning from ; *aph-æresis*, a taking from.

5. *Dia*,—through : as, *dia-gonal*, through the corners ; *dia-meter*, the measure through.

6. *Epi*, *eph*,—upon ; as, *epi-demic*, upon the people ; *eph-emera*, upon a day.

7. *Hyper*,—over : as, *hyper-critical*, over critical.

8. *Hypo*,—under : as, *hypo-stasis*, substance, or that which stands under ; *hypo-thesis*, supposition, or a placing under.

9. *Meta*,—beyond, over, to an other state or place : as, *meta-morphose*, to change to an other shape.

10. *Para*,—against : as, *para-dox*, something contrary to common opinion.

11. *Peri*,—around : as, *peri-phery*, the circumference, or measure round.

12. *Syn*, *sym*, *syl*,—together : as, *syn-tax*, a placing together ; *sym-pathy*, a suffering together ; *syl-lable*, what is taken together

APPENDIX III.

(SYNTAX.)

OF STYLE.

Style is the particular manner in which a person expresses his conceptions, by means of language. It is different from mere words, and is not to be regulated altogether by rules of construction. It always has some relation to the author's peculiar manner of thinking; and, being that sort of expression which his thoughts most readily assume, sometimes partakes, not only of what is characteristic of the man, but even of national peculiarity. The words which an author employs, may be proper, and so constructed as to violate no rule of syntax; and yet his style may have great faults.

To designate the general characters of style, such epithets as concise, diffuse,—neat, negligent,—nervous, feeble,—simple, affected,—easy, stiff,—perspicuous, obscure,—elegant, florid,—are employed. A considerable diversity of style, may be found in compositions all equally excellent in their kind. And, indeed, different subjects, as well as the different endowments by which genius is distinguished, require this diversity. But, in forming his style, the learner should remember, that a negligent, feeble, affected, stiff, or obscure style, is always faulty; and that perspicuity, ease, simplicity, strength, and neatness, are qualities always to be aimed at.

In order to acquire a good style, the frequent practice of composing, is indispensably necessary. Without exercise, and diligent attention, rules for the attainment of this object, will be of no avail. When the learner has acquired such a knowledge of grammar, as to be in some degree qualified for the undertaking, he should devote a stated portion of his time to composition. This exercise will bring the powers of his mind into requisition, in a way that is well calculated to strengthen them. And, if he has opportunity for reading, he may, by a diligent perusal of the best authors, acquire both language, taste, and sentiment; which are the essential qualifications of a good writer.

In regard to the qualities which constitute a good style, we can here offer no more than a few brief hints. With respect to words and phrases, particular attention should be paid to *purity*, *propriety*, and *precision*; and, with respect to sentences, to *perspicuity*, *unity*, and *strength*.

PURITY.

Purity of style, consists in the use of such words and phrases only, as belong to the language which we write or speak.

1. Avoid the unnecessary use of foreign words or idioms; as *fraicheur, hauteur, delicatessen, politesse, noblesse*; he repented himself; it serves to an excellent purpose.

2. Avoid obsolete words: as, *whilom, erewhile, whoso, albeit, moreover, aforesaid, methinks*.

3. Avoid unauthorized words: as, *flutteration, inspector, judgemental, incumberment, connexity, electerized, martyrizd*.

PROPRIETY.

Propriety of language, consists in the selection and right construction, of such words as the best usage has appropriated to those ideas, which we intend to express by them.

1. Avoid low and provincial expressions: such as, *says I; thinks I to myself; to get into a scrape*; stay here while I return.

2. In writing prose, avoid words and phrases that are merely poetical: such as, *morn, eve, plaint, lone, amid, oft, steepy*; what time the winds arise.

3. Avoid technical terms: except where they are necessary, in treating of a particular art or science.

4. Avoid the recurrence of words in different senses, or such a repetition of words as denotes paucity of language: as, "His own reason might have suggested better reasons."—"Gregory favoured the undertaking, for no other reason than this, that the manager, in countenance, favoured his friend."—"I want to go and see what he wants."

5. Supply words that are wanting: thus, instead of "This action increased his former services," say, "This action increased the merit of his former services."

6. Avoid equivocal or ambiguous expressions: as, "His memory shall be lost on the earth."—"I long since learned to like nothing but what you do."

7. Avoid unintelligible and inconsistent expressions: as, "I have observed that the superiority among these coffee-house politicians, proceeds from an opinion of gallantry and fashion."—"These words do not convey even an opaque idea of the author's meaning."

PRECISION.

Precision consists in avoiding all superfluous words, and adapting the expression exactly to the thought, so as to exhibit neither more nor less than is intended by the author.

1. Avoid a useless tautology, either of expression or sentiment: as in,—return again; return back again; converse together; rise up; fall down; enter in; a mutual likeness to each other; the latter end; liquid streams; grateful thanks; the last of all; throughout the whole book; whenever I go, he always meets me there; for why; because why; over head and ears; from hence; where is he at? in there; nothing else but that; it is odious and hateful; his faithfulness and fidelity should be rewarded.

2. Observe the exact meaning of words accounted synonymous: thus, instead of, "Though his actions and intentions were good, he lost his character,"—say, "he lost his reputation."

PERSPICUITY.

Perspicuity consists in freedom from obscurity or ambiguity. It is a quality so essential, in every kind of writing, that for the want of it nothing can atone. Without this, the richest ornaments of style, only glimmer through the dark, and puzzle instead of pleasing the reader. Perspicuity, being the most important property of language, and an exemption from the most embarrassing defects, seems even to rise to a degree of positive beauty. We are naturally pleased with a style, that frees us from all suspense in regard to the meaning; that carries us through the subject without embarrassment or confusion; and that always flows like a limpid stream, through which we can see to the very bottom.

1. Adjectives, relative pronouns, participles, adverbs, and explanatory phrases, should be placed as near as possible to the words to which they relate, and in such a situation as the sense requires. The following sentences are deficient in perspicuity:—
 “By the pleasures of the imagination, I mean *only* such pleasures as arise originally from sight.”—“Reverence is the veneration paid to superior sanctity, *intermixed* with a certain degree of awe.”
 “The Romans understood liberty, *at least*, as well as we.”—“Taste was never *made to cater* for vanity.”

2. In prose, a poetic collocation of words must be avoided.

UNITY.

Unity consists in keeping one object predominant throughout a sentence or paragraph. Every sentence, whether its parts be few or many, requires strict unity.

1. Treat different topics in separate paragraphs, and distinct sentiments in separate sentences.

2. In the progress of a sentence, do not desert the principal subject in favour of adjuncts.

3. Good writers do not introduce parentheses, except when a lively remark may be thrown in, without diverting the mind too long from the principal subject.

STRENGTH.

Strength consists in giving the several words and members of a sentence, such an arrangement as shall bring out the sense to the best advantage, and present every idea in its due importance. A concise style is the most favourable to strength.

1. Place the most important words in the situation in which they will make the strongest impression.

2. A weaker assertion should not follow a stronger; and, when the sentence consists of two members, the longer should be the concluding one.

3. When things are to be compared or contrasted, their resemblance or opposition will be rendered more striking, if some resemblance in the language and construction, be preserved.

4. It is, in general, ungraceful, to end a sentence with an adverb, a preposition, or any inconsiderable word or phrase.

APPENDIX IV.

(PROSODY.)

OF POETIC DICTION.

Poetry (as defined by Dr. Blair) "is the language of passion, or of enlivened imagination, formed, most commonly, into regular numbers." The style of poetry differs, in many respects, from that which is commonly adopted in prose. Poetic diction abounds in bold figures of speech, and unusual collocations of words. A great part of the figures which have been treated of under the head of prosody, are purely poetical. The primary aim of a poet is, to please and to move; and, therefore, it is to the imagination, and the passions, that he speaks. He may, and he ought to have it in his view, to instruct, and to reform; but it is indirectly, and by pleasing and moving, that he accomplishes this end. The exterior and most obvious distinction of poetry, is versification: yet there are some forms of verse, so loose and familiar, as to be hardly distinguishable from prose; and there is also a species of prose, so measured in its cadences, and so much raised in its tone, as to approach very near to poetical numbers.

The following are some of the peculiarities in which the poets indulge:

1. They often omit the *ARTICLES*: as,
"What dreadful pleasure! there to stand sublime,
"Like *shipwreck'd* mariner on desert coast!—*Beattie*.
2. They abbreviate some *NOUNS*; as, *amaze, acclaim, consult, corse, eve, even, fount, helm, lament, morn, plaint, targe, weal*.
3. They employ several nouns that are not used in prose; as *benison, boon, emprise, fane, guerdon, guise, ire, ken, lore, meed, sire, steed, welkin, yore*.
4. They introduce the noun *self* after an other noun of the possessive case; as,
"Affliction's semblance bends not o'er thy tomb,
"Affliction's *self* deplores thy youthful doom."—*Byron*.
"Thoughtless of beauty, she was beauty's *self*."—*Thomson*.
5. They place before the verb, words that usually come after it; and, after it, those that usually come before it: as,
"No jealousy *their dawn of love* o'er cast,
Nor blasted *were their wedded days* with strife."—*Beattie*.

"No *hive* hast thou of hoarded sweets."

"Thy chain a *wretched weight* shall prove."—*Langhorne*.

"Follows the loosen'd aggravated roar."—*Thomson*.

"That *purple* grows the *primrose pale*."—*Langhorne*.

6. They place the *ADJECTIVE* after its noun ; as,

"Or where the gorgeous East, with richest hand,
Showers on her kings *barbaric*, pearl and gold."—*Milton*.

"Come, nymph *demure*, with mantle *blue*."

7. They ascribe qualities to things to which they do not literally belong ; as,

"And *drowsy tinklings* lull the distant folds."—*Gray*.

"Imbitter'd more and more from *peevish day* to day."—*Thom*.

"All thin and naked to the *numb cold night*."—*Shak*.

8. They use concrete terms to express abstract qualities ; as,

"Earth's meanest son, all trembling, prostrate falls,
And on the *boundless* of thy goodness calls."—*Young*.

"Meanwhile, whate'er of *beautiful or new*,
Sublime or dreadful, in earth, sea, or sky,
By chance or search was offer'd to his view,
He scann'd with curious and romantic eye."—*Beattie*.

9. They substitute quality for manner ; as,

"And, arching *proud* his neck, with oary feet
Bears forward *fierce*, and guards his osier isle."—*Thomson*.

"Thither *continual* pilgrims crowded still."—*Idem*.

10. They form new compound epithets ; as,

"In *world-rejoicing* state, it moves sublime."—*Thomson*.

"The *devy-skirted* clouds imbibe the sun."—*Idem*.

"By brooks and groves in *hollow-whispering* gales."—*Idem*.

"The violet of *sky-woven* vest."—*Langhorne*.

"A league from Epidamnum had we sailed,
Before the *always-wind-obeying* deep
Gave any tragic instance of our harm."—*Shak*.

11. They connect the comparative degree to the positive ; as,

"*Near and more near* the billows rise."—*Merrick*.

"*Wide and wider* spreads the vale."—*Dyer*.

"*Wide and more wide*, the o'erflowings of the mind
Take every creature in, of every kind."—*Pope*.

12. They form many adjectives in *y* ; as, A *gleamy* ray,—*towery* height,—*steepy* hill,—*steely* casque,—*heapy* harvests,—*moony* shield,—*writhy* snake,—*stilly* lake,—*vasty* deep,—*paly* circlet.

13. They employ adjectives of an abbreviated form ; as, *dread*, *drear*, *ebon*, *hoar*, *lone*, *scant*, *slope*, *submiss*, *vermil*, *yon*.

14. They employ several adjectives that are not used in prose ; as, *azure, blithe, boon, dank, darkling, darksome, doughty, dun, fell, rife, rapt, rueful, sear, sylvan, twain, wan.*

15. They employ personal *PRONOUNS*, and introduce their nouns afterwards ; as,

“ *It* curl'd not Tweed alone, that breeze.”—*W. Scott.*

“ Is it the lightning's quivering glance,
That on the thicket streams ;
Or do *they* flash on spear and lance,
The sun's retiring beams.”—*Idem.*

16. They sometimes omit the relative, of the nominative case ; as,

“ For is there aught in sleep *can* charm the wise ? ”—*Thomson.*

17. They omit the antecedent, or introduce it after the relative ; as,

“ *Who* never fasts, no banquet e'er enjoys.”—*Young.*

“ *Who* dares think one thing and another tell,
My soul detests *him* as the gates of hell.”—*Pope's Homer.*

18. They remove relative pronouns and other connectives, into the body of their clauses ; as,

“ Parts the fine locks, her graceful head *that* deck.”—*Pope.*

“ Not half so dreadful rises to the sight
Orion's dog, the year *when* autumn weighs.”—*Thomson.*

19. They make intransitive *VERBS* transitive ; as,

“ Awhile he stands,
Gazing the inverted landscape, half afraid
To meditate the blue profound below.”—*Thomson.*

“ Still in harmonious intercourse, they *liv'd*
The rural day, and *talked* the flowing heart.”—*Idem.*

20. They give to the imperative mood the first and the third person ; as,

“ *Turn* *we* a moment fancy's rapid flight.”—*Thomson.*

“ *Be* man's peculiar *work* his sole delight.”—*Beattie.*

“ And what is reason ? *Be* *she* thus *defin'd* :
Reason is upright stature in the soul ! ”—*Young.*

21. They employ *can, could, and would* as principal verbs transitive : as,

“ *What* for ourselves *we can*, is always ours.”

“ Who does the best his circumstance allows,
Does well, acts nobly :—angels *could* no more.”—*Young.*

“ *What would* this man ? Now upward will he soar,
And, little less than angel, *would* be more.”—*Pope.*

22. They place the infinitive before the word on which it depends ; as,

“ When first thy sire *to send* on earth
Virtue, his darling child, *design’d*.”—*Gray*.

23. They place the auxiliary after its principal ; as,

“ No longer *heed* the sunbeam bright
That plays on Carron’s breast he *can*.”—*Langhorne*.

24. Before verbs, they sometimes arbitrarily employ or omit prefixes ; as, *bedrop*, *begird*, *bedim*, *evanish* ; *lure*, *wail*, *wilder*, *reave*.

25. They abbreviate verbs ; as, *list*, *ope*.

26. They employ several verbs that are not used in prose ; as *appal*, *astound*, *brook*, *cower*, *doff*, *ken*, *wend*, *ween*, *throw*.

27. They sometimes imitate a Greek construction of the infinitive ; as,

“ He knew *to sing* and build the lofty rhyme.”
“ For not *to have been dipp’d* in Lethè lake,
Could save the son of Thetis *from to die*.”

28. They employ the *PARTICIPLE* more frequently than prose writers, and in a construction somewhat peculiar ; as,

“ Pursues, as inclination or sad choice leads him *perplex’d*.”
“ He came, and standing in the midst, explain’d
The peace *rejected*, but the truce *obtain’d*.”

29. They employ several *ADVERBS* that are not used in prose ; as, *oft*, *haply*, *inly*.

30. They give to adverbs a peculiar location ; as,

“ Peeping from *forth* their alleys green.”—*Collins*.
“ Erect the standard *there* of ancient night.”—*Milton*.
“ The silence *often* of pure innocence
Persuades, when speaking fails.”—*Shak*.

31. They omit the introductory adverb *there* ; as

“ *Was* nought around but images of rest.”—*Thomson*.

32. They employ the *CONJUNCTIONS*, *or—or*, and *nor—nor*, as correspondents ; as,

“ Or by the lazy Scheldt *or* wandering Po.”—*Goldsmith*.
“ Wealth heap’d on wealth *nor* truth *nor* safety buys.”—*Johns*.
“ Who by repentance is not satisfied,
Is *nor* of heav’n, *nor* earth.”—*Shak*.

33. They often place *PREPOSITIONS* and their adjuncts, before the words on which they depend ; as,

“ *Against* your fame *with* fondness hate combines ;
The rival batters, and the lover mines.”—*Johnson*.

34. They sometimes place the preposition after its object ; as,
 " When beauty, *Eden's bowers within*,
 First stretch'd the arm to deeds of sin,
 When passion burn'd, and prudence slept,
 The pitying angels, bent and wept."—*Hogg*.
 " The Muses fair, *these peaceful shades among*,
 With skilful fingers sweep the trembling strings."—*Lloyd*.
35. They employ *INTERJECTIONS* more frequently than prose writers ; as,
 " O let me gaze !—Of gazing there's no end.
 O let me think !—Thought too is wilder'd here."—*Young*.
36. They employ antiquated words and modes of expression ; as,
 " *Withouten* that would come *an* heavier bale."—*Thomson*.
 " He was *to weet*, a little roguish page,
Save sleep and play, who minded nought at all."—*Idem*.
 " Not one *eftsoons* in view was to be found."—*Id*.
 " To number up the thousands dwelling here,
An useless were, and *eke* an endless task."—*Id*.
 " Of clerks good plenty here you *mote espy*."—*Id*.
 " But these *I passen* by, with nameless numbers *moe*."—*Id*.
 " All careless rambling where *it liked them* most."—*Id*.
 " *Behooves* you then to ply your finest art."—*Id*.
 " *What time* the sun arose on Vennachar's broad wave."—*Scott*.
 " In *sooth* 'twas almost all the shepherd knew."—*Beattie*.
 " There must thou wake *perforce* thy Doric quill."
 " Whose *sires, perchance*, in Fairyland might dwell."—*Beattie*.
 " Stern rugged nurse, thy rigid *lore*,
 With patience many a year she bore."—*Gray*.
 " While vice pours forth the troubled streams of hell,
The which, howe'er disguis'd, at last with dole,
 Will through the tortur'd breast their fiery torrent roll." *Thom*.
 " *Him thought* he by the brook of Cherith stood."—*Milton*.
 " I found not what *methought* I wanted still."—*Idem*.
 " Of other creatures as *him* pleases best,
 Wherever plac'd, let him dispose."—*Id*.

THE END.

THE
FOLLOWING APPROVED
SCHOOL BOOKS,
ARE PUBLISHED AND SOLD BY
SAMUEL WOOD & SONS,

No. 261, Pearl-Street, New-York ;

AND
SAMUEL S. WOOD & CO.

No. 212, *Market-Street, Baltimore.*

THE YOUNG CHILD'S A, B, C ; or, First Book,
NEW-YORK PRIMER ; or, Second Book,
NEW-YORK PRECEPTOR ; or, Third Book,
NEW-YORK SPELLING-BOOK ; or, Fourth Book.

THE
NEW-YORK EXPOSITOR ;

OR,
FIFTH BOOK :

Being a collection of the most useful words in the English language.

BY R. WIGGINS.

To which is added,

A VOCABULARY OF

SCIENTIFIC TERMS.

BY JOHN GRISCOM.

The whole selected, divided, accentuated, and explained, with references to a Key for their pronunciation ; chiefly on the authorities of Johnson and Walker.

NEW-YORK READER, No. 1,
NEW-YORK READER, No. 2,
NEW-YORK READER, No. 3,
NORTH AMERICAN SPELLING-BOOK, by R. Wiggins.

A NEW TREATISE
ON THE
USE OF THE GLOBES,
OR,
A PHILOSOPHICAL VIEW OF
THE EARTH AND HEAVENS :

COMPREHENDING

An account of the Figure, Magnitude, and Motion of the Earth, the natural changes of its surface, caused by Floods, Earthquakes, etc. together with the Elementary Principles of Meteorology and Astronomy, the Theory of the Tides, etc.

PRECEDED BY

An extensive Selection of Astronomical and other Definitions ; and illustrated by a great variety of Problems and Questions, for the examination of the student, &c.

DESIGNED FOR THE INSTRUCTION OF YOUTH.

BY THOMAS KEITH,

PRIVATE TEACHER OF MATHEMATICS, GEOGRAPHY, &c.

THE ELEMENTS OF
ASTRONOMY ;

WITH METHODS FOR DETERMINING THE
LONGITUDES, ASPECTS, &c. OF THE PLANETS

FOR ANY FUTURE TIME ;

And an Extensive set of Geographical and Astronomical Problems on the Globes.

DESIGNED FOR THE

Use of Schools and junior Students,

By S. TREEBY,

Teacher of the Mathematics, Classics, &c. &c.

Revised and corrected

By M. NASH,

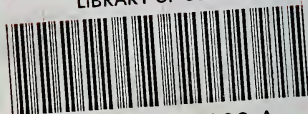
Teacher of Mathematics, New-York.

THE FIRST LINES OF
ENGLISH GRAMMAR,
BEING A BRIEF ABSTRACT OF THE
AUTHOR'S LARGER WORK,

Designed for Young Learners.

LB Jc 30 BY GOOLD BROWN.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 237 993 A